

Expert in Drupal

**Course in
creation and administration
of Websites with Drupal 7**

Beginner
Fran Gil

EXCLUSIVELY FOR:
Name: Nidhi Badani
Email: nidhitmehta@gmail.com

DOWNLOADED FROM:
Source: www.forcontu.com
Date: 11/05/15 17:12
IP: 125.22.49.35
Verification code:
D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

EXCLUSIVELY FOR:

Name: Nidhi Badani

Email: nidhitmehta@gmail.com

DOWNLOADED FROM:

Source: www.forcontu.com

Date: 11/05/15 17:12

IP: 125.22.49.35

Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Expert in Drupal 7

Beginner

**Course in creation and administration
of Websites with Drupal 7**

Fran Gil



Expert in Drupal 7. Beginner

Course in creation and administration of Websites with Drupal 7

Learn Drupal with Forcontu Collection

Copyright © 2014 Forcontu S.L.

All rights reserved. The content of this book cannot be wholly or partially reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means, whether electronic, mechanical, photocopied, recorded or in any other manner, without the prior express written authorisation of Forcontu S.L. In particular, this includes the simple reproduction of this as summaries, reviews or press releases and/or making these available, and for these purposes it will also be necessary to have the relevant authorisation from Forcontu S.L. To obtain further information, please get in touch by means of info@forcontu.com.

ISBN-13 (Printed edition): 978-84-939410-8-6

ISBN-13 (Electronic edition, PDF): 978-84-939410-9-3

Author: Fran Gil Rodríguez

With the assistance of the team of tutors of Forcontu: Iván Méndez López, Miguel Ángel Naranjo Moreno and José Miguel Rodríguez Arias

Cover design: Ateigh Design

Marketing and Distribution Manager: Laura Mª Fornié Alonso

Published by Forcontu S.L.

Although this publication has been prepared with great care, neither Forcontu S.L. nor the authors will be responsible for the possible errors and their consequences that may directly or indirectly arise from the information contained in this work. Please send any recommendation or comment to info@forcontu.com.

For further information about the content of this book or the distribution channels, please write directly to info@forcontu.com or visit the Website www.forcontu.com.

You can find complementary resources to this book at www.forcontu.com.

Presentation

One of the great challenges facing us to use Drupal is, without doubt, **overcome its steep learning curve**. Mastering Drupal is a costly goal and requires effort and dedication. With more than 3 years of experience in Drupal 6 training, Forcontu launches the course **Expert in Drupal 7**, a training plan improved and expanded to train Web development professionals in Drupal 7.

The Course **Expert in Drupal 7** is provided online. It is guided and supervised directly by the team of tutors of Forcontu.

The course **Expert in Drupal 7** is divided into 3 modules or training levels (beginner, intermediate and advanced) and **requires programming knowledge**. As an alternative, for those people who do not have programming skills, there is the possibility of studying only the beginner and intermediate levels.

Many companies and organizations are betting on Drupal as a solution for their Websites development, and on **Forcontu** to train their working team to the highest level. More than 1,000 people have already tested our courses and materials, both Drupal 6 and Drupal 7.

Fran Gil Rodríguez
Co-founder and CEO of Forcontu



*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

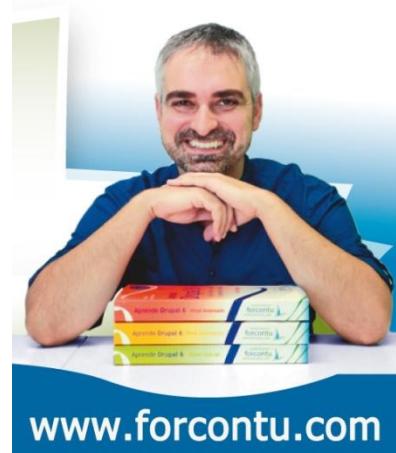
About the author

Fran Gil Rodríguez
Co-founder and CEO of Forcontu

fran.gil@forcontu.com

@frankgil76

Fran Gil Rodríguez is a Technical Telecommunications Engineer from the University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria (2002), holding a Master's degree in the Management and Administration of Information Technologies and Systems from the UOC (2006) and a University Master's degree in Multidisciplinary Computing, specialising in Electronic Teaching and Learning from the University of Alcalá de Henares, Madrid (2009).



His professional career was initially associated with the University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria (ULPGC), first as the coordinator of the team for developing the ULPGC Website (2002 to 2006) and then as Head of projects and coordinator of the ITC development department ULPGC S.L. (2006 to 2009). He has participated in numerous projects for developing applications and Websites, as head of Project, an analyst and developer, working with Drupal since 2006.

2009 saw the creation of the Forcontu project, a company specialising in Website development and advanced training in Drupal. Following the success of the Drupal 6 training plan, launched in 2009, the author presents us with an enlarged and improved Drupal 7 training plan: Expert in Drupal 7.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

0 Expert in Drupal 7

0.1 Course description

Teaching method

The Expert in Drupal 7 course is a 100% online course with supervised practice labs. In addition to the virtual classroom, students will be provided with web hosting for their own Drupal installation.

Through the virtual classroom, the course tutor will be in contact with students, guiding them in their learning process and proposing the work necessary for passing the course. Students will hand in their work directly in their assigned web space, **building their own web site** following the proposed activities.

The student will be able perform activities at any time of the day, in order to adapt the training to his/her professional or private needs.



Length and modality

The course is made up of **60 units** and divided into **3 modules**: beginner, intermediate and advanced. After completing all three modules, students will develop and complete a final project. The total course duration is 7 months with 420 hours of certified work.

While this formative experience requires a significant amount of effort, you will save a considerable amount of time when compared to studying Drupal on your own.

Learning objectives

The main objective of Expert in Drupal 7 is to offer students professional training in design, development, implementation and management of complex websites, using Drupal. The course materials are designed to train students how to complete successful implementation of professional websites using Drupal. However, to reach these objectives, the following secondary objectives must be achieved:

- **Acquire a good knowledge in Drupal.** Having a good base is essential for defining a good strategy for the installation, configuration and programming of features in Drupal. In this course we place special emphasis on the need to study Drupal in an orderly and guided fashion, carrying out work ranging in difficulty from low to high. For this reason we believe that all of the activities proposed in the training plan are important for building a good solid foundation, regardless of the student's background.
- **Knowing Drupal architecture in depth.** Knowing Drupal architecture at the programming level is essential in understanding how the modules interact with the system, as well as developing modules that adapt to the core and the rest of the installed modules on a Website in a proper manner.

- **Essential additional modules.** The Drupal core is only a starting point; it will always be necessary to add additional modules. The most important modules that are offered will be studied in this course. Some of these modules have become essential, because they have been used in prior versions to Drupal 7, having enjoyed widespread acceptance in the community for years. Other modules created specifically for Drupal 7 will also be studied.
- **Developers' tools.** We will study some of the programming and system administration tools with the aim of speeding up the work with Drupal.
- **Adaptation to new versions and modules.** The student will have the necessary skills to adapt to the continuous changes of version and to manage the installation and configuration of new modules contributed by the community successfully.
- **Modules Programming.** When the available modules are not enough to achieve the functional requirements of our project, we will need to implement new modules. We go into greater depth in the API of Drupal and the Drupal programming style to develop professional modules.
- **Learn how to contribute to the community.** The Drupal success would not have been possible if it did not have thousands of enthusiasts, users and developers, who have shared their developments, knowledge and experiences with the community. This is why we believe that, wherever possible, we must contribute to the community, whether sharing and maintaining developed modules, reporting bugs and solutions, or helping other users.

What does the course cover?

Through this course you will learn to install, configure and administrate Websites with Drupal 7. You will also be able to develop new functionalities that allow adapting a Website to the required functional requirements. Becoming an expert in Drupal 7 you will be trained to deal with, individually and in team, the design and implementation of complex Websites. The acquired training will be helpful in getting you into the labor market, improving your career or even undertaking your own project based on web technologies.

Who should attend?

The Expert in Drupal 7 course is aimed at web site developers with programming skills that require the development of professional Web projects with Drupal 7, either for third parties or in order to carry out their own business ideas.

Prior Knowledge

No specific academic qualification is required to gain entry to the course. The beginner and intermediate levels can be studied in their entirety with no programming or database management knowledge. Only a minimum knowledge of computer basics and Internet user-level is needed.

Technical requirements

It is necessary to have a computer with Internet connection and web browser to take this course. During the course it will be necessary to install an FTP client (FileZilla or similar).

0.2 Course structure and content

What the course includes

The Expert in Drupal 7 course includes the following services and materials:

- **Materials organized in English.** There is a lot of information on Drupal available in books, blogs, forums, etc. At Forcontu, we have developed organized training materials consisting of different learning subjects to ensure the professional training in Drupal (compulsory work, practical cases, enhancement activities, etc). The course includes **3 Expert in Drupal 7 books** in Web page format and an eBook (PDF).
- **Web hosting** for the training plan activities and the final project undertaking.
- **Continuous assessment** of the work carried out during the course, providing feedback on the possible mistakes.
- **Practical examination after each module**
- **Final Project evaluation.**
- **Follow-up on the student's progress.** Tutors will carry out continuous monitoring of the student and will answer the doubts raised in the classroom forums.
- **Certificate for passing part of the module.**
- **Expert in Drupal 7 Certificate.** After successfully passing the training modules and the end of course project.
- **Letter of introduction**, for students who have completed the course Expert in Drupal 7 with a grade of Excellent.
- Consultancy after the course in order to **migrate your Website** (final work) to your personal hosting site.

Module I: Beginner

Beginner level is aimed at those people with or without technical training, who want to start creating Websites. It is also very useful for companies or professionals who wish to create their professional or personal Website without depending on external assistance. At this level, the aim is for the student to acquire sound basic knowledge in order to tackle the following educational levels with guarantees.

This module will be studied for 4 weeks and it will certify 60 hours of work.

1. Introduction to Drupal
 2. Drupal installation
 3. Administration area
 4. Content management
 5. Content types
 6. Menu management
 7. Blocks management
 8. Themes
 9. Extending functionality with modules
 10. Management of users, roles and permissions
 11. Taxonomy
 12. Text formats and WYSIWYG editors
 13. Blogs
 14. Forums
 15. Structured documents: Books
 16. Media Galleries
 17. Searches
 18. Languages and translation
 19. Access statistics
 20. Website management, maintenance and updating
- Final module exam

Module II: Intermediate

The **Intermediate level** complements the beginner level. It is aimed at people who already had previous contact with Drupal and want to understand it in depth and make better use of its full potential. Completing this level is very useful for building professional Websites with features that go far beyond company webs or personal blogs. Programming knowledge is not required to study intermediate level.

This module will be studied for 8 weeks and it will certify 120 hours of work.

21. Creating forms with Webform
 22. Advanced content types
 23. Views
 24. Automatic image processing
 25. Extending menus with additional modules
 26. Extending blocks with additional modules
 27. Panels
 28. Display Suite
 29. Customizing Themes
 30. Actions and Triggers
 31. Rules
 32. Defining contexts
 33. Extending users
 34. Workflow
 35. Multilingual sites
 36. E-commerce: Introduction to Ubercart and Drupal Commerce
 37. SEO Positioning with Drupal
 38. Social tools: voting and sharing content
 39. Newsletter Subscription
 40. Other Features
- Final module exam

Module III: Advanced

Advanced level is intended for PHP and MySQL developers who have also had a prior contact with Drupal. This level is designed for Website developers who work for third parties or for those entrepreneurs with an advanced technical level who wish to launch their own business ideas.

This module will be studied for 12 weeks and it will certify 180 hours of work.

41. Drupal development best practices
 42. Tools for developers
 43. Drupal Architecture
 44. Creating modules
 45. Database access and database schemas
 46. Menu system
 47. Creating forms
 48. Programming blocks
 49. Programming users and permissions
 50. Programming content types
 51. Programming entities and fields
 52. Programming actions and triggers
 53. Working with Files
 54. Search system
 55. Translating modules
 56. Creating themes
 57. Using jQuery and Ajax
 58. Features
 59. Installation Profiles
 60. Contributing to the Drupal Community
- Final module exam

Final Project

The final project may be taken during the course, but there will be 4 weeks available after the three modules to complete and submit it. This Project will certify 60 hours of work.

0.3 Methodology, materials and evaluation

Methodology

The **Expert in Drupal 7** is an online supervised course. The student must carry out the proposed activities on the hosted website, which will be corrected and assessed by the tutor on an ongoing basis, as they are handed in. The e-learning platform will give access to the course contents and the necessary tools for facilitating communication among the participants in the course, the correction of activities and the answering queries.

The schedule includes detailed plans of the work to be carried out, continuous monitoring of the student's progress and evaluations of the student's activities and work completed.

The course is arranged based on a recommended timetable for handing in work, although the students can follow their own pace of work and hand them in throughout the course, but they must always do this before the end of each module. The student can work on his/her web host and in the classrooms used in any schedule, although the questions expressed in the forums and correcting work will generally be done during business hours. Our tutors' full-time commitment ensures flexible communication and corrected activities handed back on a daily basis.

E-learning platform

Once registered for the course, the student will be added onto the educational platform and placed in the classroom corresponding to the module to be studied.

Tutors and students may communicate freely through **forums** (in a way that is public to the entire group), or by **internal e-mail** (privately, only for the stated recipients) for each course. By default, a duplicate of these communications will be sent to the external electronic e-mail address provided by the student.

Students in the same group can contact each other and share their experiences and the results of their work and proposed materials.

The classroom is arranged in the following way:

- **Guide Forum** (Tutor's Forum). Only tutors can publish on this forum, and this will be used to report general issues concerning the course or other issues that may be of interest to the Group.
- **Learning Forum** (Course Forum). Both tutors and students will be able to post on this forum, and it will be used to discuss issues related to Drupal and the course. The students may raise their questions about the work and other general enquiries about Drupal here.
- **Share Forum** (general forum). This is an open forum where students and tutors can share other experiences aside from the course and Drupal.
- **Inbox.** The internal mail enables messages to be sent to other classmates and tutors.
- **Participants.** List of participants on the course, including tutors and students.
- **News.** The latest posts added by tutors in the Forum guide will be published in this block.
- **Upcoming events.** This block shows upcoming events related to course planning. Participants can create private events.

- **Calendar.** Displays events in timetable form.
- **Online Users.** A participants' list shows who is connected at any one time.
- **Profile (administration).** Allows you to administer the user profile: modify the login password, modify the personal data, change the photo, etc.

Educational materials

Materials are written in English and consist of:

- EBooks of the **Learn Drupal with Forcontu set**, corresponding to the registered level. The books will be available in the classroom in digital format (html or PDF).
- **Web Hosting** for doing the work and the student's final project.
- **Links** to external resources.
- **Activities.** Each unit will include activities. That it must be carried out in the time set so the tutor can assess them later on.



Evaluation

During the course each piece of work will be assessed, corrected and rated by the tutors, providing continuous feedback to the student.

At the end of each module the student will get a **continuous assessment rating** based upon the individual marks obtained in their work. To achieve each module it will be also necessary to pass a practical examination. This examination is necessary to validate the mark obtained in the continuous assessment so the student will have only a pass or fail grade. Once the module has been passed, a partial certificate of accomplishment of the module will be issued.

Once the three modules of the course have been passed, the student will have to carry out a Final Project, consisting of the development and documentation of a Website. By passing all the formative modules and the Final Project the student will obtain the **certificate of Expert in Drupal 7**.

Upon completion the course the **certificates of follow-up and accomplishment of each passed module and the certificate of Expert in Drupal 7** will be delivered by ordinary post detailing, among other things, the number of working hours, the content of the course and the final mark obtained.

The **final grade of Expert in Drupal 7** will be obtained by scoring the marks attained in each of the modules and final project, having regarded to the following percentages:

- Module I: Beginner (15%)
- Module II: Intermediate (30%)
- Module III Advanced (40%)
- Final Project (15%)

Drupal Certification with Forcontu

Companies increasingly demand professional Web developers, experts in Drupal, and they usually ask for a training certificate and/or experience in Drupal. Another new development introduced into our training plans is the new model of **Drupal certification with Forcontu**.

All training progress with Forcontu will be available on a unique URL that you will be provided with at the beginning of the course. As you pass the modules or additional activities of the lifelong learning Plan, these achievements will be reflected directly on your **Drupal certification with Forcontu**.

If you would like, you can include this URL in your curriculum vitae so the companies that are in your level of knowledge of Drupal can collate the information provided therein.

Table of contents

Presentation	iii
About the author	v
Expert in Drupal 7	vii
Course description.....	vii
Course structure and content	ix
Methodology, materials and evaluation.....	xii
Table of contents.....	xv
Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal.....	1
1.1. What is a CMS	2
1.2. What is Drupal and what can be done with it	4
1.3. From Drupal 6 to Drupal 7	6
1.4. Drupal 7 architecture	8
Unit 2. Drupal Installation.....	13
2.1. Downloading and installation of Drupal	14
2.2. Access to the status report	27
Unit 3. The administration area	29
3.1. The administration menu	30
3.2. Dashboard	37
3.3. Shortcuts	38
3.4. General site configuration	41
Unit 4. Content management.....	49
4.1. Content types of the core	50
4.2. Creating content.....	52
Practical Case 4.1. Creating a page	57
4.3. Editing of contents	60
4.4. Content management area	62
4.5. URL alias.....	63
4.6. Configuration of the home page	65
4.7. Publication and moderation of comments.....	66
Unit 5. Content types.....	69
5.1. Create and configure content types	70
5.2. Add additional fields to the content type	75
Practical Case 5.1. Create a content type.....	80
Unit 6. Menu Management	91
6.1. Menu types	92
6.2. Creating and editing menus	95
Practical Case 6.1. Creating a menu	100
6.3. Enabling of the menu	102
6.4. About breadcrumbs.....	107
Unit 7. Blocks management	109
7.1. What blocks are.....	110
7.2. Enabling and configuration of blocks.....	111
7.3. Creation of blocks	117

Unit 8. Themes	121
8.1. What themes are	122
8.2. Repositories of themes	123
8.3. Manual installation of themes.....	128
8.4. Automatic installation of themes.....	130
8.5. Configuring the theme.....	132
Practical Case 8.1. Installing and configuring the Kanji theme.....	135
8.6. Modifying a theme with CSS	139
Unit 9. Extending functionalities with modules	141
9.1. What modules are.....	142
9.2. Core modules	143
9.3. Repositories of modules	149
9.4. Downloading and installing of modules	152
9.5. Configuring modules	156
Practical Case 9.1. Installing and configuring the Poll module	156
Practical Case 9.2. Installing and configuring the External Links module	161
Unit 10. Management of users, roles and permissions	165
10.1. Creating and editing users accounts.....	166
10.2. Configuring the user accounts	174
10.3. Establishing roles and access permissions	179
10.4. Additional user fields	184
Unit 11. Taxonomy	187
11.1. Vocabularies and terms	188
11.2. Categorising the contents	192
11.3. Additional Modules	200
Unit 12. Text formats and WYSIWYG editors	203
12.1. Filters and text formats.....	204
12.2. Configuration of text formats and filters	205
12.3. Adding text format	208
12.4. WYSIWYG Editors.....	209
Practical Case 12.1. Installation of Wysiwyg with NicEdit.....	209
Practical Case 12.2. Installation of Wysiwyg with TinyMCE	217
Unit 13. Blogs	223
13.1. Installing and configuring a blog	224
13.2. Notification of publication of comments with Comment notify.....	229
13.3. SPAM control with CAPTCHA	234
Unit 14. Forums	241
14.1. Installation and configuration of Forum	242
14.2. Additional modules.....	251
Unit 15. Structured Documents: Books	255
15.1. Enabling and configuration of the Book module	256
15.2. Additional modules.....	263
Unit 16. Media Galleries	267
16.1. Installing and configuring the Media Gallery module.....	268
16.2. Improving the presentation of the images	277
16.3. Publication of videos and external resources.....	282
16.4. Managing media content.....	283
Unit 17. Searches	285
17.1. Installing and configuring searches	286
17.2. Doing searches	289
17.3. Configuration of permissions	293
17.4. Reports on searches done.....	293

Unit 18. Languages and translation	295
18.1. Enabling and configuring languages.....	296
18.2. Importing and exporting translations	303
18.3. Translation of strings.....	306
18.4. Automatic updating of translations.....	307
Unit 19. Access statistics.....	309
19.1. Enabling and configuring the statistics	310
19.2. Statistics reports	312
19.3. Page counter	314
19.4. Google Analytics	315
Unit 20. Website management, maintenance and updating.....	319
20.1. Reports	320
20.2. Syslog	326
20.3. Logout due to site maintenance	329
20.4. Database backup	330
20.5. Updating Drupal to new versions	339
20.6. Updating of modules to new versions.....	341
20.7. Improving performance by enabling the cache.....	343
20.8. Error reporting	345
Annex A. Configuration of the hosting and necessary tools	347
A.1. Hosting dashboard.....	347
A.2. Managing databases with phpMyAdmin	352
A.3. Upload and download files via FTP	354
A.4. Uncompress files with 7zip	358
A.5. Editing text files with Notepad++	359
Annex B. Links and resources of interest.....	361
B.1. forcontu.com.....	361
B.2. Official Drupal page, drupal.org.....	362
B.3. drupalmodules.com.....	362
B.4. Drupal Association	363
B.5. Drupal Group on Google	364
B.6. Translations of Drupal, localize.drupal.org	364
B.7. Drupal API, api.drupal.org	365
B.8. Drupal paid-for themes	365
B.9. Generic texts for tests	365

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

1 Introduction to Drupal

In this first unit we review some fundamental concepts for understanding what Drupal is, what it is used for and which items comprise it. All of these concepts will be extensively analysed in subsequent units and levels.



A little history:

- During his stay at the University of Antwerp (Belgium) in 2000, **Dries Buytaert** began developing a news Website for his group of colleagues. This involved any of them being able to add notes to share with the rest of the group and in that way participate in the information about the work that they were carrying out, meet up for dinner, etc.
- The software was not named until Dries completed his studies at the University and he decided to outsource the project so as to keep in contact with his colleagues. Dries acquired the *drop.org* domain name after making a typing error, because in reality he was interested in the domain name *dorp.org*, which means *village* in Dutch, something that was suitable for his small community of users.
- The *drop.org* Website evolved towards a place for discussing and testing innovations in Web technology and, in January 2001, Dries released the first version of the software, which already bore the name of Drupal.
- The Drupal name derives from the English pronunciation of the word "druppel" in English.

Source: *Drupal History*, available at: <http://drupal.org/node/769>

Comparative D7/D6

Drupal Installation

The Drupal 7 installation process is very similar to the Drupal 6 one, with very small differences that we will see in this unit.

Drupal 7 incorporates two different installation profiles or modalities. The Standard version is the recommended version, since it directly installs and configures some of the basic functionalities that are commonly used.

The first pages of the installation process will be shown in English but in the same way as in version 6, Drupal makes it possible to change the language before continuing with the installation. In this way it is possible to carry on with the installation process completely in Spanish. In Drupal 7, it is necessary to upload the language files (.po) to the installations profile translations file that we are installing (for example at /profiles/standard/translations).

Among the server requirements, it is necessary to take account of the fact that Drupal 7 now uses the PDO extension of PHP (PHP Data Objects), and so it has to be installed on the server and run correctly

Unit contents

1.1 What is a CMS	2
1.2 What is Drupal and what can be done with it.....	4
1.3 From Drupal 6 to Drupal 7	6
1.4 Drupal 7 architecture	8



1.1

What is a CMS

A **content management system** (abbreviated as **CMS**) is a piece of software that makes it possible to create a base structure for the creation and administration of contents, principally of Web pages.

Generally speaking, a CMS is an application with an associated database on which the contents are stored, separated by styles or designs. The CMS also controls who can edit and view the contents, converting them into a comprehensive administration tool for the publication of Websites

Some typical CMS functionalities are:

- **Administration of the Website structure:** modules, menus, design, general configuration, etc.
- **Administration of the content:** different types of contents, administration and publication of contents, etc.
- **Administration of users:** policies of administration of users and of access to the contents using roles and permissions, etc.
- **Website administration and reports:** errors, access statistics, etc.

You can find different types of CMS on Internet, depending on the type of platform that you wish to implement. For example, to design an e-learning Website we could choose between **Moodle**, **ATutor**, **Dokeos** or **WebCT**, among others. If we wish to set up a discussion site or debate forums, we could opt for **phpBB** or **SMF** (Simple Machines Forum) and for creating a blog we can select **Blogger** or **WordPress**. To implement a virtual store we could choose **osCommerce** or **Magento** and if what we want to do is set up a social network, **elgg** or **Ning**. But if what we want to do is set up a Website with multiple functionalities (including some or all of the previous ones), we will have to select one of the generic CMSs available, such as **Drupal**, **TYPO3**, **Joomla** or **OpenCMS**.

Of the generic CMSs, some of the ones that are most commonly used at present are **TYPO3**, **Joomla** and **Drupal**. These were all published at the start of this century and they share the common factor that they are developed in PHP and MySQL and that they are distributed as freeware. Each one of these has its own community of users and developers that contribute towards the development of the project, whether working on improving the software or providing new modules for increasing or improving their functionalities.

Choosing one CMS or another is not straightforward. At **Forcontu** we specialised in Drupal in 2006, after carrying out a comparative study among different CMSs, including those mentioned above. The three of these have a high learning curve, especially for developers that wish to delve deeper into their architecture and programme specific functionalities. However, in its version 4 Drupal already offers an interface that is friendlier for the end users. This capability of creating Websites that can be easily managed by the end users, who do not necessarily have advanced knowledge in computing and programming, was one of the differentiation factors that tipped the balance for us to Drupal. Five years later on, and after having seen Drupal grow version after version, at both the software and the community levels, we firmly believe that we have made the right decision.

By way of example, the following figures show screens from the administration area of CMS **TYPO3**, [F1.1](#) **Joomla** [F1.2](#) and **Drupal**. [F1.3](#)

The screenshot shows the TYPO3 CMS Administration area. On the left, the navigation menu includes 'Web' (Page, View, List), 'File' (Filelist), 'User tools' (User settings), and 'Help' (About Modules). The main content area is titled 'Pagecontent [53] - Open Hand Software'. It shows a file browser with 't3con09.jpg' selected. Below it, the 'Position' field is set to 'In text, right'. Under 'Image Dimensions', the width is set to 150 pixels. The 'Image Links' section contains a link input field and a 'Click-enlarge' checkbox.

F1.1**TYPO3 CMS.
Administration area**

TYPO3 is a very complete CMS, albeit complex in its utilisation and modification. It is mainly used in Germany, which is the location for both the company that develops it and its main community of users and developers

The screenshot shows the Joomla CMS Administration area. The top navigation bar includes links for Site, Users, Menus, Content, Components, Extensions, Help, Logged-in frontend, Logged-in backend, No messages, View Site, and Log out. The main content area features a grid of management icons: Add New Article, Article Manager, Category Manager; Media Manager, Menu Manager, User Manager; Module Manager, Extension Manager, Language Manager; Global Configuration, Template Manager, Edit profile. To the right, there are two tables: 'Last 5 Logged-in Users' and 'Top 5 Popular Articles'. The footer displays the text 'Joomla® is free software released under the GNU General Public License. Version 1.7.0'.

F1.2**Joomla CMS.
Administration area**

Joomla is one of the most serious competitors of Drupal. Its origins lie prior to Drupal (it was created from Mambo), which made it possible for it to position itself in the market. Many developers have specialised in Joomla and they see a cost in changing to another CMS that is too high in terms of time and training.

The screenshot shows the Drupal CMS Administration area. The top navigation bar includes links for Panel de control, Contenido, Estructura, Apariencia, Personas, Módulos, Configuración, Informes, Ayuda, Bienvenido, admin, and Cerrar sesión. Below the navigation, there are links for Agregar contenido and Hallar contenido. The main content area is titled 'Estructura' and shows a sidebar with links: Bloques (Configurar qué bloques de contenido aparecen en las zonas laterales del sitio y en otras regiones.), Menús (Añadir nuevos menús a su sitio, editar menús existentes y renombrar o reorganizar enlaces de menús.), Taxonomía (Gestionar el etiquetado, categorización y clasificación de su contenido), and Tipos de contenido (Gestionar tipos de contenido, incluyendo estado predefinido, promoción a la página principal, opciones de comentarios, etc.). At the bottom of the sidebar, it says 'Mi cuenta' and 'Cerrar sesión'.

F1.3**Drupal CMS.
Administration area**

Drupal is perhaps the CMS with the most active community of users and developers. Drupal version 7 was released in January 2011, and work is being actively done to improve and extend this by means of modules contributed by the community.

As we will see throughout the course, Drupal has evolved in such a way that – in addition to being carrying out all of the particular functions of a CMS – it enables the integration of many other advanced functions, better focused on the creation of social networks and interaction between users.

1.2

What is Drupal and what can be done with it

Drupal is a content management system (CMS) that is distributed as **freeware** under **GNU GPL licence** (General Public License) version 2 or greater.

Drupal can be freely modified and distributed, but this is always done under the same licence. This means that if, for example, we develop a specific module, this has to be distributed with all of its source files, in such a way that any other individual can modify it and distribute it in due course. **It is possible to sell a Drupal bundle, a module or a theme developed by us**. We just have to distribute them under the same licence, in such a way that they can also be freely modified and re-distributed by other people.

The software is developed with the **PHP** programming language, using a **MySQL** database. It is laid out using CS style sheets, and as such it is possible to build Websites that are completely **accessible**. Nowadays almost any hosting provider has the minimum characteristics required by Drupal for its installation and correct functioning, although it is recommended that you consult the provider beforehand.

It is possible to implement a large variety of Websites with Drupal:

- A personal or professional blog,
- A corporate Website,
- A virtual store,
- A social network or virtual community,
- And a long list of other features.

But don't believe that using and learning Drupal is an easy task. The **Drupal learning curve is very pronounced**, which means that it requires a significant initial effort to learn it, and continuous updating of the knowledge acquired. With this tutored course¹ our aim is to facilitate access to Drupal for anybody, with or without programming knowledge. This is why the beginner and intermediate levels of the course do not require programming knowledge. On the other hand, the advanced level is exclusively devoted to the programming of modules and themes for Drupal, and as such it is necessary to have previous programming knowledge.

For further information about Drupal, you can visit the official Drupal Website, with content in English (drupal.org) and the Website for the Hispanic Drupal community (drupal.org.es) with contents in Spanish.

Enlargement of functionalities with modules

We have already commented that by using Drupal it is possible to develop any type of Website or Web application. In addition to the basic functionalities that are integrated into the software, it is possible to **add new functionalities using modules**. The modules are additional applications developed by members of the Drupal community, which are freely distributed under the same GPL licence. Anyone can create a new module or modify an existing one. Modules development is studied

¹The tutoring option is only available on contracting the tutored course. Consult the terms in effect at www.forcontu.com.

in the **Advanced Level** of this course.

At the time of writing this document, Drupal has over 6,000 modules for its version 6 and **over 2,500 modules for its version 7**, recently released, and new modules are being added every day.

Some categories in which the different modules are encompassed are shown below, which may give use an idea about the functional scope that we can attain in our Website:

- **Administration.** Modules for extending the Website administration options.
- **Electronic commerce.** Specific modules for the development of virtual stores and integration of different payment methods.
- **Community and Groups.** Modules for building social networks and virtual communities. Developers. Specialist modules for facilitating the work of the Drupal developers, including tools for the smooth development of modules and themes.
- **Contents.** Modules for the integration of all types of contents, from texts in HTML with no need to understand HTML or CSS, to the publication of videos, podcasts, flash, etc.
- **File administration.** Modules for uploading all types of documents, images, videos, etc. For example, you will be able to build multimedia galleries and documentation repositories.
- **Timetables and events.** Specific modules for administering and publishing events, with different timetable formats.
- **E-mail.** Modules for adding communication functions via electronic mail.
- **Javascript and AJAX.** Modules that contribute special effects using Javascript or AJAX, which improve the user's experience on the site.
- **Search.** Tools for optimising the searches on the Website.
- **Statistics.** Different modules for recording and consulting statistics about visits to the Website, including full integration with Google Analytics.
- **Syndication of contents** with RSS and other formats. This makes it possible for the site users to keep up to date with this using contents syndication services. They also make it possible to integrate contents into the Website from other portals that offer this service, such as news blocks.
- **Multiple languages.** Modules for building sites with contents in multiple languages.
- And many other modules for the integration of **over 2000 external applications** of all types into Drupal: Google, Google maps, YouTube, Moodle, Messenger, phpBB, Wikis, YUI, TinyMCE, Amazon, Google Analytics and Twitter, among others.

In this course we will teach you to move through the module repositories in order to locate, install and configure those that are best adapted to the need of your Website.

1.3

From Drupal 6 to Drupal 7

NOTE
Change of version

When we talk about a change of version we are referring to the move from Drupal 6 to Drupal 7.

Smaller upgrades (for example, from version 7.2 to version 7.3) are done in a straightforward way and, in general terms, they do not affect the functioning of the Website.

At Drupal, the release of a new version usually entails a considerable and abrupt change. Drupal 7 is the result of nearly 3 years of partnership development, which a large number of community members have taken part in. While it is true that Drupal 7 is developed on the basis of Drupal 6, there are many conceptual and structural changes, which make it necessary for users and developers to make a significant effort to keep their knowledge up to date.

Neither is it possible to carry out direct migration of the Websites in Drupal 6 to Drupal 7. The most important changes and any migration requires a preliminary study that makes it possible to identify which modules have to be replaced or even re-programmed.

On the other hand, as we will see below, the release of Drupal 7 does not imply that we must directly use this version and discard or Drupal 6.

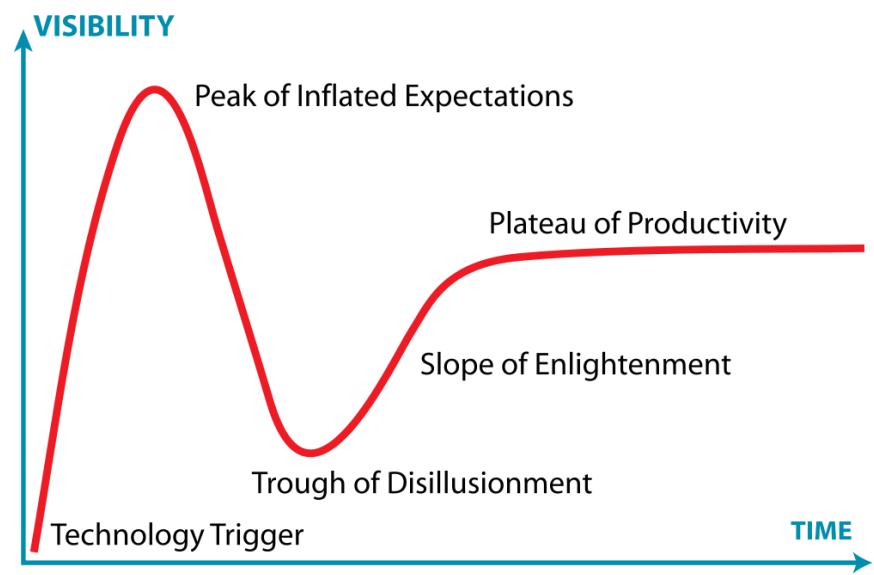
Gartner hype cycle applied to the release of Drupal 7

In order to explain how the release of Drupal 7 works we can make use of the **Gartner Hype cycle**, **F1.4** which explains how users behave in a situation of the release of new innovations.

F1.4
Gartner Hype Cycle

The Gartner hype cycle is a graphic representation that seeks to explain human reactions to new innovations. This representation can be applied to the launch of the new Drupal versions.

Graph obtained from Wikipedia.org
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hype_cycle)



We can see the five phases of the Gartner hype cycle applied to the release of the Drupal 7 version below.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Phase 1. Technology Trigger. Together with the release of Drupal 7, great interest was produced among the community of users on January 7, 2011, accompanied by over 300 celebration parties around the world that were organised by the groups **F1.5** and local businesses.

Phase 2. Peak of Inflated Expectations. Certain unrealistic expectations are generated after the release, which are due to both the advertising done and the community's willingness to use the new version. The reality that users find when they test Drupal 7 is that it still has a lot of errors and, above all, few modules adapted to the new version.

**F1.5****Drupal 7 release parties**

The Drupal 7 release on January 5, 2011, was celebrated with over 300 local parties organised all over the world.

Phase 3. Trough of Disillusionment On seeing that the new version does not satisfy the expectations generated, users become prudent and decide to wait until the version is more mature and further modules with stable versions are published.

Phase 4. Slope of Enlightenment. Use by some users and companies assists the consolidation of the new version. The errors found are located and corrected in this phase and new modules are published for version 7. During this phase it is even more advisable to use the previous version (Drupal 6), although this is a fundamental path for consolidating the new version.

Phase 5. Plateau of Productivity. The new version becomes consolidated with a stable core and a large number of modules contributed that are also stable. Their benefits and improvements as compared to the earlier version are demonstrated and now there are no doubts about which version to use in a new project based on Drupal.

Given the experience based upon the release of previous versions of Drupal, with some room for error we can assert that **we are at Phase 4, and that we will not reach Phase 5 until mid-2012.**

So, **which version should you, Drupal 6 or Drupal 7?** For projects that require the integration of many additional modules or whose production release is imminent, we still recommend the use of Drupal 6, which is more stable and more mature. For projects with little module integration or whose release date is not immediate, we recommend starting with Drupal 7, as long as we accept the challenge involved with using a version that is in a phase of consolidation.

1.4

Drupal 7 architecture

In this section we will see a description of the main items that make up the Drupal architecture. This description is adapted to the beginner level of the course and it will be extended in the coming levels.

D7/D6 Comparison**Compulsory modules**

In Drupal 6 the compulsory modules of the core were separated from the optional modules. In Drupal 7 they are identified by their dependence on the core (Drupal) "Required by: Drupal".

Drupal 6: Block, Filter, Node, System and User.

Drupal 7: Field, Field SQL storage, Filter, Image, Node, System, Taxonomy, Text, User.

The core

The core provides Drupal with the base necessary for it to work and for the inclusion of the rest of the components of the architecture. It is possible to gain access to the core and to make direct use of its functions using the Drupal programming API. However, this is an advanced aspect that requires programming knowledge and that will be studied on the advanced level of the course.

The modules

The modules offer additional functionalities to the Drupal core. Both Drupal developers and the rest of the members of the community currently contribute over 2,500 modules for Drupal 7 (and over 6,500 for Drupal 6) in the development of the modules.

The Drupal 7 core incorporates 44 modules, which will be available after the installation. While no distinction is made between compulsory and optional core modules, as was done in Drupal 6, some of the modules cannot be disabled from the modules administration area. We identify what the minimum modules required by Drupal so that these can work from the modules administration area, through the text "Required by: Drupal". **F1.6**

F1.6**Compulsory core modules**

The minimum modules required for the installation of Drupal appear as identified by "Required by: Drupal".

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Filter	7.12	Filters content in preparation for display. Required by: Drupal
<input type="checkbox"/>	Forum	7.12	Provides discussion forums. Requires: Taxonomy (enabled), Options (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled), Comment (enabled), Text (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Help	7.12	Manages the display of online help.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Image	7.12	Provides image manipulation tools. Requires: File (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled) Required by: Drupal (Field type(s) in use – see Field list)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	List	7.12	Defines list field types. Use with Options to create selection lists. Requires: Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled), Options (enabled)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Locale	7.12	Adds language handling functionality and enables the translation of the user interface to languages other than English. Required by: Content translation (disabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Menu	7.12	Allows administrators to customize the site navigation menu.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Node	7.12	Allows content to be submitted to the site and displayed on pages. Required by: Drupal

The **compulsory modules** that form part of the Drupal 7 core are:

- **Field** and **Field SQL storage**, which make it possible to jointly add fields to entities, such as nodes and users. We will explain these concepts in this particular section.
- **Filter**, which carries out filtering actions on the contents to be shown.
- **Image**, which makes it possible for the system to handle images.
- **Node**, which carries out the actions necessary for the publication and management of contents.
- **System**, in charge of the general site administration.
- **Taxonomy**, which makes it possible to categorise the content.
- **Text**, which defines simple text field types.
- **User**, necessary for the registration, access and administration of users.

Those modules are compulsory and, given that Drupal could not work without them, it is not possible to do without these and, therefore, it is not possible to disable them.

Other modules are included in the Drupal distribution which, while they form part of the core, are optional. Many of these are shown inactive by default, and so it will be necessary to enable these so they can be used. We highlight the following **optional core modules**:

- **Comment**, makes it possible for the users to make comments about the published contents.
- **Forum**, enables the discussion forums.
- **Locale**, makes it possible to add multiple languages to the site and to translate the interface (in English by default).
- **Menu**, makes it possible to manage the site menus.
- **Path**, makes it possible to rename the URLs of the pages.
- **Search**, enables the contents search on the whole site.
- **Statistics**, saves site access statistics.
- **Update manager**, which checks the available upgrades of modules and themes and enables them to be automatically installed using a Web interface.

In addition to the core modules, it is possible to find many other **additional modules** in the **Drupal modules repository**, which we will talk about in **Unit 9**.

Administration area

All of the site administration is carried out via the **Administration menu**. In Drupal 7 the administration menu is incorporated into the site interface, by means of a **toolbar located in the upper part of the page**. We can also Access the administration options by using the URL **/admin**.

The **Administration menu** is divided into groups of tasks, with there initially being the following main options: Dashboard, Content, Structure, Appearance, People, Modules, Configuration, Reports, Help.

We will study the available Administration area in depth in **Unit 3**.

Nodes and content types

The content types in Drupal derive from a basic content type known as a **node**. The main content type is the **Basic page**, which is used for static site content. At this level we will study now to create content from the existing content types (**Unit 4**) and how to create new content types (**Unit 5**).

D7/D6 Comparison

The administration area

Significant changes have been made in Drupal 7 in the organisation of the administration menu.

Superimposed administration area

One of the first differences that we find in Drupal 7 with respect to the previous versions, is the

superimposed layer for the administration pages

This superimposed layer makes it possible for the administration pages to open above the current page of the site, which allows you to go directly to the site page once the administration tasks have been completed.

Entities and fields

Entities are items that information fields of different types (text, image, file, number, date, etc.) can be added to. Entities are a new concept in Drupal 7 and their purpose is to standardise the administration and presentation of additional fields. Some entities in Drupal are the users, the nodes, the taxonomy terms and the comments. The fields will be seen in detail in those units where we study the Drupal entities. For example, in **Unit 5** we will see how to add fields to the nodes, and in **Unit 10**, how to do it yourself with the users.

Menus

The menus facilitate the **organisation of the published nodes**. Drupal integrates a powerful menus administrator that makes it possible to have multiple and varied menus on the same Website. The menus can be placed in different areas or regions of a theme and they are adapted to the graphic design of the site, established using a selected theme. We will study the menus in **Unit 6**.

Blocks

Blocks are contents that are principally dynamic, which can be enabled in different zones (known as **regions**) from the theme of the site. For example, a block may show the last registered users, the last comments published on the site or a timetable of events.

The blocks can also be enabled and disabled dynamically, for example, for certain contents or roles. We will see more about blocks in **Unit 7**.

Themes

Themes define a specific form of use for the Website. There is an official Drupal book repository that can be downloaded and modified in order to adapt these to the design of our site.

By using themes, Drupal separates the contents of the design, in such a way that it is possible to change the appearance of the site, changing or modifying the theme. The easiest way to personalise the themes is by modifying the CSS style sheets that they contain.

The themes are divided into regions, which are differentiated areas in which contents can be placed. For example, a region may be the header, and another one could be the left-hand side column. We will study the themes in **Unit 8**.

Users, roles and permissions

User access control for the different site functionalities are carried out by means of roles and permissions. A role is a set of permissions, and every user can have different roles assigned to him. Whether the user can carry out a particular action or not is controlled in this way. We will enlarge upon these concepts in **Unit 10**.

Taxonomy

Taxonomy makes it possible to classify the contents of the site. The Drupal **Taxonomy** module comprises two fundamental items: the **vocabulary** (or categories) and the **terms** (or tags). Each piece of vocabulary can group together one or more terms. Drupal enables us to categorise the nodes by means of the **vocabulary** and to describe particular aspects of these by means of the **terms** described. We will study taxonomy in **Unit 11**.

Files structure

At this beginner level we are interested in finding out about some of the folders that make up the structure of Drupal files structure, all located in the root directory of our site:

- **/sites.** This folder stores the site configuration data and all of the additional themes and modules that we incorporate into our Website. Later on, we will study the sub-folders that will contain the folder /sites.
- **/modules.** This folder **only** stores the **core modules**, in separate folders. **No additional modules should be uploaded to this folder.**
- **/themes.** This works in the same way as the modules folder, but it hosts the themes of the site. **No additional modules should be uploaded to this folder.**

We are not concerned with the rest of the folders for now, make sure you do not erase or move any file when we have to work at the files level, for example, to install a module or a theme.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

2 Drupal Installation

This unit explains how to install Drupal 7 step by step. Once installed, an initial configuration is carried out, which we will complete during the course.

This unit starts from the presumption that you already have the following:

- A hosting for the Website, whether on a server or on a local computer, with PHP and MySQL.
- FTP Access that makes it possible for you to upload the files to the hosting server.
- The configuration details of the MySQL database (user, password and name of the database).

If you do not yet have any of the preceding items, you will find further information about how to configure the work environment and work with the contracted hosting in **Annex A: Configuration of the hosting and tools that are necessary**.

On enrolling yourself on the Forcontu supervised course (www.forcontu.com) you will find all of the tools necessary for the course, including a Web hosting that is especially configured to be used with Drupal, in which you will be able to do the work laid out in this manual.

When the unit ends you will have a Website installed on which you will do the rest of the course activities.

Comparative D7/D6

Drupal Installation

The Drupal 7 installation process is very similar to that for Drupal 6, with very small differences that we will see in this unit.

Drupal 7 incorporates two different installation modalities or profiles. The Standard version is the recommended version, which directly installs and configures some of the basic functionalities that are commonly used.

The first pages of the installation process will be shown in English but in the same way as with version 6, Drupal makes it possible to change the language before continuing with the installation. In this way it is possible to completely continue with the installation process in another language. In Drupal 7 it is necessary to upload the translations file (.po) into the translations folder of the installation profile that we are installing (for example, in /profiles/standard/translations).

Among the server requirements, it is necessary to take account of the fact that Drupal 7 now uses the PDO extension of PHP (PHP Data Objects), and so it is necessary for this to be installed on the server and be run correctly.

Unit contents

2.1 Download and install Drupal	14
2.2 Access the status report	27



2.1

Download and install Drupal

This section describes the steps to follow for the initial installation and configuration of **Drupal 7**. For this course we will assume that we have a LAMP or WAMP technology server (Linux or Windows + Apache, MySQL and PHP) and that the system administrator or the hosting provider has provided us with the FTP access details and the access details for the MySQL database. If you do not yet have these data, consult **Annex A**.

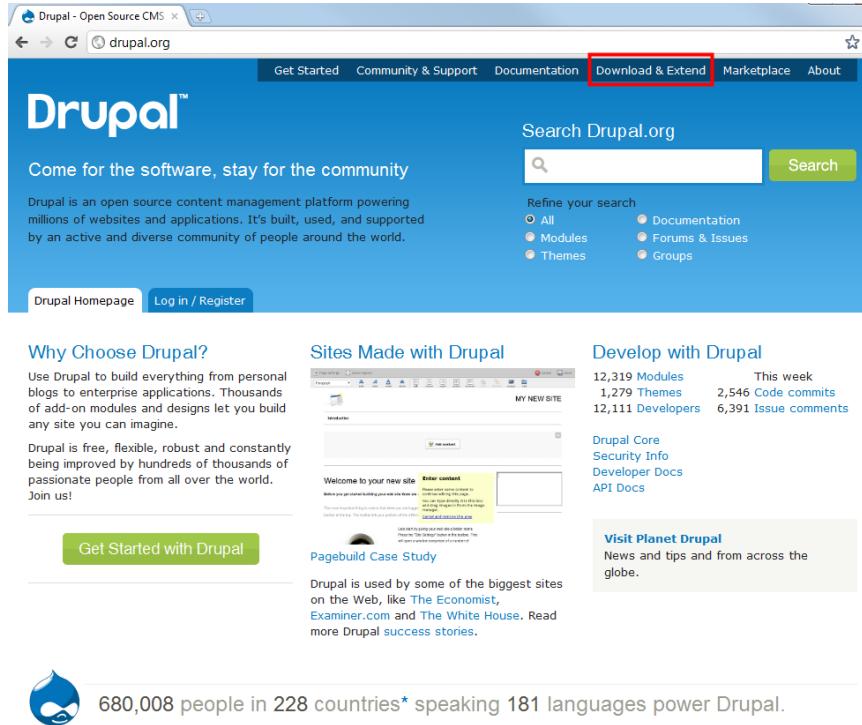
Step 1. Download of Drupal

To download the latest version of Drupal 7, we have to access the page <http://drupal.org>. In the **Download & Extend** section (from the upper menu) **F2.1** we will find direct access to multiple downloads, including the latest available version of Drupal 7.

F2.1

Drupal official page

drupal.org is the official Drupal site. That is where you will find the main resources: latest versions of Drupal, modules, themes and translations.



The screenshot shows the Drupal.org homepage. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links: Get Started, Community & Support, Documentation, **Download & Extend** (which is highlighted with a red box), Marketplace, and About. Below the navigation bar, the main content area features the Drupal logo and the tagline "Come for the software, stay for the community". There is a search bar labeled "Search Drupal.org" with a "Search" button. To the right of the search bar, there is a "Refine your search" section with radio buttons for "All", "Modules", "Themes", "Documentation", "Forums & Issues", and "Groups". Below the search area, there are three main sections: "Why Choose Drupal?", "Sites Made with Drupal", and "Develop with Drupal". The "Why Choose Drupal?" section includes a "Get Started with Drupal" button. The "Sites Made with Drupal" section shows screenshots of websites built with Drupal. The "Develop with Drupal" section displays statistics: 12,319 Modules, 1,279 Themes, 12,111 Developers, 2,546 Code commits, and 6,391 Issue comments. At the bottom, there is a statistic: "680,008 people in 228 countries* speaking 181 languages power Drupal."

NOTE

Course with Forcontu

If you have enrolled on the Forcontu Expert in Drupal 7 course you will receive all of the tools necessary to install Drupal, including web hosting to do the coursework.

It is not necessary to be registered on the portal to download the Drupal software, simply access download page and click on "**Download Drupal 7.x**" (where **x** will be the latest available version of Drupal 7).

F2.2

The screenshot shows the Drupal.org download page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like 'Get Started', 'Community & Support', 'Documentation', 'Download & Extend', 'Marketplace', and 'About'. Below the navigation is a search bar with the placeholder 'Search Drupal.org' and a green 'Search' button. A sub-navigation bar below the search bar includes 'Drupal Homepage', 'Log in / Register', 'Refine your search ▾', and a dropdown menu. The main content area is titled 'Download & Extend' and contains tabs for 'Download & Extend Home', 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations', and 'Installation Profiles'. The 'Drupal Core' tab is selected. Under 'Core', there's a large green button labeled 'Download Drupal 7.8'. To the right of this are sections for 'Installation Profiles', 'Themes', and 'Translations', each with their own sub-links.

F2.2**Downloads zone**

Select "Download Drupal 7.x" to download the latest version of Drupal.

Download & Extend

This screenshot shows the 'Download & Extend' section of the Drupal.org website. It features a navigation bar with 'Download & Extend Home' (selected), 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations', and 'Installation Profiles'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Download & Extend Home', 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations', and 'Installation Profiles'. The 'Drupal Core' tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'Download Drupal core files, and extend your site with modules, themes, translations and installation profiles.' It includes sections for 'Core' (with a highlighted 'Download Drupal 7.8' button), 'Installation Profiles' (listing 'Community Site', 'E-commerce', 'News Site', 'Wiki', and 'More Profiles'), 'Themes' (listing 'About Themes & Subthemes', 'Most Installed Themes', 'New Themes', 'Most Active Themes', and 'Search for More Themes'), and 'Translations' (listing 'Catalan', 'French', 'Hungarian', 'Dutch', and 'All Translations').

We now find ourselves will a list of available versions of the core, of both Drupal 7 and Drupal 6. The recommended versions are shown in green. **F2.3**

By clicking on the **Notes** link of each available version, we will be able to consult the changes that have been incorporated into Drupal as compared to the previous version. For example, version 7.5 does not incorporate new functionalities as compared to version 7.4, but some errors are corrected that could entail security problems, and therefore it is highly advisable to update the Websites with earlier versions to the newer one.

Download & Extend

This screenshot shows the 'Download & Extend' section of the Drupal.org website. It features a navigation bar with 'Download & Extend Home' (selected), 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations', and 'Installation'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'View' (selected) and 'Version control'. The main content area is titled 'Posted by Drupal on September 28, 2003 at 4:31pm'. It includes a section for 'Get started by downloading the official Drupal core files. These official releases come bundled with a variety of modules and themes to give you a good starting point to help build your site. Drupal core includes basic community features like blogging, forums, and contact forms, and can be easily extended by downloading other contributed modules and themes.' Below this is a note: 'Before installing Drupal, please review the [system requirements](#) and the [Installation Guide](#)'. There's also a link to 'Information on version numbers'.

F2.3**Download the latest version of Drupal 7**

We will download the latest version of Drupal 7 (in green). The download is available as a file with the **.tar.gz** extension or a **.zip**.

We can also consult the latest changes introduced into the version via the Notes link.

Downloads**Recommended releases**

Version	Downloads	Date	Links
7.7	tar.gz (2.63 MB) zip (3.04 MB)	2011-Jul-28	Notes
6.22	tar.gz (1.05 MB) zip (1.21 MB)	2011-May-25	Notes

Development releases

Version	Downloads	Date	Links
7.x-dev	tar.gz (2.63 MB) zip (3.05 MB)	2011-Aug-01	Notes
6.x-dev	tar.gz (1.05 MB) zip (1.21 MB)	2011-Jul-27	Notes

The downloaded file has the name **drupal-7.x.tar.gz** or **drupal-7.x.zip**, according to the type of compression selected. The extensions **.tar.gz** and **.zip** indicate a specific type of file compressing. They are both recognizable by Windows file compressors and those of other operating systems, and we can also use applications such as WinZip, Winrar or 7-zip for decompressing them. To continue the installation, **unzip the downloaded file** with your usual

Links of interest**Official Drupal page**

Start page

drupal.org

Downloads zone

drupal.org/download

Download from the core

drupal.org/project/drupal**F2.4****Files and folders contained in the file drupal-7.x.tar.gz or drupal-7.x.zip**

Content of the downloaded file when you open it with the decompression software. The files and folders shown in the image are those that have to be uploaded to the server. They have to be uploaded without the folder from the upper level (drupal-7.x).

compression/decompression file software. If you do not have any software of this type you can download the **7-zip** freeware at no charge, available at the URL: <http://www.7-zip.org> (If you do not have this software or you do not know how to use it, consult **Annex A**).

Step 2. Upload files to the server

You will find a main file, *drupal-7.x* inside the downloaded file, which contains a more complete structure of folders and files, which we will analyse during the course.

F2.4

Nombre	Tamaño	Tamaño comp...	Modificado	Creado	Acceso	Atributos	Encriptac...
includes	2 025 677	545 560	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
misc	564 407	231 945	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
modules	7 798 846	1 918 136	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
profiles	18 301	6 544	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
scripts	38 376	13 565	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
sites	20 802	7 829	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
themes	325 389	185 912	2011-01-05 07:25			D	
.htaccess	5 567	2 231	2010-11-23 03:59				
CHANGELOG...	48 948	15 057	2011-01-05 07:17				
COPYRIGHT...	984	570	2010-01-02 11:20				
INSTALL.my...	1 514	782	2010-01-11 17:25				
INSTALL.pgs...	1 918	875	2010-04-07 16:07				
INSTALL.sql...	1 358	672	2010-11-29 03:55				
INSTALL.txt	17 831	6 116	2011-01-01 23:41				
LICENSE.txt	18 060	6 857	2009-01-26 15:08				
MAINTAIN...	7 368	1 943	2011-01-04 02:03				
README.txt	3 534	1 464	2010-12-02 01:20				
UPGRADE.txt	8 850	2 735	2010-10-27 19:32				
authorize.php	6 669	2 532	2010-12-29 05:07				
cron.php	779	443	2009-11-02 04:30				
index.php	586	382	2009-10-15 15:07				
install.php	751	462	2010-10-22 03:53				
robots.txt	1 540	657	2010-12-29 05:05				
update.php	17 630	5 768	2011-01-04 06:57				
web.config	2 051	826	2010-07-28 03:28				
xmlrpc.php	475	287	2010-10-02 02:22				

We now have to upload this file structure to the server where we are going to install Drupal. We will do this by using a **FTP (File Transfer Protocol) software**, which is a specific type of software for transferring files computer to a server and vice-versa. (If you do not have this software or you do not know how to use it, consult **Annex A**).

These files have to be uploaded to the **root directory** where you want to install your Website. You first have to decide if the Website that you want to install will be "hung" directly on the path provided by the administrator or within a specific folder. Create the folder structure that your server requires and upload the Drupal files contained in the main folder (without including the main folder). This will prevent the name of the main folder from appearing in your site's URL.

You can see the possible installation options here:

- 1) Installation with domain or sub-domain (recommended):

Correct: <http://www.example.com/>

Correct: <http://myweb.example.com/>

Incorrect: <http://www.example.com/drupal-7.x/>
 Incorrect: <http://myweb.example.com/drupal-7.x/>

- 2) Installation in additional folder/**myweb** (not recommended):

Correct: <http://www.example.com/myweb/>

Incorrect: <http://www.example.com/myweb/drupal-7.x/>

Therefore, we recommend using a domain or sub-domain (option 1) as far as possible and not an additional folder (option 2), even though we are developing the project at a non-definitive location. This will facilitate the migration of the site to its final location, once this has been completed.

Option 2 should only be used when we want the final URL of our site to be the **www.example.com/myweb** type, and we are sure that we are not going to use a private domain for the site.

Consult **Annex A** for further information about the administration of the hosting and the use of the tools described in this section.

Step 3. Start of the installation on the browser

Once the files have been uploaded to the server, we can begin the Drupal installation, which will be done by using a Web browser.

Write the URL of the site where you have uploaded the files in your usual browser:

- 1) If you used option 1 from the previous step, write the domain or sub-domain name directly:

<http://www.example.com/>
<http://miweb.example.com>

- 2) If you used option 2 from the previous step, write the domain and the additional folder (remember that this is not the recommended option):

<http://www.example.com/miweb/>

You need to load the installation profile selection page **F2.5 (Select an installation profile)**. If this page is not shown, check the URL loaded on your browser and make sure that it refers to the right file where you have uploaded the Drupal file.

Also check that all of the files and folders have been uploaded, including the **.htaccess** file.

NOTE

Common mistakes

1) Uploading the files with the main folder, drupal-7.x. You should only upload the folders and files that it contains, but not the main file.

2) Uploading the files on the wrong site of the server. If, when you access via FTP, the server contains a folder *public_html* or *www*, this files must be inside this folder in order to be visible from the Web page.

3) Forgetting a file. Also check that the FTP files upload queue has been processed correctly and that no file has been left without being uploaded.

F2.5

Select an installation profile

Drupal 7 incorporates two different installation modalities or profiles. The Standard version is the recommended version, which it directly installs and configures some of the basic functionalities that are commonly used.

Select an installation profile



Standard

Install with commonly used features pre-configured.

Minimal

Start with only a few modules enabled.

▶ Choose profile

- Choose language
- Verify requirements
- Set up database
- Install profile
- Configure site
- Finished

Save and continue

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Step 4. Installation of Drupal in Spanish

The first pages of the installation process will be shown in English, but Drupal makes it possible (after version 6) to change the language before continuing with the installation. In this way it is possible to continue the installation process totally in Spanish. It was mandatory to do the installation in English in the version before number 6, and once it was installed the language of the site could be changed. In Drupal 7, as we will see, it will also be possible to change the language later on, regardless of the language that we use to do the installation.

In figure **F2.6** we see how Drupal enables us to continue with the installation in English and it offers us help (also in English) to continue with the installation in another language (link: *Learn how to install Drupal in other languages*). Installation in Spanish is a manual process that we will explain below.

F2.6

Language selection I

Drupal 7 makes it possible to do the installation in other languages. Before continuing we will see how to do the installation in Spanish.

Choose language



English (built-in)

[Learn how to install Drupal in other languages](#)

Save and continue

✓ Choose profile

- #### ▶ Choose language
- Verify requirements
 - Set up database
 - Install profile
 - Configure site
 - Finished

When we click on *Learn how to install Drupal in other languages*, the system will show us the steps to be followed for continuing with the installation in another language. **F2.7**

Choose language

Follow these steps to translate Drupal into your language:

1. Download a translation from the [translation server](#).
2. Place it into the following directory:
`/profiles/standard/translations/`

For more information on installing Drupal in different languages, visit the [drupal.org handbook page](#).

How should the installation continue?

- [Reload the language selection page after adding translations](#)
- [Continue installation in English](#)

✓ Choose profile
▶ Choose language
Verify requirements
Set up database
Install profile
Configure site
Finished

F2.7**Language selection II**

As specified in the help for Drupal installation in other languages, we have to download the language package and upload it by FTP to the folder `/profiles/standard/translations`

We must first download the translation package of the language we want to install. All of the Drupal translations, of both the core and of the additional modules, are located at <http://localize.drupal.org>. **F2.8** We can also get to this URL from the front Drupal page (drupal.org), by clicking on *Download & Extend* and then on the *Translations* tab.

Download & Extend

Download & Extend Home Drupal Core Modules Themes **Translations** Installation Profiles

Drupal translations

Welcome to Drupal project translations! This service is used by translators from around the world to maintain localizations of all projects on drupal.org. Just pick your language and you'll be able to download existing work and contribute to the translations.

Install Drupal localized with translations from here using [Localized Drupal](#). You can also [set up to contribute](#) to these translations right from your Drupal site! For already installed sites, use the [Localization update module](#) to download the right translation files for the right projects you use.

Read more about [how localize.drupal.org works](#) and [how can you contribute](#) in the drupal.org handbooks.

Language	Drupal core progress	Contributors
Afrikaans		10
Albanian		3
Amharic		1
Arabic		22

Quick navigation
pick a language: Alternatively you can [explore languages](#).
Or pick a project: Alternatively you can [explore projects](#).

Quick statistics
96 translation groups
3365 contributors
6549 projects managed
24752 releases parsed (0 in queue)

F2.8**Drupal translations**

In this section of the portal you will find the translations available in Spanish and in other languages. You can access directly via <http://localize.drupal.org>

Once on the translations page (localize.drupal.org), locate Spanish, either directly in the list of languages or using the search function that you will find in the right-hand column. From the Spanish translation page (entitled *Spanish overview*) you will be able to download the latest version of the translation of the core for Drupal 7. **F2.9**

Although this is not necessary now, we will return to this page to download the translations of the additional modules that we are going to be studying and installing during the course. On this page you will also find instructions about how to collaborate in the Drupal translation.

F2.9**Spanish translation page**

We will find the latest versions of the translations on the Spanish translation page, of both the core and the modules contributed. It is also possible to assist with the translation of Drupal into Spanish by submitting translations or even moderating the translations sent by other members of the community.

NOTE**Assisting with the translation of Drupal**

As a member of the Drupal community, you can assist with the translation of Drupal into Spanish, submitting translations of the core or of modules contributed. You can also ask to assist with your participation as a moderator and collaborator in the checking and validation of the translations sent by other community members.

Download & Extend
[Download & Extend Home](#) [Drupal Core](#) [Modules](#) [Themes](#) [Translations](#) [Installation I](#)
Spanish overview
[Overview](#) [Board](#)

Spanish translation team - Grupo de traducción al Español

- **Diccionario - Libro de estilo** Wiki para crear un glosario de términos, manuales para traductores y libro de estilo en Español.
- **Traducción de Drupal core** Paquete de archivos .po que componen la traducción de Drupal, y los módulos del Core, al español neutro.
- **Interfaz de traducción:** Aportar sugerencias de traducción para cadenas de texto pendientes de traducir. Los moderadores validarán las sugerencias y seleccionarán la que será finalmente utilizada por la comunidad. Permite importar nuevas cadenas de texto (actualizaciones de módulos) y exportarlas para ser utilizadas en producción.
- **Foro de traducciones:** Iniciar y seguir debates sobre palabras o cadenas de texto concretas. Las discusiones sobre palabras establecen una base sólida sobre la que luego construir las sugerencias que serán posteadas en localize.drupal.org
- **Glosario de términos:** Establece una relación de traducción "automática" para los términos más comunes.
- **Directrices para la traducción:** Ofrece ideas sobre cómo realizar la traducción al español, de modo que los traductores tengamos un criterio homogéneo. Son ideas abiertas a discusión y por tanto no son realmente un "Libro de Estilo".
- **Moderadores de la traducción:** Cómo convertirse en moderador y líneas guía para moderar las traducciones.

Top downloads**Drupal core**

Project	Version	Downloads	Date created	Up to date as of
Drupal core	5.23	Download (414.14 KB)	2011-Jun-23	2011-Jul-14
Drupal core	6.22	Download (527.26 KB)	2011-Aug-09	2011-Aug-17
Drupal core	7.7	Download (586.94 KB)	2011-Aug-09	2011-Aug-17

It is necessary to download the last file available (and recommended) for version 7 of the core (Drupal core). The downloaded file, **drupal-7.x.es.po**, is of the **.po** type, which is the extension utilised in Drupal for the translation files.

The next step consists of uploading the translation file by FTP to the installation profile folder: **F2.10**

/profiles/standard/translations

F2.10**Translation file**

Upload the translation file to the folder /profiles/standard/translations

Nombre de archivo	Tamaño...	Tipo de archivo	Ultima modificación	Permisos
..				
drupal-7.0.es.po	544.973	Archivo PO	03/05/2011 9:03:31	0644
README.txt	152	Documento de texto	02/05/2011 21:30:58	0644

Once the translation file has been uploaded, and taking account of the fact that the last page loaded on your browser is the one shown in the figure, **F2.7** click on the *Reload the language selection page after adding translations*, or re-start the installation, going back to **Step 3**. Therefore, you should not worry if you have closed your browser window; you only have to load the URL of your site again, as stated in **Step 3** of this particular section.

The system now permits us to select Spanish, as shown in figure. **F2.11** Once the language has been selected, we will see how the menu on the left changes to Spanish. The rest of the installation will be done in Spanish, although it is possible that some chains that are not translated are shown during the process.

F2.11

Selection of the installed language

Once the translation file has been uploaded to the server, the option to continue with the installation in Spanish will be available.

Step 5. Verify requirements

Drupal will then verify whether the server meets the minimum requirements needed for installing it. Take account of the fact that **should these requirements not be met, you will not be able to carry on with the installation.**

Some typical configuration problems:

- The PHP command **register_globals** must be de-activated (`register_globals: off`).
- The PHP guideline **safe_mode** must be de-activated (`safe_mode: off`).
- Drupal 7 utilises the PDO (PHP Data Objects) extension, and so it must be installed on the server and run correctly.

The way of modifying these parameters to enable the Drupal 7 installation will depend on the hosting that we have contracted, and it is necessary to consult the system administrator or the hosting provider to resolve these.

The most common configuration errors along with the minimum software and hardware requirements are set out on the page <http://drupal.org/requirements> (in English).

NOTE**Create the database**

Consult **Annex A** if you need help to create the database. If you do not have access to create a new database on your hosting, contact the system administrator for him to give you those details.

Step 6. Set up database

Once all of the requirements problems have been corrected, we move on to the next step of the installation, where the system will ask us for the details for accessing the MySQL database. **F2.12**

Complete the following details concerning the database and click on "**Save and continue**:

- Database name
- Database username
- Database password

F2.12**Configuration of the database**

When the requirements problems have been overcome, the actual installation of Drupal begins. We are then asked for the data for accessing the MySQL database.

Database configuration



Database type *
 MySQL, MariaDB, or equivalent
 SQLite
 The type of database your Drupal data will be stored in.

Database name *

 The name of the database your Drupal data will be stored in. It must exist on your server before Drupal can be installed.

Database username *

Database password

ADVANCED OPTIONS

Save and continue

The "**advanced options**" tab **F2.13** will only be displayed if the system administrator has provided us with additional database connection details.

It is possible to introduce a prefix for the tables among the additional options. This enables us to make various Drupal installations in the same database, differentiating the names of the tables. We will not use this option for this course. Whenever possible, it is recommended that you use an exclusive database for every Drupal installation.

▼ ADVANCED OPTIONS

These options are only necessary for some sites. If you're not sure what you should enter here, leave the default settings or check with your hosting provider.

Database host *

If your database is located on a different server, change this.

Database port

If your database server is listening on a non-standard port, enter its number.

Table prefix

If more than one application will be sharing this database, enter a table prefix such as *drupal_* for your Drupal site here.

[Save and continue](#)

F2.13

Advanced database options

The advanced options make it possible to define special settings for particular servers. Do not modify these options unless the system administrator specifies this to you.

If we have correctly inputted the access data into the database, Drupal will begin an automatic installation process that may take up to 1 or 2 minutes. **F2.14**
Do not close the browser during this process.

Installing Drupal



Completed 12 of 28.
Installed *Database logging* module. 43%

- ✓ Choose profile
- ✓ Choose language
- ✓ Verify requirements
- ✓ Set up database
- ▶ **Install profile**

[Configure site](#)

[Finished](#)

F2.14

Installing Drupal

Once the server configuration has been checked and the access details for the database accepted, the automatic installation process begins.

Step 7. Configure site

The system will then ask us for basic information in order to configure the site, structured in the following way: **F2.15**

- **Site information.** We will have to state the name or title of the site and a valid electronic mail address, which can be that of the administrator user.
- **Site maintenance account** (administrator account). You need to state a user name (typically **admin**), associated with a valid e-mail account and a password. Even though the system informs us that the password is not secure enough, you can continue with installation with no problem. You do need to make sure that the password is written correctly in both fields (password and confirm password). Of course, it is recommended that you use a secure password, unrelated to the title or domain name of the site.
- **Server settings.** We can state the default country and the time zone for the site. The time zone for the server does not have to correspond to the time zone for the site, since the latter could offer its services from another country. Check that the stated time zone corresponds to your local time.
- **Update notifications.** When you activate the "**Check for updates automatically**" option, the system will periodically check whether there are Updates to Drupal or to the modules or themes installed and it will notify us of this via the administration area.
If we check the "**Receive e-mail notifications**" option, we will only receive the important Update notifications, such as security upgrades, in the maintenance mail account.

Configure site



- ✓ Choose profile
- ✓ Choose language
- ✓ Verify requirements
- ✓ Set up database
- ✓ Install profile
- ▶ Configure site

Finished

SITE INFORMATION

Site name *
Learn Drupal with Forcontu

Site e-mail address *
info@example.com

Automated e-mails, such as registration information, will be sent from this address. Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent these e-mails from being flagged as spam.

SITE MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT

Username *
admin

Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, and underscores.

E-mail address *
info@example.com

Password *

Password strength: **Strong**

Confirm password *

Passwords match: yes

To make your password stronger:

- Add uppercase letters

SERVER SETTINGS

Default country
Spain

Select the default country for the site.

Default time zone
Europe/London: Thursday, December 29, 2011 - 14:34 +0000

By default, dates in this site will be displayed in the chosen time zone.

UPDATE NOTIFICATIONS

Check for updates automatically

Receive e-mail notifications

The system will notify you when updates and important security releases are available for installed components. Anonymous information about your site is sent to [Drupal.org](#).

Step 8. Completion of the installation

The Drupal installation ends with the previous step. After the congratulations message, **F2.16** we can access the installed site by clicking on "**Visit your new site**". You can also access it directly by writing the URL of your site in the browser (For example, <http://www.example.com>).

The current appearance of your site should be similar to the one shown in figure **F2.17**.

F2.15

Configure site

After doing the installation, the system will ask us for some basic site configuration details, such as the name and the e-mail address of the portal Website and the access data for the administrator user (admin).

It is also possible to establish the time zone for the site, because this does not always have to coincide with the time zone of the server that it is hosted on.

Finally, Drupal makes it possible to automatically check whether there are upgrades to Drupal and the modules and themes installed.

All of these options can be modified at any other time, from the site administration area.

F2.16

End of the installation

Congratulations, Drupal is now installed on your server.

Drupal installation complete



Congratulations, you installed Drupal!

[Visit your new site.](#)

- ✓ Choose profile
- ✓ Choose language
- ✓ Verify requirements
- ✓ Set up database
- ✓ Install profile
- ✓ Configure site
- ✓ Finished

F2.17

Initial status of the site after the installation

Drupal front page after the installation. This page will be kept like this until you create some content (promoting the front page) or you change the start page of site.

A screenshot of a Drupal 7 website's front page. At the top, there is a dark header bar with links for Dashboard, Content, Structure, Appearance, People, Modules, Configuration, Reports, Help, and user account information (Hello admin, Log out). Below the header is a search bar with 'Add content' and 'Find content' buttons. The main content area has a blue header with the text 'Learn Drupal with Forcontu' and a small logo. A 'Home' button is visible. The main body of the page says 'Welcome to Learn Drupal with Forcontu'. It includes a search bar, a 'Navigation' menu with a 'Add content' link, and a message stating 'No front page content has been created yet.' with a 'Add new content' link.

Access the status report

2.2

Before going further into the administration area and making some adjustments to our site, we are going to check the status of the installation by accessing the **Status report**. **F2.18** To do this we have to access the following option via the administration menu on the upper bar:

Administration⇒Reports⇒Status reports

The **Status report** sets out possible problems with the installation and configuration of the site, as well as providing us with information about the operating system and about the applications and extensions that have been installed.

URL Status report
`/admin/reports/status`

Status report

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#)

Here you can find a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on drupal.org's support forums and project issue queues.

Drupal	7.10
Access to update.php	Protected
Configuration file	Protected
Cron maintenance tasks	Last run 12 min 23 sec ago You can run cron manually . To run cron from outside the site, go to http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/cron.php?cron_key=8ZIWgTdl1wMZeBF39l7E2QU3rgkpWzmy8pgmv7-1YLU
Database system	MySQL, MariaDB, or equivalent
Database system version	5.1.56
Database updates	Up to date
Drupal core update status	Up to date
File system	Writable (<i>public</i> download method)
GD library PNG support	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)
GD library rotate and desaturate effects	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)
Node Access Permissions	Disabled
If the site is experiencing problems with permissions to content, you may have to rebuild the permissions cache. Rebuilding will remove all privileges to content and replace them with permissions based on the current modules and settings. Rebuilding may take some time if there is a lot of content or complex permission settings. After rebuilding has completed, content will automatically use the new permissions. Rebuild permissions	
PHP	5.2.17 (more information)
PHP extensions	Enabled
PHP memory limit	128M
PHP register globals	Disabled
Unicode library	PHP Mbstring Extension
Update notifications	Enabled
Upload progress	Enabled (PECL uploadprogress)
Web server	Apache/2.2.17 (Unix) mod_ssl/2.2.17 OpenSSL/0.9.8e-fips-rhel5 mod_auth_passthrough/2.1 mod_bwlimited/1.4 FrontPage/5.0.2.2635

F2.18

Status report

The site status report tells us if there is any problem with the configuration of the site.

It also shows information about the operating system and about the applications installed.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

3 The administration area

The entire administration of the site is carried out using the **Administration menu**. In Drupal 7 the administration menu is incorporated into the site, using a tool bar situated on the upper part of the page.

We can also access the management options using the URL **/admin**.

The **Administration menu** is divided into a group of tasks, initially having the following main options:

- Dashboard
- Content
- Structure
- Appearance
- People
- Modules
- Configuration
- Report
- Help

Comparative D7/D6 The administration area

Important changes have been made in the administration menu in Drupal 7. This also includes a Dashboard that can be customized that enables us to group together all of the activities and functionalities that we consider useful for the periodic management of the site is included.

Administrative overlay area

One of the first differences that we find in Drupal 7 with respect to the previous versions is the **overlay for the administrative pages**. This overlay makes it possible for the management pages to open above the current page of the site, which allows you to go directly to the site page once the management tasks have been completed.

Find the  symbol in the upper right-hand corner of the upper imposed window so as to close it and go back to the Website. We will see how to disable the administrative overlay in this unit.

Unit contents

3.1 The administration menu.....	30
3.2 Dashboard.....	37
3.3 Shortcuts.....	38
3.4 General site configuration.....	41



3.1

The administration menu

URL Administration
[/admin](#)

The entire administration of the site is carried out using the **Administration menu**. In Drupal 7 the administration menu is incorporated into the site, using a tool bar situated on the upper part of the page. **F3.1**

We can also access the management options using the URL [/admin](#).

F3.1

Administration menu

Drupal front page after the installation. This page will be kept like this until you create some content (promoting the front page) or you change the start page of the site.



The **Administration menu** is divided into a group of tasks, initially having the following main options:

- Dashboard
- Content
- Structure
- Appearance
- People
- Modules
- Configuration
- Report
- Help

NOTE

Administration menu

It is important to highlight the fact that the administration menu options and sub-options will vary depending on the modules installed and enabled. In fact, one of the first actions that we will have to do after installing a module will be to identify and locate which new options have been added to the Administration menu.

Although we will be studying the different management options in depth, we will provide an instruction to each one of the main options in this section. Before this, we will see what the administrative overlay is.

Administrative overlay area

One of the first differences that we find in Drupal 7 with respect to the previous versions is the **overlay for the administrative pages**. This overlay makes it possible for the management pages to open above the current page of the site, which allows you to go directly to the site page once the management tasks have been completed.

Find the symbol in the upper right-hand corner of the overlay window and close it to go back to the Website. We will see how to disable the administrative overlay later in this unit.

So as to better understand how the administrative overlay works, compare figures **F3.2** (enabled) and **F3.3** (disabled).

F3.2**Enabled administrative overlay**

In Drupal 7 the management pages are shown by default on an overlay on the site.

F3.3**Disabled administrative overlay**

By disabling the administrative overlay we browse through the administration area using the classic method that was used in previous versions of Drupal.

If you prefer the classic navigation method for the administration area, you can disable the overlay by following one of these two paths:

- 1) Disable the administrative overlay for the current user.** Access the editing of your account from the link "Hello admin" located to the right of the administration menu, next to the "Log out" link. Edit your account and disable the "Use the overlay for the administrative pages" link. **F3.4**

ADMINISTRATIVE OVERLAY

- Use the overlay for administrative pages.
Show administrative pages on top of the page you started from.

F3.4**Disable the administrative overlay**

Disabling the administrative overlay for a particular user.

- 2) Disable the administrative overlay for all of the users of the site.** If you do not want the administrative overlay to be available for any site user, disable the **Overlay** module (**Administration⇒ Modules**).

Dashboard

URL Dashboard
/admin/dashboard

The **Dashboard** **F3.5** enables us to group together in a single page all of the activity and functionality that we consider useful for the periodic administration of the site.

In this way we can smoothly manage the content, comments, users, etc. with no need to go into each one of the administration options.

By default the dashboard shows the recent content (initially empty), the search form and the last users of the site. In the next section we will see how to customize the dashboard.

F3.5
Dashboard

Configure the dashboard with the most commonly used administration functions on your site.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Dashboard. At the top, there is a breadcrumb navigation: Home > Administration > Dashboard. Below the breadcrumb, there is a link to '+ Customize dashboard'. The dashboard is divided into three main sections: 'Recent content' (which displays 'No content available.'), 'Search form' (with a search input field and a 'Search' button), and 'Who's new' (which lists 'admin').

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L.. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Content

URL Content
/admin/content

From **Content** **F3.6** we can manage the content and comments created on the site, as well as create new content.

F3.6
Content

Management of site contents and comments.

The screenshot shows the Content management page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb navigation: Home > Administration > Content. To the right of the breadcrumb, there are two tabs: 'CONTENT' and 'COMMENTS'. Below the tabs, there is a link to '+ Add content'. The page has two main sections: 'SHOW ONLY ITEMS WHERE' (with dropdown menus for 'status' and 'type') and 'UPDATE OPTIONS' (with a dropdown menu for 'Publish selected content' and a 'Update' button). At the bottom, there is a table with columns for 'TITLE', 'TYPE', 'AUTHOR', 'STATUS', 'UPDATED', and 'OPERATIONS'. The table displays 'No content available.'

Structure

URL Structure
/admin/structure

From **Structure** **F3.7** we can access the administration of items related to the structure of the site. Initially are available the administration of **Blocks**, **Menus**, **Taxonomy** and **Content types**, which we will study in detail in the coming units.

As we install new modules that affect the structure of the site, these will be added to this list of options.

Home » Administration

Structure

- Blocks**
Configure what block content appears in your site's sidebars and other regions.
- Content types**
Manage content types, including default status, front page promotion, comment settings, etc.
- Menus**
Add new menus to your site, edit existing menus, and rename and reorganize menu links.
- Taxonomy**
Manage tagging, categorization, and classification of your content.

F3.7**Structure**

Options related to the structure of the site (blocks, menus, taxonomy, content types, etc.).

Appearance

In **Appearance** **F3.8** we find the themes installed and other options for viewing the items of the site. We can enable and disable the themes installed, selecting the default theme of the site and configuring the administration theme.

Home » Administration

Appearance

- LIST** **UPDATE** **SETTINGS**

Set and configure the default theme for your website. Alternative [themes](#) are available.

+ Install new theme

ENABLED THEMES

Theme	Description	Actions
 Bartik	Bartik is a clean, modern theme with many regions. It was one of the original themes for the D7 release.	Edit Delete

Bartik 7.10 (default theme)
A flexible, recolorable theme with many regions.
[Settings](#)

URL Appearance
</admin/appearance>**F3.8****Appearance**

Installation and configuration of themes, as well as other configuration options related to the viewing of the different items of the site.

People

From **People** **F3.9** we will manage the registered users on the site and the roles and permissions assigned to the same.

Home » Administration

People

- LIST** **PERMISSIONS**

+ Add user

SHOW ONLY USERS WHERE

role	any
permission	any
status	any

UPDATE OPTIONS

<input type="checkbox"/>	USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin	active	• administrator	19 min 13 sec	1 min 29 sec ago	edit

URL People
</admin/people>**F3.9****People**

Management of users, roles and permissions.

URL Modules

/admin/modules

F3.10

Modules

Installation, updating, configuration, enabling and disabling of modules.

Modules

From **Modules** **F3.10** we can manage and configure the modules installed on the site. It is possible to install modules, update them to the most recent versions, enable them/ disable them and access the specific configuration options of each module.

The screenshot shows the 'Modules' page with the following details:

- Header:** Home > Administration > Modules
- Buttons:** LIST, UPDATE, UNINSTALL
- Text:** Download additional contributed modules to extend Drupal's functionality. Regularly review and install available updates to maintain a secure and current site. Always run the update script each time a module is updated.
- Section:** CORE

ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	Aggregator	7.10	Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds).	Help Permissions Configure
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block	7.10	Controls the visual building blocks a page is constructed with. Blocks are boxes of content rendered into an area, or region, of a web page. Required by: Dashboard (enabled)	Help Permissions Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Blog	7.10	Enables multi-user blogs.	Help Permissions Configure

URL Configuration

/admin/config

Configuration

Configuration of the system and of the additional modules installed.

In the Figure, the description of each available option has been concealed (*Hide the descriptions option*).

Configuration

In **Configuration** **F3.11** we find the options for system configuration and the additional modules installed. Many options will appear in this section as we install and enable additional modules. The new options will be grouped together into the existing categories or new categories will be added, as the module is programmed. We will go over these options as the course progresses.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' page with the following sections:

- Header:** Home > Administration > Configuration
- Section:** SYSTEM
 - Site information
 - Actions
 - Cron
- Section:** USER INTERFACE
 - Shortcuts
- Section:** DEVELOPMENT
 - Performance
 - Logging and errors
 - Maintenance mode
- Section:** WEB SERVICES
 - RSS publishing
- Section:** PEOPLE
 - Account settings
 - IP address blocking
- Section:** CONTENT AUTHORIZING
 - Text formats
- Section:** MEDIA
 - File system
 - Image styles
 - Image toolkit
- Section:** SEARCH AND METADATA
 - Search settings
 - URL aliases
 - Clean URLs
- Section:** REGIONAL AND LANGUAGE
 - Regional settings
 - Date and time

Reports

Reports F3.12 give us access to information related to the configuration and activity of the site. In addition to the **Status report**, which we accessed to check for correct installation of Drupal, we can consult **Available updates** and see all of the site activity in **Recent log messages**. We will review all of these options as the course progresses.

URL Reports
</admin/reports>

Home » Administration

Reports

Status report

Get a status report about your site's operation and any detected problems.

Available updates

Get a status report about available updates for your installed modules and themes.

Recent log messages

View events that have recently been logged.

Field list

Overview of fields on all entity types.

Top 'access denied' errors

View 'access denied' errors (403s).

Top 'page not found' errors

View 'page not found' errors (404s).

Top search phrases

View most popular search phrases.

F3.12

Reports

Information related to the site activity: status report, available updates, record of events, errors, etc.

Help

The **Help** topics F3.13 offer further information about the modules installed and their configuration.

URL Help
</admin/help>

Home » Administration

Help

Follow these steps to set up and start using your website:

1. **Configure your website** Once logged in, visit the [administration section](#), where you can [customize and configure](#) all aspects of your website.
2. **Enable additional functionality** Next, visit the [module list](#) and enable features which suit your specific needs. You can find additional modules in the [Drupal modules download section](#).
3. **Customize your website design** To change the "look and feel" of your website, visit the [themes section](#). You may choose from one of the included themes or download additional themes from the [Drupal themes download section](#).
4. **Start posting content** Finally, you can [add new content](#) for your website.

For more information, refer to the specific topics listed in the next section or to the [online Drupal handbooks](#). You may also post at the [Drupal forum](#) or view the wide range of [other support options](#) available.

Help topics

Help is available on the following items:

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------|------------|------------------|
| • Block | • Field UI | • Number | • Taxonomy |
| • Color | • File | • Options | • Text |
| • Comment | • Filter | • Overlay | • Toolbar |
| • Contextual links | • Help | • Path | • Update manager |
| • Dashboard | • Image | • RDF | • User |
| • Database logging | • List | • Search | |
| • Field | • Menu | • Shortcut | |
| • Field SQL storage | • Node | • System | |

F3.13

Help

Help topics related to the modules installed on the site.

Administration area

URL Administration area

/admin

URL Index of tasks by modules

/admin/index

F3.14

Administration area

The default grouping of the administration area is by tasks.

In addition to using the administration menu, we can access the **Administration area** via the URL **/admin**. The administration options can be presented in two forms arranged by tasks **F3.14** (with the same content as the administration menu) or as an index of options grouped together by modules.

F3.15

This screenshot shows the 'Administration' page with the 'Tasks' tab selected. The left sidebar lists various administrative tasks: Dashboard, Content, Structure, Appearance, People, Modules, Configuration, Reports, and Help. Below the sidebar, a message states: 'This page shows you all available administration tasks for each module.' The main content area is divided into several boxes, each representing a different task category:

- BLOCK**: Includes 'Blocks' and 'Configure Block permissions'.
- COMMENT**: Includes 'Comments' and 'Configure Comment permissions'.
- CONTEXTUAL LINKS**: Includes 'Configure Contextual links permissions'.
- DASHBOARD**: Includes 'Dashboard' and 'Configure Dashboard permissions'.
- FIELD UI**: Includes 'Field list'.
- HELP**: Includes 'Help'.
- MENU**: Includes 'Menus' and 'Configure Menu permissions'.
- OVERLAY**: Includes 'Configure Overlay permissions'.
- SEARCH**: Includes 'Search settings' and 'Configure Search permissions'.
- NODE**: Includes 'Content', 'Content types', and 'Configure Node permissions'.

F3.15

Administration index

The administration index groups tasks by module

This screenshot shows the 'Administration' page with the 'Index' tab selected. The layout is similar to F3.14, but the tasks are grouped by module. The main content area is divided into several boxes, each representing a different module group:

- BLOCK**: Includes 'Blocks' and 'Configure Block permissions'.
- COMMENT**: Includes 'Comments' and 'Configure Comment permissions'.
- CONTEXTUAL LINKS**: Includes 'Configure Contextual links permissions'.
- DASHBOARD**: Includes 'Dashboard' and 'Configure Dashboard permissions'.
- FIELD UI**: Includes 'Field list'.
- HELP**: Includes 'Help'.
- MENU**: Includes 'Menus' and 'Configure Menu permissions'.
- OVERLAY**: Includes 'Configure Overlay permissions'.
- SEARCH**: Includes 'Search settings' and 'Configure Search permissions'.
- NODE**: Includes 'Content', 'Content types', and 'Configure Node permissions'.
- IMAGE**: Includes 'Image styles' and 'Configure Image permissions'.
- FIELD**: Includes 'Text formats' and 'Configure Filter permissions'.
- DATABASE LOGGING**: Includes 'Recent log messages', 'Top 'access denied' errors', 'Top 'page not found' errors', and 'Top search phrases'.

NOTE

Which administration presentation is used

Although we typically want to use the interface of administration grouped by task, on occasion we need to consult the index (module grouping), especially when a new module has been added and we haven't yet identified to which task group its configuration options have been added.

Dashboard

3.2

The **Dashboard** **F3.16** enables us to group together all of the activities and functionalities that we consider useful for the periodic management of the site is included.

URL Dashboard
</admin/dashboard>

In this way we will be able to smoothly manage the contents, comments, users, etc. with no need to go into each one of the administration options.

By default the dashboard shows the recent content (initially empty), the search form and the last users of the site.

This screenshot shows the standard Drupal dashboard. At the top, there is a breadcrumb navigation: Home > Administration > Dashboard. Below the header, there is a link to 'Customize dashboard'. The main content area is divided into three sections: 'Recent content' (which displays 'No content available.'), 'Search form' (with a text input field and a 'Search' button), and 'Who's new' (which lists 'admin').

F3.16
Dashboard

Configures the dashboard with the most-commonly used administrative functions on your site.

Customize the Dashboard

The **Customize dashboard** link shows us the Dashboard in editing mode.

F3.17 On this page we can reorganize the available blocks by dragging and dropping them. The blocks located in the upper table are blocks which are available to be used but are disabled. In order to enable them, simply drag them to one of the regions of the Panel.

This screenshot shows the Drupal dashboard in editing mode. At the top, there is a breadcrumb navigation: Home > Administration > Dashboard. Below the header, there is a link to 'Customize dashboard'. The main content area shows two rows of blocks. The first row contains 'Recent comments' and 'Who's online' (both with a plus sign icon). The second row contains 'Add other blocks' and a 'Done' button. Below this, there are two columns representing regions: 'Recent content' (containing 'No content available.') and 'Search form' (containing a search input and button). A third column 'Who's new' (containing 'admin') is also visible. Dashed lines indicate the boundaries of these regions, and arrows show the movement of blocks between them.

F3.17
Customize the Dashboard

Add the blocks that you want to be available on the dashboard. Simply drag and drop each block in the region and position where you want to place it.

We can also disable an active block by dragging it to the upper table.

The Dashboard comprises two regions: **Dashboard (main)**, which is the main region, and **Dashboard (sidebar)**, which is the right-hand column. In order to add other blocks, click on **Add other blocks** F3.18 and assign other blocks to any of the regions of the Dashboard (Dashboard). You can also indicate **Dashboard (inactive)**, which will make the new added blocks appear as disabled, in the upper table, ready to be placed in any region and position using drag and drop.

F3.18

Dashboard blocks

Select the blocks that will be shown on the dashboard by assigning them to any of the available regions:

Dashboard (main) or
Dashboard (sidebar).

Use Dashboard (inactive) if you want a block to be available but inactive. You will be able to enable it later using drag and drop in the region and position that you want.

The screenshot shows a table titled 'Configure available dashboard blocks'. The table has three columns: 'BLOCK', 'REGION', and 'OPERATIONS'. The 'REGION' column includes dropdown menus for selecting the display region. The 'OPERATIONS' column contains 'configure' links for each row.

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Dashboard (main)		
Recent content	Dashboard (main)	configure
Dashboard (sidebar)		
Search form	Dashboard (sidebar)	configure
Who's new	Dashboard (sidebar)	configure
Dashboard (inactive)		
Recent comments	Dashboard (inactive)	configure
Who's online	Dashboard (inactive)	configure
Other blocks		
Main menu	- None -	configure
Management	- None -	configure

In **Unit 7** of this level we will study the management of blocks in depth and see how to configure them.

3.3

Shortcuts

F3.19

Shortcuts

The shortcuts bar makes it possible to add direct links to pages of the site.

Shortcuts are a set of direct links to pages of the site. The shortcuts bar is completely customizable and it is situated just below the administration menu, initially with the "Add content" and "Find content" links. F3.19

The screenshot shows the Drupal administration interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links like 'Dashboard', 'Content', 'Structure', 'Appearance', 'People', 'Modules', 'Configuration', 'Reports', 'Help', 'Hello admin', and 'Log out'. Below this is a 'Edit shortcuts' button. The main content area shows the 'Structure' page, which includes sections for 'Blocks', 'Content types', and 'Menus'.

Customizing the shortcuts bar

We have two methods for adding links to the shortcuts bar. The first one of these is by using the **Edit shortcuts** link of the shortcuts bar. This path leads us directly to the shortcuts list, making it possible to edit them, delete them, arrange them and add new shortcuts (Add shortcut link). **F3.20**

The screenshot shows the 'Edit shortcuts' page with a table listing existing shortcuts. The table has columns for 'NAME' and 'OPERATIONS'. The rows are grouped under 'Enabled' and 'Disabled'. Under 'Enabled', there are three rows: 'Add content', 'Find content', and 'Structure'. Each row has 'edit' and 'delete' links in the 'OPERATIONS' column. Under 'Disabled', there are three empty rows. At the bottom left is a 'Save changes' button.

URL Shortcuts

/admin/config/user-interface/shortcut

F3.20

Edit shortcuts

Shows the list of shortcuts and makes it possible to add new shortcuts.

This method means it is necessary to know the page path that we want to add as a shortcut. **F3.21**

The screenshot shows a form for creating a new shortcut named 'Structure' with the path 'http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/admin/structure'. A 'Save' button is at the bottom.

F3.21

Create a shortcut

To create a new shortcut we need to know the page path that we want to add.

The second method for adding shortcuts does not require knowledge of the page path that we want to add. It will be enough to locate and load the page that we want to add, and click on the button (+) **F3.22** that is shown next to the title.

The screenshot shows the 'Appearance' settings for a page. Next to the page title, there is a button with a plus sign (+) and the text 'Add to Default shortcuts'. A cursor arrow is pointing at this button.

F3.22

Add a shortcut

Use the (+) button to add the current page to the shortcuts bar.

If the page has already been added to the shortcuts, then rather than seeing a (+) button, a (-) button will be shown next to the title, which makes it possible to delete the shortcut of the shortcuts bar.

Shortcuts set

The shortcuts are arranged into a shortcuts set. By default, Drupal includes a set known as Default, to which new shortcuts have been added. To create new shortcuts set we have to go to the Shortcuts configuration front page: **F3.23**

Administration⇒Configuration⇒User interface⇒Shortcuts

We can create various sets of shortcuts, although we will only be able to use one on the shortcuts bar.

F3.23

Shortcuts set

The shortcuts bar makes it possible to add direct links to pages of the site.

Home » Administration » Configuration » User interface
Shortcuts

Define which shortcut set you are using on the [Shortcuts tab](#) of your account page.

+ Add shortcut set

NAME	OPERATIONS
Default	list links edit set name
Development Shortcuts	list links edit set name delete set

In order to add a new set, click on the "Add shortcut set" link and state the name that the new set will have. Once this has been created you will be able to edit the shortcuts of this set from "list links".

Finally, we need to know how to change between the different shortcuts sets created. Our user page (/user) has a **Shortcuts** tab, which will lead us directly to the selection of the shortcuts set that we want to use. **F3.24**

F3.24

Selection of the shortcut sets

Changes between the different shortcut sets from the Shortcuts tab of your user page.

Home » admin
admin

VIEW EDIT SHORTCUTS

Choose a set of shortcuts to use

Default

Development Shortcuts

New set

The new set is created by copying items from your default shortcut set.

Change set

General site configuration

3.4

After the installation of the site, and once the administration menu options have been presented, we are going to continue by doing some small configuration adjustments. These parameters can be charged at any time.

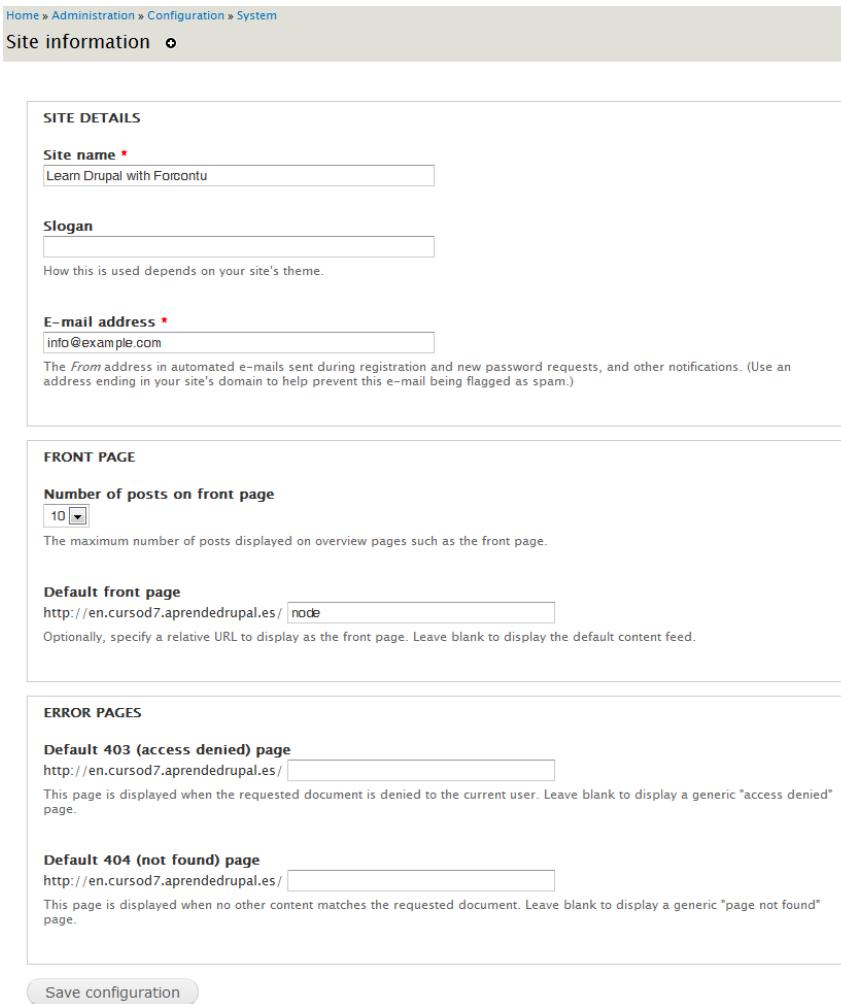
Site information

The basic site information is located at: **F3.25**

Administration⇒Configuration⇒System⇒Site information

From this page we can modify the **name of the Website**, the **slogan** and the electronic **mail address** of the site. We can also modify the **home page** or front page (by default /node), and the error pages that will be shown when the user finds a **page not found** (error 404) or **access refused** (error 403) error.

URL Site information
[/admin/config/system/
site-information](/admin/config/system/site-information)



Home » Administration » Configuration » System
Site information [✎](#)

SITE DETAILS

Site name *

Slogan

How this is used depends on your site's theme.

E-mail address *

The *From* address in automated e-mails sent during registration and new password requests, and other notifications. (Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent this e-mail being flagged as spam.)

FRONT PAGE

Number of posts on front page
 [▼](#)
 The maximum number of posts displayed on overview pages such as the front page.

Default front page

 Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default content feed.

ERROR PAGES

Default 403 (access denied) page

 This page is displayed when the requested document is denied to the current user. Leave blank to display a generic "access denied" page.

Default 404 (not found) page

 This page is displayed when no other content matches the requested document. Leave blank to display a generic "page not found" page.

Save configuration

F3.25

Site information

Makes it possible to modify the name and title of the site, the slogan (sub-title), and the electronic mail address of the site.

We can also change the home page of the site and the error 403 and 404 pages.

Regional settings date and time

Drupal allows some options related to regionalization and time zones to be modified. **F3.26**

URL Regional settings
[/admin/config/regional/settings](#)

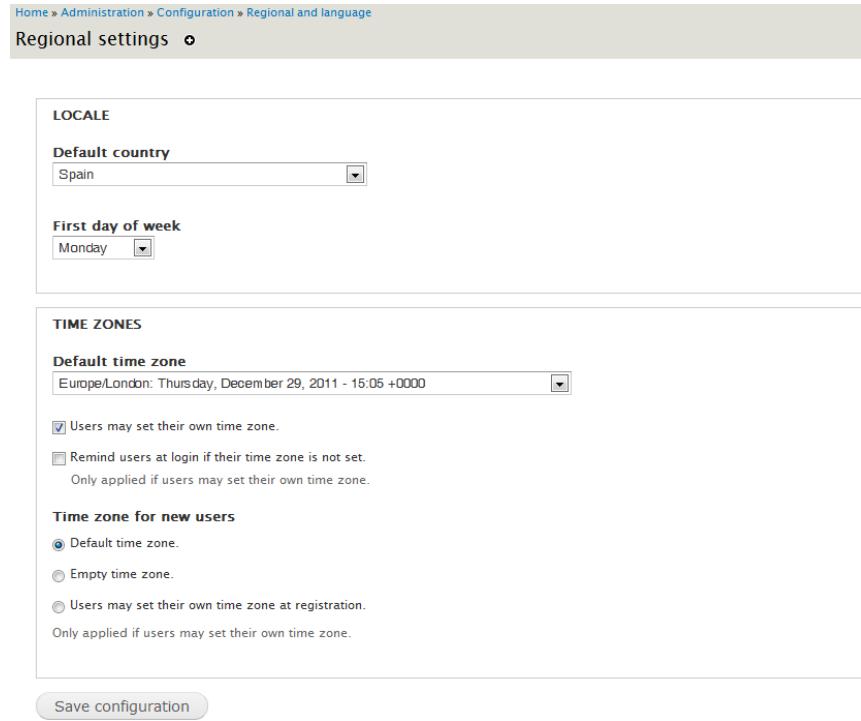
F3.26

Regional settings

Makes it possible to change the pre-defined country of the site, the first day of the week and the time zone of the site.

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Regional and language ⇒ Regional settings

Within **Regional settings** we can select the default country of the site and the first day of the week which, by default, is Sunday. We can change this to Monday, if need be. We can also select the pre-defined time zone and decide whether users will be able to establish their own time zones.



The screenshot shows the 'Regional settings' configuration page. It includes sections for 'LOCALE' (Default country: Spain, First day of week: Monday) and 'TIME ZONES' (Default time zone: Europe/London, Thursday, December 29, 2011 - 15:05 +0000). Under 'Time zone for new users', the 'Default time zone' option is selected. A 'Save configuration' button is at the bottom.

URL Date and time
[/admin/config/regional/date-time](#)

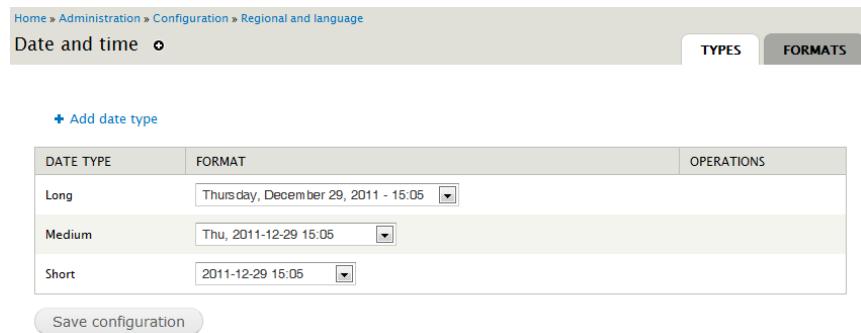
F3.27

Date and time

Create new date and time formats or modify the existing ones.

The date and time formats can be configured from: **F3.27**

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Regional and language ⇒ Date and time



The screenshot shows the 'Date and time' configuration page. It includes a 'TYPES' tab and a 'FORMATS' tab. Under 'FORMATS', there is a '+ Add date type' button and a table with three rows: 'Long' (Format: Thursday, December 29, 2011 - 15:05), 'Medium' (Format: Thu, 2011-12-29 15:05), and 'Short' (Format: 2011-12-29 15:05). A 'Save configuration' button is at the bottom.

By default, the **date formats** are configured using the Anglo-Saxon form **MM/DD/YYYY** rather than **DD/MM/YYYY**, which is the format used in Spain.

It is possible to change these formats in this section.

By default, three types of date formats are created: long, medium and short. From this screen we can also add other types of date and formats. In addition, from the regionalise tab, it is possible to assign different date formats depending on the language.

Maintenance mode

Maintenance mode makes it possible to shut down the site during maintenance tasks that could affect the site: **F3.28**

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Development⇒ Maintenance mode

When the site is in maintenance mode, only those users with the "Use site in maintenance mode" permission will be able to enter the site and browse on it normally. The specified customized message will be shown for the other users. In **F3.29** order to be able to access this it is important to remember the user **access URL** (login):

<http://www.example.com/user>

URL Maintenance mode
/admin/config/development/maintenance
URL User access
/user

Home » Administration » Configuration » Development

Maintenance mode

If you are upgrading to a newer version of Drupal or upgrading contributed modules or themes, you may need to run the [update script](#).

Put site into maintenance mode

When enabled, only users with the "Use the site in maintenance mode" [permission](#) are able to access your site to perform maintenance; all other visitors see the maintenance mode message configured below. Authorized users can log in directly via the [user login](#) page.

Maintenance mode message

Learn Drupal with Forcontu is currently under maintenance. We should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

Message to show visitors when the site is in maintenance mode.

[Save configuration](#)

Learn Drupal with Forcontu

Site under maintenance

Learn Drupal with Forcontu is currently under maintenance. We should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

F3.28
Maintenance mode
When we are going to do maintenance actions on a site under production that could affect the specific way it functions, we can temporarily close it and move on to the maintenance mode.

F3.29
Site disconnected under maintenance
To access the site once disconnected, it is necessary to indicate the URL/user in the browser.

URL Appearance and administration theme
</admin/appearance>

F3.30**Administration theme**

The administration theme makes it possible to use a specific theme for the administration area that is different from the general themes of the site.

Administration theme

In order to avoid problems in carrying out administration tasks, it is recommended that you use a standard theme for the administration area, from those that are included in the Drupal core. From:

Administration⇒Appearance [Administration theme]

We can define the specific administration theme. **F3.30**

This theme will only be used when we browse through the administration options, whether with the administrator user or any other user with the right permissions. Anonymous users and registered users without administration permissions will continue viewing the site with the general site theme.

This option will be especially useful when we are developing and modifying a theme (intermediate and advanced course levels) or when we are testing themes that are shared by Drupal community users, because we do not know how our site is going to behave with the enabled theme. In this way, in the event of any serious viewing error occurring, we will always be able to access the administration area (/admin) in order to modify the theme of the site and replace it with another more suitable one.

We will use the Seven theme as administration theme on this course.

Clean URLs

URL Clean URLs
</admin/config/search/clean-urls>

F3.31**Clean URLs**

By enabling clean URLs the URLs will be used without the **?q=** parameter.

This option makes it possible for the site URLs to be shown without the **?q=** parameter. If the clean URLs are not enabled, the standard www.example.com/user URL will be viewed as www.example.com/?q=user. If you have not yet configured this option, or you want to modify it, you can do this from: **F3.31**

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Search and metadata⇒Clean URLs

Always use clean URLs.

File system

We will later check the paths where the files that are uploaded or generated on the site will be stored:

Administration⇒Configuration ⇒ media ⇒File system

It is possible to change these parameters, although it is recommended that you leave the parameters in the default position (sites/default/files). **F3.32**

As we have already said in Unit 1, the additional themes and modules that we incorporate into the site will be stored in the folder / sites. As we have just seen, the files that are uploaded and generated (sites/default/files) will also be stored. As we will see in Unit 20, this will facilitate the updating of Drupal, because we only need to save the folder / sites, which is the only path –along with the database- that is modified while the site is being used.

Home » Administration » Configuration » Media

File system

Public file system path

 A local file system path where public files will be stored. This directory must exist and be writable by Drupal. This directory must be relative to the Drupal installation directory and be accessible over the web.

Private file system path

 An existing local file system path for storing private files. It should be writable by Drupal and not accessible over the web. See the online handbook for [more information about securing private files](#).

Temporary directory

 A local file system path where temporary files will be stored. This directory should not be accessible over the web.

Default download method
 Public local files served by the webserver.
 This setting is used as the preferred download method. The use of public files is more efficient, but does not provide any access control.

Save configuration

URL File system

/admin/config/media/file-system

F3.32

File system

The **File system** option makes it possible to indicate the folder of the server where the files uploaded using the site will be stored.

F3.33**Private files**

The use of private files provides access control to the site files. On the other hand, this system is not as efficient as the use of public files.

Private file system path
private
An existing local file system path for storing private files. It should be writable by Drupal and not accessible over the web. See the online handbook for more information about securing private files.

Temporary directory
/tmp
A local file system path where temporary files will be stored. This directory should not be accessible over the web.

Default download method

- Public local files served by the webserver.
- Private local files served by Drupal.

This setting is used as the preferred download method. The use of public files is more efficient, but does not provide any access control.

Save configuration

Languages

If we do not install Spanish during the installation of the site, if we have installed it and we want to update it and we want to update it or if we want to install a new language, we have different options relate to managing languages, which we will see in greater detail in **Unit 18** of this level.

URL Languages

/admin/config/regional/language

F3.34**Languages**

Makes it possible to configure the languages installed on the site and add other languages.

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Regional and language⇒ Languages

Languages **F3.34** lists the languages installed and the default language of the site. It is possible to add new languages to the site from this particular screen, which would be the option to be used if we have not yet added Spanish.

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language

Languages **LIST** DETECTION AND SELECTION

With multiple languages enabled, interface text can be translated, registered users may select their preferred language, and authors can assign a specific language to content. [Download contributed translations](#) from Drupal.org.

+ Add language

ENGLISH NAME	NATIVE NAME	CODE	DIRECTION	ENABLED	DEFAULT	OPERATIONS
⊕ English	English	en	Left to right	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	edit
⊕ Spanish	Español	es	Left to right	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	edit

Save configuration

But adding the language does not means that the translated content is now available. The next step is to import the package of the added language, which we will download from [localize.drupal.org](#). From: **F3.35**

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Regional and language⇒ Translate interface

We will be able to add translations manually (Translate tab) or import a full new language package (Import tab). In **Unit 18** of this level we will study the processing of languages in Drupal in greater depth.

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language

Translate interface

OVERVIEW **TRANSLATE** **IMPORT** **EXPORT**

This page provides an overview of available translatable strings. Drupal displays translatable strings in text groups; modules may define additional text groups containing other translatable strings. Because text groups provide a method of grouping related strings, they are often used to focus translation efforts on specific areas of the Drupal interface.

See the [Languages page](#) for more information on adding support for additional languages.

LANGUAGE	BUILT-IN INTERFACE
English (built-in)	n/a
Spanish	0/123 (0%)

F3.35**Translate interface**

Makes it possible to translate the language of the interface, either chain to chain [**Translate**], or by importing a full language file downloaded from localize.drupal.org [**Import**].

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

4 Content management

Once the initial installation has been done, we can start to build our Website. In this unit we will see how to create and manage contents in Drupal.

Drupal makes it possible to create contents of different types, depending on the modules installed and enabled. Some **content types** are Basic page, Article, Forum topic, Blog entry, Book Page, Webform, etc. Each type may have a specific configuration. For example, we can configure the site so that the articles can be commented on by the users, but the pages cannot.

As we will see in Unit 5, we can also **create specific content types** for our site, such as a new News type, for publishing news.

types for our site, such as a new News type, for publishing news.

It is important to distinguish between a content type and the content in itself. A content type defines a kind of template on the basis of which the contents will be created. And the contents are the final pages that will be shown on the site. For example, a page with a company presentation (of the Basic type page), a particular message in the forum (of the Forum topic type) or a contact form (of the Webform site). In addition, the contents in Drupal are known generically as **nodes**. Every node is generated on the basis of a particular type of content (and only of one type).

Therefore, in this unit we will work with the concepts of node and content type. We will see how create contents of different available content types.

Comparative D7/D6

Editing of comments

While in Unit 5 we will see more significant differences with Unit 6 that are related to the contents types, in this unit we only deal with the differences in the creation and editing of contents.

Perhaps the most significant difference lies in the improvement to the contents editing interface, by means of a menu attached to the node that groups together the different options (Menu settings, Revision information, URL path settings, Comment settings, Authoring information, Publication options). This grouping makes it possible to separate the node content from the rest of the configuration options, which facilitates the creation and editing of contents in general.

Unit contents

4.1 Content types of the core	50
4.2 Creating content	52
4.3 Editing of contents	60
4.4 Content management area	62
4.5 URL alias	63
4.6 Configuration of the home page.....	65
4.7 Publication and moderation of comments	65



4.1

Content types of the core

The **node** is the basic content unit in Drupal. Nodes may be of different types: a page of static content, a forum message, an article that is sold in an online store, a Website form, a piece of news in the digital diary, an image of a multimedia gallery, etc.

Drupal categorises the **nodes** using the **content types**. The **content types** build a powerful tool to implement structured contents.

The Drupal core is laid out with the following **content types** available by default:

- **Basic page:** Type of basic node that is used to generate static contents, such as the company presentation pages and company services pages.
- **Article:** This is a content type conceived of for the publication of periodic contents, such as news, new developments, articles, etc. This is why the default configuration of this content type includes direct publication on the front page of the site (which is known in Drupal as "promoting to the front page) and this moreover makes it possible for the users to make comments about the published content.

To consult the content types available on the site access: **F4.1**

Administration⇒**Structure**⇒**Content types**

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

URL Content types
[/admin/structure/types](#)

F4.1

Default contents type

Initially we will only be able to create nodes of the **Article** or **Basic page** type. These content types are created by default when Drupal is installed.

NAME	OPERATIONS
Article (Machine name: article) Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.	edit manage fields manage display delete
Basic page (Machine name: page) Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	edit manage fields manage display delete

Other content types of the core

Drupal facilitates a further 4 content types which, unlike the earlier ones, will only be available if we enable the relevant modules. These additional content types are: **F4.2**

- **Forum topic:** Content type that makes it possible to create new discussion topic in the forums. The main topics in the Drupal forums are generated on the basis of the **Forum Topic** content type, while the replies will be comments to these nodes. In order for this content type to be available on the site it is necessary to enable the **Forum module** (Unit 13).
- **Blog entry:** This makes it possible to generate individual entries on a blog or journal. In order for this content type to be available on the site

it is necessary to enable the **Blog module** (Unit 13).

- **Book page:** A **book page** is a content page organised into a collection of entries associated between themselves that constitute a book. Each **book page** will automatically show links to adjacent pages, providing a simple system of organising and review content in a structured way. In order for this content type to be available on the site it is necessary to enable the **Book module** (Unit 14).
- **Poll:** A **poll** is a question with a group of possible answers. A **poll**, once created, automatically provides a simple counter of the number of votes that each response has received. In order for this content type to be available on the site it is necessary to enable the **Poll module** (Unit 9).

NAME
Article (Machine name: article)
Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.
Basic page (Machine name: page)
Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.
Blog entry (Machine name: blog)
Use for multi-user blogs. Every user gets a personal blog.
Book page (Machine name: book)
<i>Books</i> have a built-in hierarchical navigation. Use for handbooks or tutorials.
Forum topic (Machine name: forum)
A <i>forum topic</i> starts a new discussion thread within a forum.
Poll (Machine name: poll)
A <i>poll</i> is a question with a set of possible responses. A <i>poll</i> , once created, automatically provides a simple running count of the number of votes received for each response.

F4.2

Additional content types

The additional content types will become available when the following core modules are enabled:

- Forum Module (Forum topic)
- Blog module (Blog entry)
- Book Module (Book page)
- Poll Module (Poll)

There are many other content types, associated with modules, which we can install and utilise on our Website. We will deal with this topic later on, when we see the installation of additional modules in **Unit9**.

Despite the fact that the Drupal core is laid out with all of the content types listed above, only the **Page** and **Article** F4.1 content types will be enabled in the initial installation. In order to be able to make use of the rest of the contents types, it is necessary to enable the modules corresponding to each one of these. During the rest of this unit we will focus on these two types of default contents types, which will enable us to explain the configuration options and characteristics that are common to all nodes, and which, therefore, they can extrapolate any other content type.

4.2 Creating content

As was remarked in the previous section, only the **Basic page** and **Article** content types will be available by default, which will enable us to create contents or nodes of either of these two types.

We can access either of these two paths to **create a new content**: F4.3

URL Add content
`/node/add`

Administration⇒**Content**⇒**Add content**

Navigation⇒**Add content**

F4.3

Add content

We will initially be able to create contents (nodes) of the **Basic page** and **Article** type, accessing the **Add content** option from the navigation menu or the administration menu (within Content).

The screenshot shows a 'Home' link at the top left. Below it is a heading 'Add content' with a small edit icon. Underneath, there are two items: 'Article' and 'Basic page'. Each item has a small circular icon with an arrow pointing right, followed by the title and a brief description. A horizontal line separates these from other content.

- Article
Use *articles* for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.
- Basic page
Use *basic pages* for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.

To **create content** we have to click on the mode type that we want to create, the **Basic page** or **Article**. A specific content creation form for the type of content that we have selected will be shown below.

NOTE

Navigation menu

The **Navigation menu** is a menu that is pre-installed on the site that incorporates links for helping browsing, without including the administration option.

In this unit we will study the fields that are common to all content types. In **Unit 5** we will see how to build simple content types, adding extra specific fields. To do this we will use the tools provided by the **Field** module, present in the Drupal 7 core.

In the **Intermediate Level** we will study how to **build advanced contents types**, making use of extra modules that make it possible to add complex fields to the nodes.

In **Figure F4.4** we show the **Create Basic Page form** as this is presented initially, with the fields by default grouped together into drop-down categories. The **Title** and **Body** fields will be shown in drop-down form. The **Title** is the only mandatory field.

We will describe all of the options included in the form below:

- **Title:** This is the title of the content. This title will be shown to be differentiated from the rest of the content when the page is uploaded.
- **Body:** We will write out the content of the page in this field. This content may be a plain text or a text that is formatted with HTML.

The **Edit summary** option makes it possible to introduce a content summary in order to use it as preliminary information to be shown on the front page, when the content is "promoted to the home page". If this is left blank a cropped fragment of the full text will be used as a summary.

Home > Add content

Create Basic page

Title *

Body (Edit summary)

Text format Filtered HTML More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

Menu settings
Not in menu

Revision information
No revision

URL path settings
No alias

Comment settings
Closed

Authoring information
By admin

Publishing options
Published

Provide a menu link

Save Preview

F4.4**Create content**

Initially only the Title, Body and Text format fields are shown. Only the Title field is mandatory for creating content.

- **Text format:** This makes it possible to indicate the treatment that Drupal will give to the content, permitting the use to introduce certain HTML mark-ups. The default entry formats are: **F4.5**
 - o **Filtered HTML.** Restricts the use of the HTML mark-ups.
 - o **Full HTML.** This is less restrictive than the previous one and it enables almost all of the HTML mark-ups to be used.
 - o **Plain text.** Does not allow HTML labels.

Optionally, we will find the entry format:

- o **PHP code,** which makes it possible to include a PHP code on the page. In order for this option to be available, it is necessary to first enable the **PHP Filter module**, available in the Drupal distribution but disabled by default.

Text format Filtered HTML More information about text formats

- Web page ad
- Allowed HTM
- Lines and pa

Filterd HTML Addresses turn into links automatically.

Full HTML

Plain text

PHP code

F4.5**Text formats**

The entry format may initially be, filtered HTML, full HTML, plain text and optionally, PHP code.

- **Menu settings:** **F4.6** This makes it possible to show that the page is directly linked from any of the Website menus. We will go into greater detail about site management menus in **Unit6**.

- **Menu link title:** This is the text that will be shown on the menu.
- **Description:** This is the text that will be shown when the cursor is passed over the menu link.
- **Parent item:** This makes it possible to indicate the menu item from which the page will be “hung” and where the new menu item will be created.
- **Weight:** This makes it possible to arrange the menu item with respect to other items that already exist.

F4.6**Menu options**

Optionally, we can create a menu element at the same time as we create the page.

Menu settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Provide a menu link Menu link title <input type="text"/> Description <input type="text"/> <small>Shown when hovering over the menu link.</small>
Revision information No revision	
URL path settings No alias	
Comment settings Closed	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published	
	Parent item <input type="button"/> <Main menu>
	Weight <input type="button"/> 0
	<small>Menu links with smaller weights are displayed before links with larger weights.</small>

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

- **Revision information:** **F4.7** This makes it possible to keep a record of the pages that are modified, using a versions control and management system. If we use this option we can use an earlier version of the page at any time.

- **Create new revision.** We will check this option if we want the system to save the previous version and generate a new one. We recommend that this option should always be used.
- **Revision log message.** This is an explanatory message (optional) of the updates that have been made on the page.

F4.7**Revision information**

Every time we modify a page we can save the earlier revision.

Menu settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create new revision Revision log message <input type="text"/> <small>Provide an explanation of the changes you are making. This will help other authors understand your motivations.</small>
Revision information New revision	
URL path settings No alias	
Comment settings Closed	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published	

- **URL path settings:** **F4.8** We can indicate an alternative URL (**URL alias**) to access the node, in such a way that this chain can be used instead of the numerical code that Drupal assigns by default to the nodes (node/1, node/2, etc.). To show this setting, it is necessary to have first enabled the **Path module**.

Menu settings	
Revision information	New revision
URL path settings	No alias
Comment settings	Closed
Authoring information	By admin
Publishing options	Published
URL alias	
Optionally specify an alternative URL by which this content can be accessed. For example, type "about" when writing an about page. Use a relative path and don't add a trailing slash or the URL alias won't work.	

F4.8**URL path options**

A Path module is used in order to be able to make use of an URL alias, and this is activated by default when the installation is done.

- **Comment settings:** **F4.9** This makes it possible to define whether or not publishing comments associated with the page is permitted.

- o **Open.** This shows the comments and allows the users to write new comments about the content. The users must have the "Send comments" permission.
- o **Closed.** This shows the comments that have been made beforehand but it does not allow new comments to be introduced.
- o **Hidden.** The comments are not shown and it is not permitted to make new comments about the content. This option will only be available when comments associated with the page have been published.

Menu settings	
Revision information	New revision
URL path settings	No alias
Comment settings	Open
Authoring information	By admin
Publishing options	Published
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Open Users with the "Post comments" permission can post comments.	
<input type="radio"/> Closed Users cannot post comments.	

F4.9**Comment settings**

We can state whether the page can be commented on by the site users.

- **Authoring information:** **F4.10** Record about the author and publication date.

Menu settings	
Revision information	New revision
URL path settings	No alias
Comment settings	Open
Authoring information	By admin
Publishing options	Published
Authored by	
<input checked="" type="text"/> admin <small>Leave blank for Anonymous.</small>	
Authored on	
<input type="text"/> <small>Format: 2012-02-13 13:13:58 +0000. The date format is YYYY-MM-DD and +0000 is the time zone offset from UTC. Leave blank to use the time of form submission.</small>	

F4.10**Authoring information**

We can configure the author and date of the publication

- **Publication options:** **F4.11** This indicates whether or not it is necessary to publish the page, whether it should be promoted to the home page (front page of the site) and whether it is necessary to highlight it and place it on the upper part of a list of pages.

- **Published.** By checking this option the content is published automatically. This option is very useful for creating contents in advance of the actual publication date. We can create contents and save them as unpublished and go on publishing them when this is necessary, via the contents administration area.
- **Promoted to front page.** This indicates whether you want the content to be shown automatically on the home page or the front page of the site. It is also known as "promoting the home page". This function is also available if we have not modified the **default home page** (/node). Only a summary or progress report on the page content will be shown on the front page.
- **Sticky at top of the lists.** If we place the content of the home page, we indicate with this option that is kept set in the upper part of the list of published pages, although new contents may be published later on.

F4.11**Publication options**

This makes it possible to select whether the content will be published and whether a progress report will be shown on the home page of the site.

Menu settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published
Revision information New revision	<input type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page
URL path settings No alias	<input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists
Comment settings Open	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published	

In the end we can see how the content will look before it is published, by clicking on the **Preview** button, or definitively click the **Save** button, thus creating the new page.

Practical case 4.1 Creating a page

In this practical case we are going, step by step, to create a page with the following characteristics:

- **Content type:** Basic type
- **Title:** About us
- **Body:** Test text (Lorem ipsum) of 3 paragraphs, generated with:
<http://www.lipsum.com>
- **URL alias:** about-us
- **Entry format:** Filtered HTML
- **Comments:** disabled
- Published and promoted to the home page. The first paragraph of the Body on the front page of the site.

Step 1. Select the content type

To **create a page**, access:

Administration⇒Content⇒Add content⇒ Basic page

URL Add content (basic page)
</node/add/page>

Step 2. Complete the Create Page form

Complete the form by following these steps: **F4.12**

- Write the **Title** of the page: Who we are
- Write the text of the **Body**. In this practical case we have generated a test text of 3 paragraphs from the Website www.lipsum.com.
- Click on **Text format** and select **Filtered HTML**.

Home » Add content

Create Basic page o

Title *
About us

Summary (Hide summary)
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

Leave blank to use trimmed value of full text as the summary.

Body
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

Nulum ullamcorper lorem non nibh pellentesque egestas quis vel risus. Etiam non orci augue. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Nam in ante at nibh hendrerit ullamcorper eget ut erat. Vivamus hendrerit fringilla augue, ut placerat nibh dignissim at. Ut tempor eleifend mauris, quis iaculis felis venenatis at.

Vestibulum eget ipsum sem, nec pellentesque elit. Aenean libero turpis, dignissim in semper vel, condimentum vel mi. Sed a quam nisi, et suscipit est. Pellentesque adipiscing sagittis arcu, non aliquet nulla scelerisque non. Vestibulum interdum mi posuere nulla placerat at convallis enim mollis. Aliquam feugiat erat vitae nisi pharetra vel placerat nisl ultrices. Pellentesque id

Text format Filtered HTML ?

More information about text formats ?

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

F4.12

Practical case 4.1 Basic data

We complete the Title, Summary, Body and Text format fields.

- Click on **Edit Summary**. **F4.12** A new field called **Summary** will appear, where you need to copy the first paragraph of the content. The home page of the site will only show the content text in the **Summary**. When the page loads the content text will be shown in the **Body**.
- Click on **URL path settings** and write the **about-us** path. The path of the page will be <http://www.example.com/about-us>. **F4.13**

F4.13**Practical case 4.1****URL alias**

Write the URL alias, **about-us**, which will replace the default value (node/1, as this is the first page created on the site).

Menu settings About us	URL alias about-us Optionally specify an alternative URL by which this content can be accessed. For example, type "about" when writing an about page. Use a relative path and don't add a trailing slash or the URL alias won't work.
Revision information New revision	
URL path settings Alias: about-us	
Comment settings Open	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published	

- Click on **Comment settings** and select **Closed**. **F4.14** In this way, the comments will be disabled and the users will not be able to publish comments on the node.

F4.14**Practical case 4.1****Comments options**

Select the comments publication policy on the node.

Menu settings About us	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Open Users with the "Post comments" permission can post comments.
Revision information New revision	
URL path settings Alias: about-us	
Comment settings Closed	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published	

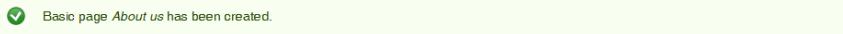
- Click on **Publication options** and the **Published** and **Promoted to front page** options. **F4.15**

F4.15**Practical case 4.1****Publication options**

The page has to be published and promoted to the front page.

Menu settings About us	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published
Revision information New revision	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page
URL path settings Alias: about-us	<input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists
Comment settings Closed	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published, Promoted to front page	

Save the page by clicking on **Save**. The page will be created and it will show the "Basic page *About us* has been created" message. **F4.16**



Home

Navigation
▶ Add content

About us

[View](#)[Edit](#)

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

Nullam ullamcorper lorem non nibh pellentesque egestas quis vel risus. Etiam non orci augue. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Nam in ante at nibh hendrerit ullamcorper eget ut erat. Vivamus hendrerit fringilla augue, ut placerat nibh dignissim at. Ut tempor eleifend mauris, quis iaculis felis venenatis at.

Vestibulum eget ipsum sem, nec pellentesque elit. Aenean libero turpis, dignissim in semper vel, condimentum vel mi. Sed a quam nisi, et suscipit est. Pellentesque adipiscing sagittis arcu, non aliquet nulla scelerisque non. Vestibulum interdum mi posuere nulla placerat at convallis enim mollis. Aliquam feugiat erat vitae nisl pharetra vel placerat nisl ultrices. Pellentesque id eros eros. Vivamus ac purus pellentesque ante viverra condimentum et eleifend mi. Proin congue rutrum odio sed consectetur. Phasellus porttitor luctus convallis.

F4.16

Practical case 4.1 Published page

Page successfully published. Access this page with the /about-us URL.

Test by loading the page with the specified alias URL (**about-us**) and with the original URL, which will be **node/1** as this is the first node created on the site.

Step 3. Content promoted to the front page

In step 2 we show how the page should have been published and promoted to the home page of the site. Before checking whether the functioning is correct, we have to check that the home page of the site is configured as a **node**.

To do this we will go to: **F4.17**

Administration⇒Configuration⇒Site information

and we will change the **Default front page** option if this is necessary.

URL Site information
`/admin/config/system/site-information`

FRONT PAGE

Number of posts on front page

The maximum number of posts displayed on overview pages such as the front page.

Default front page
`http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/note`

Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default content feed.

F4.17

Practical case 4.1 Default home page

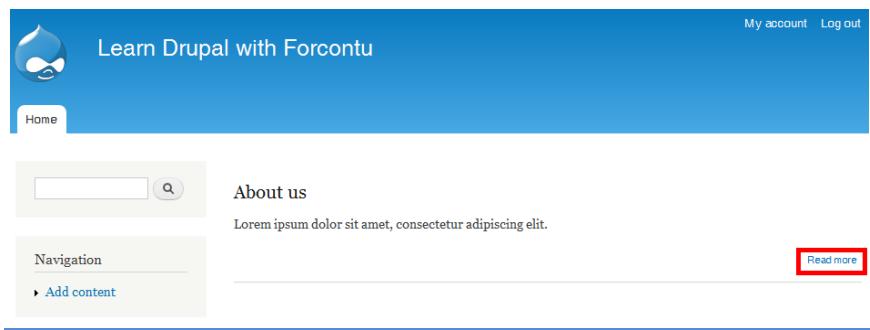
In order to view the summaries of the site front page, this must indicate the **node** page by default.

It only remains for us to go to the front page of the site (www.example.com) and check how the published content is shown.

Figure **F4.18** shows the home page of the site with a summary of the published page and a **Read more** link that will lead us to the complete **about-us** page.

F4.18
Practical case 4.1
Summary on front page

This shows the summary of the node published on the front page of the site.


 A screenshot of a Drupal website titled "Learn Drupal with Forcontu". The header includes a logo, the title, and links for "My account" and "Log out". Below the header is a search bar and a "Home" button. The main content area features a summary of a node with the title "About us" and the text "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.". A "Read more" link is located at the bottom right of the summary. On the left side, there is a sidebar with "Navigation" and a "Add content" link. The entire screenshot is framed by a blue border.
4.3

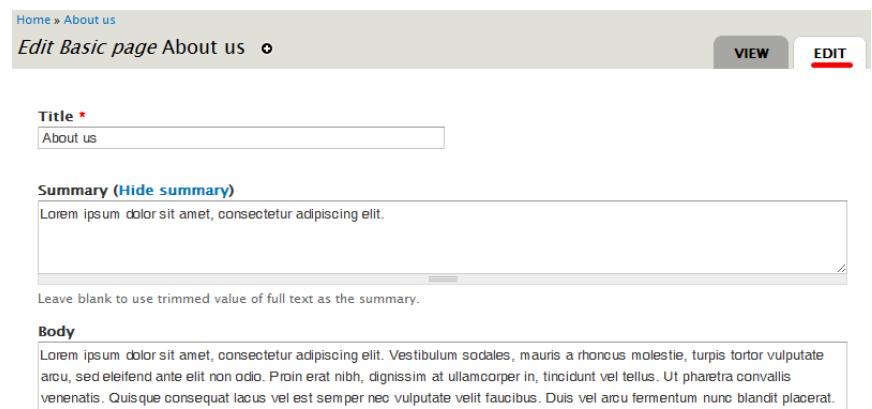
Editing of contents

The contents editing process is straightforward and friendly, since you can access the page editing (or any type of node) from the same page, provided that they have the correct editing permissions.

Once authenticated on the website, and assuming that we have the correct permissions, we load the page we want to modify on the browser. When we view any content page, we will have access to an **Edit** tab that will enable us to modify or delete the page. **F4.19**

F4.19
Edit a page

The editing of any page is available from the **Edit** tab of each page.


 A screenshot of the "About us" page in edit mode. The URL in the address bar is "Home > About us". The page title is "Edit Basic page About us". There are "VIEW" and "EDIT" buttons. The "EDIT" button is highlighted with a red border. The form fields include:

- Title ***: "About us"
- Summary (Hide summary)**: "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit." (with a note below: "Leave blank to use trimmed value of full text as the summary")
- Body**: "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate auctor, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat."

From Edit we are able to modify any field of the page. Do not forget to click Save so that the changes can become effective.

To delete the page click on the **Delete button** that you will find next to the Save and Preview buttons. The delete setting cannot be undone, and so once it has been confirmed you will not be able to retrieve the page that has been deleted.

Revisions

If **revisions** of the page **have been saved**, it will be possible to access the previous versions of the node, by clicking on the **Revisions** tab. **F4.20** From this list of revisions you can retrieve earlier versions of a particular node by using the **revert** link. Every time that we use the **revert** option a new revision will be generated with the content published before the operation, and the old content of the version that we have selected will then be published.

Home » About us

Revisions for About us

VIEW EDIT REVISIONS

Revisions allow you to track differences between multiple versions of your content, and revert back to older versions.

REVISION	OPERATIONS
02/13/2012 – 13:30 by admin	current revision
02/13/2012 – 13:25 by admin	revert delete

F4.20**Revisions of the node**

The revisions make it possible to save and recover earlier versions of a page.

Drupal has more complete management tools, which enables us to browse between the set of existing contents on the portal, whether published or not, and access these. We will see this in greater detail in the following section (**section 4.4**).

4.4

Content management area

Drupal has a straightforward and flexible tool for managing the nodes created on the site.

We access the content management area from: **F4.21**

URL Content
</admin/content>

F4.21

Content management

This shows a list of the nodes created on the site and it enables filtering using different parameters. As well as providing access to the individual operations of editing and deleting nodes, it also makes it possible to carry out actions for various nodes simultaneously (publish, promote to the front page, delete, etc.)

The screenshot shows the Drupal Content management area. At the top, there is a breadcrumb navigation: Home > Administration > Content. Below the breadcrumb, there are two tabs: 'CONTENT' (which is selected) and 'COMMENTS'. A 'Add content' button is located at the top left. Below the tabs, there are two filter boxes: 'status' (set to 'any') and 'type' (set to 'any'), with a 'Filter' button next to them. Underneath these filters is a section titled 'UPDATE OPTIONS' with a dropdown menu set to 'Publish selected content' and a 'Update' button. The main content area displays a table of nodes:

	TITLE	TYPE	AUTHOR	STATUS	UPDATED	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	Second article	Article	admin	published	02/13/2012 - 13:32	edit delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	First article	Article	admin	published	02/13/2012 - 13:31	edit delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	About us	Basic page	admin	published	02/13/2012 - 13:30	edit delete

As we can see in figure **F4.21** we can use a series of parameters in order to filter the results shown:

- Filter by **Status**. Makes it possible to show only the nodes that are at the selected status:
 - o Published
 - o Not published
 - o Promoting (promoting to the front page)
 - o Not promoting
 - o Sticky at top of lists
 - o Not sticky at top of lists
- Filter by **Type**. Makes it possible to show only the nodes of particular content type (Basic page, article, etc.).
- Filter by **Language**: makes it possible to filter by the node language. This option will only be necessary when we create sites with multiple languages, as we will study in the **Intermediate Level**.

These are the basic filtered parameters. As the functionalities of the site are increasing with the installation of additional modules, new filtered parameters may appear, such as for example taxonomies, new content types to be selected, etc.

It is also possible to carry out actions to several nodes at the same time (**Update options**) from the contents area management. This enables us to save time when we have to apply changes to many nodes, and as such we will not have to

do this by editing the nodes one by one. Once the nodes on which we want to carry out the action have been selected, we will select the action from the drop-down menu identified as **Update options**, by then clicking on the **Update** button.

Some of the available actions are:

- Publish the selected content
- Remove the selected content from the publication
- Take what is selected to the front page (promote)
- Remove the selected content from the front page
- Make the selected content sticky at top of lists
- Make the content not be sticky at top of lists
- Delete the selected content

From the list of nodes it is also possible to access the node (by clicking on the node title) and the **edit** and **delete** operations. The list shows the content type, author's name, status and date of the last update of the node. In addition, we can arrange the list of nodes by clicking on the head of some of the columns (title, type, status, Update and language).

URL alias

4.5

As we have seen during the course of the unit, by creating a node you are allocated an URL of the type node/1, node/2, etc. In order to make these and other system paths more user-friendly and easy to remember, we can use the URL aliases. In addition, the general use of **clean URLs** and an **URL alias** assists the positioning of the pages of the site in the search engine, because they contribute information about the content of the page.

The **Path module** of the core contributes the URL alias functionality. Although this module is enabled by default in Drupal 7, make sure that the module is enabled before continuing. Locate and enable the Path module from the modules administration area (**Administration** ⇒ **Modules**).

As we saw in **section 4.2**, when the **Path module** is enabled, when creating or editing a node the **URL path settings** group editing form will be shown, where we will be able to directly indicate an URL alias for this content.

There is a tool for managing all of the URL aliases created on the site, available at: [F4.22](#)

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Search and metadata** ⇒ **URL alias**

URL URL alias
</admin/config/search/path>

This management page enables us to search for an alias and edit them or delete them.

F4.22**URL alias**

URL alias management area.

The URL aliases make it possible to make the URLs more user-friendly and easier to remember, as well as helping the positioning in the search engines.

An alias defines a different name for an existing URL path – for example, the alias 'about' for the URL path 'node/1'. A URL path can have multiple aliases.

Add alias

ALIAS	SYSTEM	OPERATIONS
about-us	node/1	edit delete
article1	node/3	edit delete
article2	node/4	edit delete

From the **Add alias** link, we can create new URL aliases. On creating the URL alias we have to indicate the **language** (necessary for sites with multiple languages, as we shall see in the **Intermediate Level**), the **Existing system path** (that of allocating Drupal by default) and the **path alias**, without the bar character (/) at the end. **F4.23**

We recommend that the URL alias does not contain spaces, capital letters or special characters (including tildes). For example, if the page has the title **About us**, we can use the **aboutus**, **about_us** or **about-us** aliases.

F4.23**Edit an URL alias**

A new alias can be created from the **Add alias** tab.

Any system path may have several aliases, but only one alias can indicate one single system path.

Existing system path *
http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es / node/1

Specify the existing path you wish to alias. For example: node/28, forum/1, taxonomy/term/1.

Path alias *
http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es / about-us

Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "about" when writing an about page. Use a relative path and don't add a trailing slash or the URL alias won't work.

Save **Delete**

Any system path can have several allocated aliases, but one alias can only indicate one single system path.

For example, we can create the alias **who-we-are** and **about-us**, indicating the same page **node/1**. In the same way, when we load any of the pages in the browser:

- www.example.com/who-we-are
- www.example.com/about-us

in both cases the content loaded will be that of **node/1**, with the URL with the stated alias being maintained in the browser.

Finally, indicate that **when an URL alias is deleted the node that is not referred to is not deleted**.

Configuration of the home page

4.6

We have already seen above that we can configure the home page of the site from:

Administration⇒Configuration⇒ System⇒ Site information [Front page]

From this page we can modify the **name of the Website**, the **slogan** and the electronic **mail address** of the site. We can also change the **home page** or front page of the site (by default/node), and the error pages that will be shown when the user finds an error of **page not found** (error 404) or **access denied** (error 403).

URL Site information
[/admin/config/system/
site-information](/admin/config/system/site-information)

The **node** page (www.example.com/node) is a special page that shows a progress report of the notes that have been marked as "**promoted to front page**" (or "promoting to the front page"). **F4.24**

Second article

Submitted by [admin](#) on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 13:32

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

[Read more](#)

First article

Submitted by [admin](#) on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 13:31

Nullam ullamcorper lorem non nibh pellentesque egestas quis vel risus. Etiam non orci augue. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Nam in ante at nibh hendrerit ullamcorper eget ut erat. Vivamus hendrerit fringilla augue, ut placerat nibh dignissim at.

[Read more](#)

About us

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

[Read more](#)

The **number of post son front page** **F4.25** is the number of nodes (summary) that will be shown on the home page of the site. If there are more nodes promoted to the front page, this will be shown in paginated form, so as to be able to browse through the older pages.

F4.25

Configuration of the home page

We can select the number of posts that will be shown on the front page.

FRONT PAGE

Number of posts on front page
10

The maximum number of posts displayed on overview pages such as the front page.

Default front page
 Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default content feed.

4.7

Publication and moderation of comments

In this section we will see how to publish comments on the nodes that allow this and how to moderate them. In **unit 5** we will see further configuration options for the comments of each type of comment.

At this point it is important to state that the **comments are not nodes**. Drupal does not create them or treat them as such; they are items related to one node in particular, but they are not of the nature of being nodes in themselves.

Figure **F4.26** shows us the comments publication form (**Add new comment**), associated with an article-type node with the comments enabled.

Fusce congue auctor mi sit amet lobortis. Sed pretium diam vitae nulla euismod ut hendrerit neque auctor. Nullam enim risus, tristique ut sodales feugiat, lobortis id sapien. Aliquam mollis varius turpis, facilisis consectetur mauris rhoncus vitae. Suspendisse potenti. Vestibulum sodales porta feugiat. Nulla neque diam, pharetra in interdum sed, ultrices id odio. Duis sagittis quam id felis tincidunt vulputate. Nunc gravida lorem sit amet metus facilisis semper. Sed lacinia aliquam mattis. Donec at eleifend eros. Fusce porttitor felis in velit egestas porta. Integer ac erat metus, non posuere neque. Proin justo tortor, suscipit id tempus ut, lacinia sit amet metus. Nunc non luctus magna.

F4.26

Publish a comment

We will only be able to publish comments on the nodes from those that are activated and provided that our user has the necessary permissions.

Add new comment

Your name

Subject

Comment *

Text format More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <blockquote> <code> <i> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

From the site administrator's viewpoint, we can access all of the comments published on the site from: **F4.27**

Administration ⇒ Content [Comments]

by clicking on the **Comments tab**.

The screenshot shows the 'Comments' tab selected in the Content administration menu. It displays a table of published comments with columns for Subject, Author, Posted In, Updated, and Operations (edit link). Two comments are listed: 'Comment 2' by admin in 'First article' and 'Comment 1' by admin in 'First article'. Below the table is an 'UPDATE OPTIONS' section with a dropdown menu set to 'Unpublish the selected comments' and an 'Update' button.

Subject	Author	Posted In	Updated	Operations
Comment 2	admin	First article	02/13/2012 - 13:40	edit
Comment 1	admin	First article	02/13/2012 - 13:40	edit

The list of comments shows the subject of the comment, the author, the node they have been posted on (Posted on) and the date and time of the posting of all of the comments published (and hence visible) on the site.

The comments that require moderation before being published will be kept in **unapproved comments**. **F4.28** A site moderator will have the review the approval queue and approve or reject the comments received, following the site's publication policies.

The screenshot shows the 'Comments' tab selected in the Content administration menu. It displays a table of unapproved comments with columns for Subject, Author, Posted In, Updated, and Operations (edit link). One comment is listed: 'Comment 3' by demouser in 'First article'. Below the table is an 'UPDATE OPTIONS' section with a dropdown menu set to 'Publish the selected comments' and an 'Update' button.

Subject	Author	Posted In	Updated	Operations
Comment 3	demouser	First article	02/13/2012 - 13:44	edit

URL Comments

/admin/content/comment

F4.27

Comments management

This enables us to manage the comments published and the comments pending revision and approval.

F4.28

Unapproved comments

Comments approval queue. The moderator will be able to approve (publish) the comments or definitively eliminate them.

Permissions for the publication of comments

Although we will not see how to administer the roles and permissions until **Unit 10**, in this section we provide an advance view of the permissions that enable the users to publish comments (**Administration ⇒ People [Permissions]**):

- **Publish comments.** The users with this permission can publish comments, but these will go into the approval queue before being published. The moderator will be the person who ultimately decides whether the comment is published or rejected.
- **Skip approval of comment.** This permits the users to post comments that will be directly published, without going through the approval queue. Although the comment is published directly, the site moderator will be able to remove or delete a comment at any time if he deems this opportune.

These permissions can also be allocated to anonymous users, in such a way that it will not be necessary to be registered on the site in order to be able to publish comments.

By default, anonymous users cannot publish comments. Registered users can publish comments with no need for approval.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

5 Content types

In **Unit 4** we saw how to create contents of different types, although we will only use the contents types already available on the site for this.

In this unit we will study how to create new content types. The content types are entities to which additional fields can be added (text, image, file, number, date, etc.). On creating a node of the defined content types, the new added fields will be available on the creation form, which enables us to create contents that are structured and differentiated between themselves.

In **Unit 22** (intermediate level) we will go into greater detail about the creation of content types and we will study other additional modules that add new fields to the system.

Comparative D7/D6

Fields and CCK

In Drupal 6, additional fields are added to the content types by making use of the CCK (Content Construction Kit) module.

In Drupal 7, the fields that are additional to the content have been integrated into the core, using the Fields module. But furthermore, so as to standardise the use of additional fields in different items, and not just in the content types, the concept of **entity** has been added to the Drupal architecture.

Entities in Drupal can have assigned fields, and in all of the entities their management and display will be done in the same way.

Some entities in Drupal 7 are the content types (or nodes), users, comments and taxonomies.

Unit contents

5.1 Create and configure content types.....	70
5.2 Add additional fields to the content type	75



5.1

Create and configure content types

We should go to the same place if we want to modify an existing content type or create a new one. **F5.1**

URL Content types
 /admin/structure/types

F5.1

Content types

This shows the list of the content types available on the site. We can modify an existing content type or add new content types.

NAME	OPERATIONS
Article (Machine name: article) Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.	edit manage fields manage display delete
Basic page (Machine name: page) Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	edit manage fields manage display delete

In order to **modify an existing content type**, it uses the **Edit** link corresponding to that content type. To **create a content type**, click on the **Add content type** link. In both cases, the form to be completed or modified will have the same fields, which we will describe below.

Identification details of the content type

Basic information relating to content type. **F5.2**

- **Name:** This is the name of the content type. This name will be shown to the users on the different system interfaces, and therefore this must be a name that can be understood by the people who use the site. Some examples of the existing content types are **Basic page**, **Article** or **Forum topic**.
- **Machine-readable name:** This is the name that Drupal will use internally to handle this content type. The type can only contain lower case letters, numbers and underscores. For example, **page** for the **Basic page** type or **article** for the **Article** type.
- **Description:** This must introduce a short description of the content type. This text will be used to assist the users, showing when they are going to create a new content of this type.

Home > Administration > Structure > Content types

Basic page

EDIT **MANAGE FIELDS** **MANAGE DISPLAY** **COMMENT FIELDS** **COMMENT DISPLAY**

Name *
 Machine name: page [\[Edit\]](#)

The human-readable name of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the *Add new content* page. It is recommended that this name begin with a capital letter and contain only letters, numbers, and spaces. This name must be unique.

Description
 Use `basic pages` for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.

Describe this content type. The text will be displayed on the *Add new content* page.

F5.2**Create or modify a content type**

General form for editing a content type (identification details).

Submit form settings

Information concerning how the content creation form will be shown to the user (for example by creating or modifying a Page). **F5.3**

- **Title field label:** Value of the label that is shown to the user for the content title. By default the value of this is **Title**.
- **Preview before submitting:** Defines whether the users have to make a mandatory preview of the content before publishing it.
- **Explanation or submissions guidelines:** This field makes it possible to add a help text or additional instructions that will be shown to the users when they are going to create a content of this type.

Submission form settings

Title

Publishing options
 Published

Display settings
 Don't display post information

Comment settings
 Hidden, Threading , 50 comments per page

Menu settings

Title field label *

Preview before submitting

Disabled
 Optional
 Required

Explanation or submission guidelines

This text will be displayed at the top of the page when creating or editing content of this type.

F5.3**Submission form settings**

We can modify the label of the **title field**, replacing it with one that is more suitable for the content type that we are creating.

Publishing options

The publishing options allow us to define the default options of new nodes. Users with right permissions will be able to change these settings at content **F5.4** creation.

- **Published:** States, by default, whether it is published or not.
- **Promoted to front page:** This states, by default, whether or not it is promoted to the front page.

- **Sticky at the start of the lists:** This states whether, by default, it is positioned at the head of the lists or not. This setting is used to highlight certain contents above others, for example in the contents submitted to the front page of the site.
- **Create new revision:** This states by default, whether a new version of the content created or modified is created or not. The revision will only be created when the content is being modified, because there is no earlier version before the one saved when it is created.
- **Multi-language functioning:** This makes it possible to authorize the format for multiple languages on the site or not. If this setting is activated, it will be possible to assign a language from among those available on the website to each node. How to create **websites with multiple languages** will be studied in detail in the **Intermediate Level**.

F5.4**Publishing options**

The user will be able to change the work flow options when he creates or modifies a node. However, we can assist publication by establishing pre-defined settings.

Submission form settings Title	Default options
Publishing options Published	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published
Display settings Don't display post information	<input type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page
Comment settings Hidden, Threading , 50 comments per page	<input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists
Menu settings	<input type="checkbox"/> Create new revision
Users with the <i>Administer content</i> permission will be able to override these options.	

Display settings

We will state whether the author information and publication date of the node to be shown or not. **F5.5**

F5.5**Display settings**

This option may be of interest when we want to show the user name and date of creation of the node in each one of the publications.

Submission form settings Title	Display author and date information. Author username and publish date will be displayed.
Publishing options Published	
Display settings Don't display post information	
Comment settings Hidden, Threading , 50 comments per page	
Menu settings	

In Drupal 6, this setting was available in **Global settings** of the themes. This has been put in a better place in Drupal 7, inside the configuration of each type of content.

Comment settings

This sets out the options for configuring the behavior of the comments for the comments of this type that are generated. **F5.6**

Submission form settings	Default comment setting for new content
Title	Hidden <input type="button" value="▼"/>
Publishing options	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Threading Show comment replies in a threaded list.
Display settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Comments per page
Don't display post information	50 <input type="button" value="▼"/>
Comment settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow comment title
Hidden, Threading , 50 comments per page	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show reply form on the same page as comments
Menu settings	Preview comment
	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Optional
	<input type="radio"/> Required

F5.6

Comment settings

If you have worked with Drupal 6 before you will notice a big difference in the comment settings configurations of Drupal 7.

- **Default comment setting for the new content.** We can choose between:

- o **Open.** This shows the comments and makes it possible for the users to write new comments about the content. Users must have the "Submit comments" permission.
- o **Closed.** This shows the comments that have previously been made but it does not allow new comments to be introduced.
- o **Hidden.** The comments are not shown, nor does it allow new comments about the content to be made. This option will be available when comments associated with the page have been published. Only those users with the "Administer comments and comment settings" permission will be able to modify this option by creating or editing a content.

The "**threading**" setting defines the pre-defined options for viewing the comments (similar to the usual format of the forums). If this is activated, all of the comments are shown at the same level, one beneath the other one.

- **Comments per page:** This makes it possible to state how many comments are shown per page.

We can configure the response form so that it is possible to introduce a title or subject into the comment using the "**Allow comment title**" option.

We can also choose where the comments submission form will be located. This can be presented on the same page or another page that is different from the comments one. The "**Show reply form on the same page as comments**" option will be used to configure this behavior.

- **Preview comment:** This defines whether the users have to carry out a mandatory or optional preview of the comment before publishing it. If we want the preview of the comment not to be shown we will select "**Disabled**".

Figure F5.7 shows the form that makes it possible to add a comment on the node. In this example, the "Allow comment title" option has been activated, and so **Subject** (non-obligatory) field will be shown.

F5.7**Add new comment**

By enabling the "Allow comment title" option, the subject field will appear in the comment form.

Add new comment

Your name	admin
Subject	
Comment*	
Text format <input type="button" value="Filtered HTML"/> More information about text formats 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically. • Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd> • Lines and paragraphs break automatically. 	
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Preview"/>	

Menu settings

Lastly, we can link the content type with a default parent menu and item. Unless specified to the contrary, all of the nodes created will generate menu entries in the specified position.

F5.8**Menu settings**

We can select the menus that the new content that has been created can be linked to.

Submission form settings Title Publishing options Published Display settings Don't display post information Comment settings Hidden, Threading, 50 comments per page Menu settings	Available menus <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Main menu <input type="checkbox"/> Management <input type="checkbox"/> Navigation <input type="checkbox"/> User menu The menus available to place links in for this content type. Default parent item <input type="button" value="Main menu"/> Choose the menu item to be the default parent for a new link in the content authoring form.
---	--

If we have created a new type of content, this will appear –once it has been saved- in the contents types lists, in: **F5.8**

URL Content types
</admin/structure/types>

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Content types**

From this page we will be able to edit the configuration of the content type and even delete it. It is important, on this point, to indicate that eliminating a content type that already has nodes created does not mean erasing all of these nodes. The nodes remain, although it is not possible to access the section for editing it, and so it is convenient to ensure the elimination of a content type before continuing.

Finally, once the content type has been created, this will be available for creating new contents, as we studied in **Unit 4**, from:

Administration ⇒ **Content** ⇒ **Add content**

Add additional fields to the content type

5.2

Entities and fields

As we have already mentioned before in Unit 1, entities are items to which information fields of different types (text, image, file, number, date, etc.) can be added. Entities are a new concept in Drupal 7 and the purpose of these is to standardize the management and display of additional fields. Some entities in Drupal are users, nodes, taxonomy terms and comments.

A content type makes it possible to create nodes, which are the first Drupal entity that we will study. In Drupal 7, the Fields core module enables us to better structure contents types, defining new fields for different types: text, image, date, number, etc. The newly defined fields will be available to all of the nodes of a single content type.

Creation of fields

To be able to create and manage fields there must first be the content type on which we are going to make the changes. By accessing:

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Content types

URL Content types
</admin/structure/types>

We will be able to select an existing content type (**configure the fields** option) or first create a content type as we have seen in the previous section (**Add content type** option). We will also be able to access the configuration of the fields through the editing of the content type (**Manage fields** tab).

In **Figure F5.9** we can see a list of the initial fields of one content type. As we can observe, there is a default series of fields that we will not be able to modify or delete, although we can put them in order. These fields come from the Drupal core or from other modules installed on the site.

F5.9

Manage fields

There is a default series of fields in every content type that we will not be able to either modify or delete, although we will be able to change their order. These fields come from the core or from other modules that have been installed.

To create a new field we have to complete the following details: **F5.10**

NOTE

Field names

Ensure **use prefixes** are set when it comes to indicating the internal field name. For example, if you are creating a "Name" field that you are going to use in the Curriculum Vitae (CV) content type, call it **field_cv_name**, rather than **field_name**. In this way you will avoid confusion later on when it comes to re-using existing fields in different content types or when creating fields with the same label.

- **Label.** Name that is shown to the user in the mode creation form (of this content type).
- **Field name:** Name associated with the field. Drupal makes use of this name at the internal level and the prefix **field_** is added to it. This only permits characters from a-z (in lower case), numbers (0-9) and underscore (_). It will not be possible to modify this value later on.
- **Type of data to store:** A set of data types is available for the new field. The fields available in the field are:
 - o **File**, makes it possible to attach a file to the node. Among other things, we will be able to select file permitted file extensions.
 - o **Boolean**, field that stores two values (true/false, on/off).
 - o **Float**, **Decimal** and **Integer**, which allow for numerical values with different formats to be introduced.
 - o **Image**, makes it possible to add an image to the form. We will be able to select the permitted extensions, and other options of conversion of the uploaded image.
 - o **List of decimals, integers** and **text** make it possible to create lists of numbers or text.
 - o **Term reference**, which makes it possible to add a selector with the terms included in a taxonomy vocabulary.
 - o **Text, Long text, Long text and summary**, which make it possible to add text fields of different types.

F5.10

Types of fields available in the core

By default, the fields displayed come from the Core Fields module.

As well will see in the Intermediate level, there are additional modules that complement the core, adding new fields and configuration and viewing settings.

LABEL	NAME	FIELD	WIDGET	OPERATIONS
Title	title	Node module element		
Body	body	Long text and summary	Text area with a summary	edit delete
Add new field	field_	<input type="text"/> Field name (a-z, 0-9, _)	- Select a field type - - Select a field type - Boolean Decimal File Float Image Integer List (float) List (integer) List (text) Long text Long text and summary Term reference Text	edit delete
Add existing field		- Select an existing field - Label Field to share	- Select a widget - Form element to edit the data.	
		Save		

- **Control or widget (form element):** Defines the type of form control or element that is shown to the user in the process of creating a new node, for this field. For example a text area, a selection list, a set of radio buttons, etc. The elements available will depend on the type of field selected and on the additional modules installed. The control selected can be modified later on by editing the field, using the **Control type** tab.

Once the values for the creation of any of these fields has been introduced it is necessary to click on the **Save** button. Depending on which field type is being added, the system will show a form for configuring the new field in detail. Thus, for example, the form of Figure will be shown associated with the creation of a new field. **F5.11**

We will find two blocks of settings in the **Edit** tab for a field. The first block (**content type settings**) includes configuration options specific to the content type for which the field has been created or inserted. Note that **the same field can be re-used** in different content types (and other entity types), and so this block enables us to modify this particular field for different content types. The second block (**Field name field settings**) includes the general field options, which will be applied in all content types (and in all of the entities) where it is used.

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Basic page » Manage fields

Subtitle **EDIT** **FIELD SETTINGS** **WIDGET TYPE** **DELETE**

BASIC PAGE SETTINGS

These settings apply only to the *Subtitle* field when used in the *Basic page* type.

Label *
Subtitle

Required field

Help text

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub> <sup> <tt> <p>

Size oftextfield *
60

Text processing
 Plain text
 Filtered text (user selects text format)

DEFAULT VALUE
The default value for this field, used when creating new content.
Subtitle

SUBTITLE FIELD SETTINGS

These settings apply to the *Subtitle* field everywhere it is used.

Number of values
1

Maximum number of values users can enter for this field.
'Unlimited' will provide an 'Add more' button so the users can add as many values as they like.

Maximum length *
255

The maximum length of the field in characters.

Save settings

F5.11**Text type field**

The configuration settings of each field will be grouped together into:

- Content type settings, which only affect the field for this content type.

- Created field settings that affect all of the entities where the field is used.

This form may vary depending on the type of data and the type of form element that the field is linked with. By way of example, we will see **text** type field:

- **Content type settings:** The parameters stated here only affect the particular content type that the new field is being added.
 - o **Label:** This makes it possible to state the name of the label of the field that will be shown on the node creation or editing form.

- **Required field.** If the field is obligatory we must check this option.
 - **Help text:** The help text that will be shown to the user.
 - **Size of text field:** Indicates the size of the text field in characters.
 - **Text processing:** We will select whether this is an unformatted text or filtered text, depending on the formats available.
 - **Default value:** The default value that will be shown in the field can be indicated when a new node is created.
- **Settings of the field created:** The parameters stated in this section affect the field in any type of content in which this is present. As has already been remarked, different content types (and, in general, entities) can share the same field. Therefore, these settings would be common for all those content types that share the field.
- **Number of values:** This determines the maximum number of values that the user can introduce. This can be set at unlimited, which will provide an extra Add field.
 - **Maximum length:** This determines the maximum length of characters permitted for the value introduced.

The **field settings** can also be modified from the upper **Field settings** tab.

Add existing field

As well as creating new fields, it is also possible to re-use an existing field. This will enable us to share fields between different content types or even between entities. In these fields it is necessary to take account of the fact that the global settings defined will affect the field in all of the entities where this is used.

When there are existing fields available to be used, a new selection setting will be shown, which is known as **Add existing field**. **F5.12**

F5.12

Add existing field

The Fields module makes it possible to share fields between different entities (content types, users, etc.)

Home > Administration > Structure > Content types > Basic page

Basic page EDIT MANAGE FIELDS MANAGE DISPLAY COMMENT FIELDS COMMENT DISPLAY

LABEL	NAME	FIELD	WIDGET	OPERATIONS
>Title	title	Node module element		edit delete
Body	body	Long text and summary	Text area with a summary	edit delete
Subtitle	field_subtitle	Text	Text field	edit delete
+ Add new field	field_	- Select a field type -	- Select a widget -	
	Label	Field name (a-z, 0-9, _)	Type of data to store.	Form element to edit the data.
+ Add existing field	Label	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: 300px;"> - Select an existing field - - Select an existing field - Image: field_image (Image) - Select an existing field - Term reference: field_tags (Tags) </div>		
		Save		

The existing fields that have already been added to the content type will not be shown in this selection list. The control type will also be specific for the content type where the field is being added, and so we can compare a field that has different types of control.

Display of the fields

Lastly, we can configure the visibility of the fields when a node is shown. We can carry out the following actions from the **Manage Display tab**, in the editing of the content type: **F5.13**

- **Order of the fields:** Establish the order in which the fields will be shown.
- **Position of the label:** Select whether the field label will be shown above, on the left (aligned) or it will not be shown (<Hidden>).
- **Field format:** The format will depend on the type of field. By selecting <Hidden>, the field will not be shown. The fields in which a specific format cannot be selected will have the Visible/Hidden settings as a minimum.

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Basic page

Basic page • EDIT MANAGE FIELDS MANAGE DISPLAY COMMENT FIELDS COMMENT DISPLAY Default Teaser

Content items can be displayed using different view modes: Teaser, Full content, Print, RSS, etc. **Teaser** is a short format that is typically used in lists of multiple content items. **Full content** is typically used when the content is displayed on its own page.

Here, you can define which fields are shown and hidden when **Basic page** content is displayed in each view mode, and define how the fields are displayed in each view mode.

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT
Body	<Hidden>	Default
Subtitle	Above	Default

Hidden
No field is hidden.

CUSTOM DISPLAY SETTINGS
Use custom display settings for the following view modes

Full content
 Teaser
 RSS
 Search index
 Search result

Save

F5.13

Display of fields

From the Manage display tab we can configure how the fields will be shown when the mode is displayed

We will initially modify the default settings (**Default tab**), but we can also configure the Display for other node Displays (Full content, Teaser, RSS, search index, etc.). To activate these tabs we must activate each Display in **custom display settings**.

Practical case 5.1

Create a content type

We are going to create a content type called **News** step by step below, which we will use to publish news on the site that can be commented on by all users, including anonymous users.

Step 1. Content type creation form

To create a new content type, access:

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Content types**

and click on the **Add content type** link. You can also access directly via the URL `/admin/structure/types/add`.

Step 2. Complete the content type Identification fields

Complete the content type **Identification** fields: **Name**, **Machine-readable name (or type)** and **Description**: **F5.14**

- The **Name** of the content type will be "**News**", which will be the name that the users will see when they create a content of this type.
- The **Machine-readable name or Type** will be "**news**". The type is a name that Drupal will use internally and this can only contain lower case letters, numbers and underscores.
- Lastly, we add a small **Description** about the content type, including the use that it is conceived for and its default configuration.

F5.14

Practical case 5.1 Creating content type

We complete the identification fields of the News content type (name, Machine-readable name and description).

The screenshot shows the 'Content types' creation form in Drupal. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home » Administration » Structure » Content types. Below that, the title 'Content types' is followed by a 'Create new content type' button. A note says: 'Individual content types can have different fields, behaviors, and permissions assigned to them.' The 'Name' field is filled with 'News'. A note explains: 'The human-readable name of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the Add new content page. It is recommended that this name begin with a capital letter and contain only letters, numbers, and spaces. This name must be unique.' The 'Machine-readable name' field is filled with 'news'. A note explains: 'A unique machine-readable name for this content type. It must only contain lowercase letters, numbers, and underscores. This name will be used for constructing the URL of the Add new content page, in which underscores will be converted into hyphens.' The 'Description' field contains the text: 'Custom content type to publish news.' A note at the bottom says: 'Describe this content type. The text will be displayed on the Add new content page.'

Step 3. Complete the submission form settings

This displays the **Submission form settings** and it completes the form fields in this way: **F5.15**

- Modifies the **Title field label**. Since this is news we will call this field **Headline**.
- We will establish the previewing of the content before submission as optional.

Submission form settings Headline	Title field label * Headline	F5.15
Publishing options Published , Promoted to front page	Preview before submitting <input type="radio"/> Disabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Optional <input type="radio"/> Required	Practical case 5.1 Submission form settings We complete the submission form Settings of the News content type.
Display settings Display author and date information.	Explanation or submission guidelines	
Comment settings Open, Threading , 50 comments per page	This text will be displayed at the top of the page when creating or editing content of this type.	
Menu settings		

Step 4. Complete the publishing options

Displays the **Publishing options** and completes the form fields in this way: **F5.16**

- Check the pre-defined options:
 - Published
 - Promoted to front page
 - Create new revision
- Keep the multi-language Functioning setting Disabled.

Submission form settings Headline	Default options <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page <input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create new revision	F5.16
Publishing options Published , Promoted to front page , Create new revision	Users with the <i>Administer content</i> permission will be able to override these options.	
Display settings Display author and date information.		
Comment settings Open, Threading , 50 comments per page		
Menu settings		

Step 5. Complete the Display settings

In **Display settings** we will check the box to show the author information and publication date information. **F5.17**

F5.17

Practical case 5.1 Display settings

We select display author and date information.

Submission form settings Headline	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display author and date information. Author username and publish date will be displayed.
Publishing options Published , Promoted to front page , Create new revision	
Display settings Display author and date information.	

Step 6. Complete the comment Settings

Displays the **Comment settings** and completes the forms of the field in this way: **F5.18**

- This will enable the reading and writing of comments (**Open** option).
- The comments will be shown in **list of threadings** mode.
- Each page will show a maximum of 10 comments.
- The comment or reply to comments form will be shown on the same page as the comments.
- Preview comment will be optional.

F5.18

Practical case 5.1 Comments settings

We activate the comments for the News content type.

Submission form settings Headline	Default comment setting for new content Open
Publishing options Published , Promoted to front page , Create new revision	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Threading Show comment replies in a threaded list.
Display settings Display author and date information.	
Comment settings Open, Threading , 10 comments per page	Comments per page 10
Menu settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow comment title <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show reply form on the same page as comments Preview comment <input type="radio"/> Disabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Optional <input type="radio"/> Required

Step 7. Complete the Menu settings

We will leave the default values activated in **Menu settings**, **F5.19** enabling the node only to be linked with the main menu.

Take into account the fact that this option does not mean that items are automatically created in the selected menu. We are only selecting the menus in which it will be possible to add the News type nodes created. If we do not select any Menu, we will not be allowed to create a menu item when a News node is created.

<p>Submission form settings</p> <p>Headline</p> <hr/> <p>Publishing options</p> <p>Published , Promoted to front page , Create new revision</p> <hr/> <p>Display settings</p> <p>Display author and date information.</p> <hr/> <p>Comment settings</p> <p>Open, Threading , 10 comments per page</p> <hr/> <p>Menu settings</p>	<p>Available menus</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Main menu</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Management</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Navigation</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> User menu</p> <p>The menus available to place links in for this content type.</p> <hr/> <p>Default parent item</p> <p><Main menu> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Choose the menu item to be the default parent for a new link in the content authoring form.</p>
---	--

F5.19

Practical case 5.1 Menu settings

We select the main Menu as available menu. This only means that when a piece of news is created we will be able to choose whether we want a menu setting to be created within the main Menu. The menu setting will not be created directly.

Step 8. Save and create the content type

Once these fields of the form have been created, click on **Save this content type**. F5.20

Content types					
Add content type					
NAME		OPERATIONS			
Article (Machine name: article)	Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.	edit	manage fields	manage display	delete
Basic page (Machine name: page)	Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	edit	manage fields	manage display	delete
News (Machine name: news)	Custom content type to publish news.	edit	manage fields	manage display	delete

F5.20

Practical case 5.1 Creating the content type

Once the News content type has been created, this will be shown together with the rest of the content types available on the site.

Step 9. Assign the permission to post comments for anonymous users

Without going into a lot of detail (this will be studied extensively in [Unit 10](#) of this level), we are going to assign the necessary permissions to the **anonymous user role** so that it is possible to post comments on the site news section.

Access

Administration ➔ People [Permissions tab]

and locate the permissions of the **comment** module: F5.21

- See comments
 - Post comments
 - Skip comment approval

Activate these permissions in the **anonymous user** column and click on **Save permissions** (at the end of the page).

F5.21

Practical case 5.1 Comment permissions

Assigns the "view comments", "post comments" and "skip comment approval" permissions to an anonymous user.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Block			
Administer blocks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Comment			
Administer comments and comment settings	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Post comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Skip comment approval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit own comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Step10. Anonymous commenting setting

Once the appropriate permissions for anonymous users have been assigned, we can go back to the editing of the News content type. We will do this from:

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Content types [edit News]

Within the **Comment settings**, we go back to the **Anonymous commenting** setting. As is shown in **Figure F5.22** it is possible to modify the configuration of this setting. We will select the final option; **Anonymous posters must leave their contact information**. This means that anonymous users will have to state their name and their electronic mail address, although the latter will not be publicly displayed.

F5.22

Practical case 5.1 Configuration of anonymous comment

On returning to the editing of comment type, we configure the behavior of comments posting for the anonymous users.

Save the content type again.

Step 11. Add a photo to the news

From the **Manage fields** option, we will create a new field of the **Image** type, which will be used to link an image with the news. Complete the fields in the following way: **F5.23**

- The label must be called **Picture**
- The field name is **field_news_picture**.
- The data type to be stored must be of the **Image** type.
- The form element for editing the data must also be **Image**.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage fields' interface for the 'News' content type. At the top, there are tabs for 'EDIT', 'MANAGE DISPLAY', 'COMMENT FIELDS', and 'COMMENT DISPLAY'. Below these, a table lists existing fields: 'Headline' (title, Node module element) and 'Body' (body, Long text and summary, Text area with a summary). A red box highlights the 'Add new field' section. In this section, the 'Label' is set to 'Picture', the 'Name' is 'field_news_picture', the 'Field' is 'Image', and the 'Widget' is also 'Image'. Below this, there are sections for 'Add existing field' and 'File sharing'.

F5.23

Practical case 5.1 Image field

We create an image type field.

Once the changes have been saved, edit the field that has been created and configure it so that only **jpg**, **jpeg** and **png** file extensions are permitted. We will also indicate that the uploaded images will be stored in the "news" folder. **F5.24**

The screenshot shows the 'FIELD SETTINGS' page for the 'Picture' field. At the top, there are tabs for 'EDIT', 'FIELD SETTINGS', 'WIDGET TYPE', and 'DELETE'. The 'FIELD SETTINGS' tab is active. The page includes sections for 'NEWS SETTINGS' (label 'Picture', required field checked), 'Help text' (empty), 'Allowed file extensions' (set to 'png, gif, jpg, jpeg'), and 'File directory' (set to 'news'). Instructions at the bottom explain the allowed HTML tags and file extensions.

F5.24

Practical case 5.1 Image field

Only file images with .png, .jpg or .jpeg extensions will be permitted.

Step 12. Create news

We have already created and configured the News content type, so we are going to create a News section, by accessing: **F5.25**

Administration⇒ Content⇒ Add content [News]

F5.25

Practical case 5.1 Creating news

Create a news type node.

[Home](#)

Add content 

 Article
Use *articles* for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.

 Basic page
Use *basic pages* for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.

 News
Custom content type to publish news.

Simply input the **Headline**, **Body** and upload a **Photo**, leaving the rest of the settings with their default values defined in the **News** content type. You have to change the **URL alias** in **URL path settings**, which will be **news1**.

F5.26

Practical case 5.1 Creating news

Indicate the Headline and the body and upload a photo. The URL alias must be **news1**.

[Home](#) » Add content

Create News 

Headline *

Body (Edit summary)
Nullam ullamcorper lorem non nibh pellentesque egestas quis vel risus. Etiam non orci augue. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Nam in ante at nibh hendrerit ullamcorper eget ut erat. Vivamus hendrerit fringilla augue, ut placerat nibh dignissim at. Ut tempor eleifend mauris, quis iaculis felis venenatis at. Vestibulum eget ipsum sem, nec pellentesque elit. Aenean libero turpis, dignissim in semper vel, condimentum vel mi. Sed a quam nisi, et suscipit est. Pellentesque adipiscing sagittis arcu, non aliquet nulla scelerisque non. Vestibulum interdum mi posuere nulla placerat at convallis enim mollis. Aliquam feugiat erat vitae nisl pharetra vel placerat nisl ultrices. Pellentesque id eros eros. Vivamus ac purus pellentesque ante viverra condimentum et eleifend mi. Proin congue rutrum odio sed consectetur. Phasellus porttitor luctus convallis.

Fusce congue auctor mi sit amet lobortis. Sed pretium diam vitae nulla euismod ut hendrerit neque auctor. Nullam enim risus, tristique ut sodales feugiat, lobortis id sapien. Aliquam mollis varius turpis, facilisis consectetur mauris rhoncus vitae. Suspendisse potenti. Vestibulum sodales porta feugiat. Nulla neque diam, pharetra in interdum sed, ultrices id odio. Duis sagittis quam id felis fincidunt vulputate. Nunc gravida lorem sit amet metus facilisis semper. Sed lacinia aliquam mattis. Donec at eleifend eros. Fusce porttitor felis in velit egestas porta. Integer ac erat metus, non posuere neque. Proin justo tortor, suscipit id tempus ut, lacinia sit amet metus. Nunc non luctus magna.

Text format More information about text formats 

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

Picture


Menu settings Not in menu	<input type="checkbox"/> Provide a menu link
Revision information New revision	
URL path settings No alias	
Comment settings Open	
Authoring information By admin	
Publishing options Published, Promoted to front page	

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Step 13. Modify the Display of the news

We are then going to modify the Display of the form content so that the photo is shown above the body of the news. To do this we edit the content type and we go to the **Manage Display** tab, we select the **Photo** field with the left button of the mouse and we drag that item (without releasing the button) so that it is placed above the **Body**.

In **Custom display settings** we select **Full content** and **Teaser**, **F5.27** so as to be able to modify the display of both views.

Content items can be displayed using different view modes: Teaser, Full content, Print, RSS, etc. **Teaser** is a short format that is typically used in lists of multiple content items. **Full content** is typically used when the content is displayed on its own page.

Here, you can define which fields are shown and hidden when **News** content is displayed in each view mode, and define how the fields are displayed in each view mode.

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT
Body	<Hidden>	Default
Picture	Above	Image

Hidden
No field is hidden.

CUSTOM DISPLAY SETTINGS

Use custom display settings for the following view modes

- Full content
- Teaser
- RSS
- Search index
- Search result

Save

F5.27**Practical case 5.1**
Creating news

We activate the custom displays for Full content and Teaser.

In the **Full content** tab we hide the **News photo** and **Body** labels (<hidden> value) and within the image format settings, in **Image style**, we will indicate **"medium"**, which is a pre-defined image size. The image will not be linked in this case, and so we will indicate **Link image to Nothing**. Click on update and Save so that the changes can become effective. **F5.28**

Format settings: **Image**

Image style: medium

Link image to: Nothing

Update **Cancel**

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT
Picture	<Hidden>	Format settings: Image Image style: medium Link image to: Nothing
Body	<Hidden>	Default

Hidden
No field is hidden.

Save

F5.28**Practical case 5.1**
Creating news

Configuration of the fields in the display of the Full content.

The **Teaser** display will be shown, for example, when a teaser of the news is shown on the front page of the site. In this case we will select the **Thumbnail image size "thumbnail"**, which is a miniature of the image. In addition, we will link the image to the content, so that when we click on this it will lead us directly to the news node. **F5.29**

F5.29

Practical case 5.1 Creating news

Configuration of the fields in the Teaser display.

After having done these changes, the final display of the news will be similar to that shown in **Figure F5.30**.

F5.30

Practical case 5.1 Display of the news

Final display of the news with the changes carried out. As we will see in the Intermediate level, by applying CSS styles to the content type template, we will be able to improve the news presentation.

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20

[View](#) [Edit](#) [Revisions](#)

www.forcontu.com

... ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

Nullam ullamcorper lorem non nibh pellentesque egestas quis vel risus. Etiam non orci augue. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Nam in ante at nibh hendrerit ullamcorper eget ut erat. Vivamus hendrerit fringilla augue, ut placerat nibh dignissim at. Ut tempor eleifend mauris, quis iaculis felis venenatis at. Vestibulum eget ipsum sem, nec pellentesque elit. Aenean libero turpis, dignissim in semper vel, condimentum vel mi.

Fusce congue auctor mi sit amet lobortis. Sed pretium diam vitae nulla euismod ut hendrerit neque auctor. Nullam enim risus, tristique ut sodales feugiat, lobortis id sapien. Aliquam mollis varius turpis, facilisis consectetur mauris rhoncus vitae. Suspendisse potenti. Vestibulum sodales porta feugiat. Nulla neque diam, pharetra in interdum sed, ultrices id odio.

Add new comment

The news is shown on the front page in the form of a Teaser display. **F5.31**

Headline 1

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20



www.forcontu.com

Lore ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

[Read more](#)

F5.31

Practical case 5.1 News promoted to front page

Display of the news in the teasers.

Step 14. Post comments

We will then post a comment as an anonymous user. To do this it will be necessary to close the user admin session that we are currently working with. **F5.32**
At least one comment should be posted in the news and another one as a reply to the first one. The result should be similar to that displayed in **Figure F5.33**

Add new comment

Your name *	<input type="text" value="Fran Gil"/>
E-mail *	<input type="text" value="example@example.com"/> <small>The content of this field is kept private and will not be shown publicly.</small>
Homepage	<input type="text" value="http://www.example.com"/>
Subject	<input type="text" value="Comment test"/>

Comment *

Lore ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate

F5.32

Practical case 5.1 Post comments

With the configuration proposed the anonymous users can post comments on the node.

Text format	<input type="button" value="Filtered HTML"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	More information about text formats
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically. • Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd> • Lines and paragraphs break automatically. 		
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Preview"/>		

F5.33
Practical case 5.1
Display comments

A comment is shown in the news along with a reply to the first comment. Both comments are from anonymous users and this is why the "unverified" notification message is shown along with the name that is indicated.

Comments

Fran Gil (not verified)
 Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:29
[permalink](#)

Comment test

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

[reply](#)

demouser
 Mon,
 02/13/2012 -
 14:31
[permalink](#)

new**Reply to comment**

Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.

[reply](#)

6 Menu Management

In the previous units we learned to create nodes of different types, and even to create new types of nodes. In this unit we will see **how to organise the nodes published** on the site using menu structures.

Drupal integrates a powerful menus manager that makes it possible to use multiple and varied menus on the same Website. The menus can be promoted to different areas or regions of a theme and they are fully adapted to the graphic design of the site, established by means of the theme selected.

In addition, it is possible to configure every menu separately in order to check when it should appear, whether according to the role of the connected user or the page that is being displayed.

In summary, in this unit we will review:

- Which menu types exist by default in Drupal
- How new menus are created
- How the elements of a menu are created to link with the site nodes
- How the menus are enabled so that they can be visible on the site
- How they are promoted in different areas or regions, depending on the active theme.

Comparative D7/D6

Default menus

The default menus **Main links** (now **Main menu**) and **Secondary links** disappear in Drupal 7.

The old **Administrative menu** is now split into three, **Administrative** (or Administration), **Navigation** and **User menu**.

Menu links

Menu links were formerly known as "menu items" (Drupal 6 and previous editions). We will use both names (menu links or items) without distinction.

Unit contents

6.1 Menu types	92
6.2 Creating and editing menus.....	95
6.3 Enabling of the menu.....	102
6.4 About breadcrumbs.....	107



6.1

Menu types

Drupal has a powerful menus manager that makes it possible to make use of multiple and varied menus on the same Website. The menus can be promoted to different areas or regions of a theme and they are fully adapted to the graphic design of the site.

The access path to the menus administration area is:

URL Menus

/admin/structure/menu

D7/D6 Comparative Default menus

The default menus **Main links** (now **Main menu**) and **Secondary links** disappear in Drupal 7.

The old **Administrative menu** is now split into three, **Administrative** (or Administration), **Navigation** and **User menu**.

F6.1

Menus

At the start we have 4 menus available on our site: **Administrative**, **Main menu**, **User menu** and **Navigation**.

Administration ⇒ **Structures** ⇒ **Menus**

By default, there are four **menus available**: **F6.1**

- **Management**, which is the menu from which the site is administered. Therefore, it can only be accessed by the administrative user and by the registered users who have a permission that is related to an administration area.
- **Main menu**, which is frequently used to display the main sections of the site. A typical form of representation is that of the main site links arranged as tabs in the upper part. It only contains one link at the outset, **Home**.
- **User menu**, which displays the links so that the visitors can manage their user accounts. At the start this only contains the **My account** and **Logout** links.
- **Navigation**, which contains links so that the users can interact with all of the sections of the site. The **Add content**, **Search and Compose** **Tips** options appear here. When modules are being installed new links will appear on this menu.

TITLE	OPERATIONS		
Main menu	list links	edit menu	add link
Management	list links	edit menu	add link
Navigation	list links	edit menu	add link
User menu	list links	edit menu	add link

We will see a practical example in order to understand the functioning of the menus. Figure F6.2 shows a screenshot from the **Servatur S.A.** Website, a company dedicated to hotel management, which can also be visited at www.servatur.com.

The screenshot displays the homepage of the Servatur website for the Sun's Gardens hotel in Maspalomas, Gran Canaria. The page features a top menu bar with links to Home, Hotels and apartments, Offers, Servatur Card, and Who are we. A red box highlights this top menu. On the left, a vertical sidebar contains a side menu for the Sun's Gardens hotel, listing options like The hotel, Services, Location & contact, Photo gallery, PDF Brochure, and Booking. Another red box highlights this side menu. At the bottom of the page, a footer section contains a bottom menu with links to Contact, Corporate Social Responsibility, Sitemap, and Privacy Policy. A third red box highlights this bottom menu. The central content area shows a large image of the hotel's swimming pool and surrounding sun terrace.

The **Servatur** Website has an information structure based on **3 types of menus:**

- A **top menu**, horizontally placed, where the main site options are shown (*Home, Hotels and apartments, Offers, etc.*).
- A **side menu** for each hotel, located in the left-hand column of the site. Each menu will only be shown on the pages of the hotel that they refer to.
- A **bottom menu**, horizontally placed, situated at the footer of the page with links such as *Contact, Corporate social responsibility, Site map and Disclaimer*.

This is just one example of the possible navigation and menus structure. Under no circumstances should this be taken to be a mandatory structure. Depending on the organisation and design of your Website, it may or not suit you to use the default menus or create additional menus, both horizontally and vertically placed.

F6.2

Example of menus on a Website

The Website

www.servatur.com

has 3 menus:

A **top menu**, horizontally placed, where the main site options are shown (*Home, Hotels and apartments, Offers, etc.*).

A **side menu** for each hotel, located in the left-hand column of the site. Each menu will only be shown on the pages of the hotel that they refer to.

A **bottom menu**, horizontally placed, situated at the footer of the page with links such as *Contact, Corporate social responsibility, Site map and Disclaimer*.

D7/D6 Comparison

Menu links

Menu links were formerly known as "menu items" (Drupal 6 and previous editions). We will use both names (menu links or items) without distinction).

F6.3

Menu links

The *IP address blocking* link is found in the **fourth level of depth of the Administrative menu**, with the following inside:

- Administration (1)
- Configuration (2)
- People (3)
- IP address blocking (4)

Menu links

The menus are made up of **links**, which are no more than **links or hyperlinks to pages**, which may be inside the site or outside it. These links are shown in orderly form and they can be added in such a way that menus can be constructed with different levels of depth (up to a **maximum of 9 levels**). Figure **F6.3** shows an example of menu links that are added until a **fourth level of depth** is reached (these are the default links of the **Management** menu).

The screenshot shows the 'Management' menu structure in the Drupal 7 'Menus' administration interface. The menu tree is as follows:

- Administration (Enabled)
- Dashboard (Enabled)
- Content (Enabled)
 - Comments (Enabled)
- Structure (Enabled)
 - Blocks (Enabled)
 - Content types (Enabled)
- Menus (Enabled)
 - Main menu (Enabled)
 - Management (Enabled)
 - Navigation (Enabled)
 - User menu (Enabled)
- Taxonomy (Enabled)
- Appearance (Enabled)
- People (Enabled)
 - Modules (Enabled)
 - Configuration (Enabled)
 - People (Enabled)
 - Account settings (Enabled)
 - IP address blocking (Enabled)

At the bottom of the list, the 'IP address blocking' link is highlighted with a red rectangle. The 'Operations' column for this link includes 'edit' and 'reset' buttons.

Creating and editing menus

6.2

As we have already remarked, the menus administration area is available from:

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Menus

URL Menus

/admin/structure/menu

The following basic actions can be carried out from the menus administration area:

- **View the menus** available on the site.
- **Create a new menu** or **edit** an existing one.
- **Edit the links of a menu.** The actions of add, modify, eliminate, enable, disable, sort and indent elements in a menu can be carried out.
- **Modify general configuration options** of the menus on the site, such as define new menus in order to display them as primary and/or secondary links.

Creating a menu does not mean that it is directly available on the site. In the next section we will see how, after creating a menu, it is necessary to enable it and to promote it to the region of the theme where we want it to be shown.

If a menu is enabled on the site, as is the case by default with the **Management** and **Navigation** menus, any change that is made to this will be displayed directly on the site. This is why it will be necessary to take care when directly modifying menus on production sites.

Below we will see the steps necessary in order to create a complete custom menu. These steps are also applicable to the modification of the existing menus.

Step 1. Add menu

The first step is to add the menu. From the menus administration area, we will select **Add menu** and the menu creation page will be displayed to us. **F6.4**

This will enable us to create a new menu after completing the following details:

- **Title.** This is the name of the menu that will be shown in both the administration area and on the site (if it is configured so that the title is shown).

On completing the title we will see a **URL Path** message to the right of the field. This is an internal level identifier that the menu will have, and this will be shown later on the URL address when we edit the menu or we add links. If we click on **Edit** we will be able to change this URL path, which can only contain lower case letters, numbers and underscores. If we do not want to change it, it will be automatically assigned a path depending on the **Title** that we are writing (we recommend that you do not change it).

- **Description.** This description is only displayed in the administrative area and this makes it possible to better organise the menus that have been created, explaining what each one of these are used for.

F6.4**Add menu**

When we create a menu we have to indicate the title and the description.

By default, the system generates an URL path or machine name of the menu, which we can edit before saving and create the menu (Edit link).

The screenshot shows the 'Add menu' form. At the top, there are links to 'Home', 'Administration', 'Structure', and 'Menus'. Below that, the word 'Menus' is followed by a circular icon with a plus sign. To the right are 'LIST MENUS' and 'SETTINGS' buttons. A message says, 'You can enable the newly-created block for this menu on the [Blocks administration page](#)'. The 'Title' field contains 'First menu' with a note 'URL path: first-menu [Edit]'. The 'Description' field contains 'Test menu.' A 'Save' button is at the bottom.

Once it has been saved, the new menu will be available on the front page of the menus administration area, along with the default menus **Management**, **Main menu**, **User menu** and **Navigation**. **F6.5**

F6.5**First menu**

The menu created (**First menu**) will be shown in the menus administration area, next to the default menus.

The screenshot shows a table of menus. The columns are 'TITLE' and 'OPERATIONS'. The 'TITLE' column lists 'First menu' (with a red border around it) and 'Test menu.'. The 'OPERATIONS' column for each row contains three buttons: 'list links', 'edit menu', and 'add link'. Below the table, descriptions are provided for each menu type: 'Main menu', 'Management', 'Navigation', and 'User menu'.

TITLE	OPERATIONS
First menu	list links edit menu add link
Test menu.	
Main menu	list links edit menu add link
The <i>Main</i> menu is used on many sites to show the major sections of the site, often in a top navigation bar.	
Management	list links edit menu add link
The <i>Management</i> menu contains links for administrative tasks.	
Navigation	list links edit menu add link
The <i>Navigation</i> menu contains links intended for site visitors. Links are added to the <i>Navigation</i> menu automatically by some modules.	
User menu	list links edit menu add link
The <i>User</i> menu contains links related to the user's account, as well as the 'Log out' link.	

Step 2. Add links

The next step is to add the links that the menu will have. It is worth first thinking about how the menu is going to be organised (links, the order they are in and possible indents).

On this point it is important to note that **to be able to create a menu link; the page that we will link with has to exist beforehand**. Therefore, **we will first create the nodes and then the menu links**.

Once the menu on which we want to create elements has been selected, we will click on **add link**. **F6.5**

The following information is requested in order to create the menu **F6.6** item:

- **Menu link title.** This is the name that will appear on the menu for this item. It can contain any type of character.
- **Path.** This is the link to the page that will be loaded when a user clicks on this menu option. It may be an **internal site path** (such as node/1, node/2, about-us, news1, etc.) or an **external link**, for which it will be necessary to write http:// followed by the full name of the link.
We can use the URL aliases that have previously been created on the site for the internal paths. As was remarked before, this must be a valid path in the system, which points to a previously existing node.
- **Description.** The description will be shown when the cursor is moved over the menu link (without clicking on it). While this is not a mandatory field, we do recommend that this be used to ensure the accessibility of the site.
- **Enabled.** The link is only shown on the menu if it is enabled. We can disable an item with no need to eliminate it. This will allow us to enable and disable items temporarily.
- **Show as expanded.** If we click this option and the item has children (indented) this will always be shown as expanded. This means that the items that it contains will be shown with no need to click on it. This option is disabled by default.
- **Parent link.** This makes it possible to select the parent of the link that we are creating. For the first level links, the parent link will be the menu name. To indent this link within another link, it is enough to provide the right parent link.
- **Weight.** The weight shows the position that the item that has been created will have with respect to the other items of the same level (and the same parent item). The weight is shown by a whole number that may be negative, positive and zero. **F6.7** To understand the system of sorting by weight, it is enough to say that the heaviest items will sink (there will be further down or over on the right) and the lightest items will float (they will be higher up or over on the left). Some examples are shown below:
 - o An item with a -5 weight will be shown before an item with a 7 weight.
 - o An item with a 0 weight will be shown before an item with a 3 weight.

Note

Add link when creating a node

There is also the possibility, as we have mentioned before in **Unit 4**, of creating a node and its relevant menu item at the same time, from the nodes creation and editing form.

- An item with a -3 weight will be shown before an item with a -1 weight.
- Two items with the same weight are shown in alphabetical order (following the **Menu link title** field).

F6.6**Add menu link**

When adding a menu link we have to indicate these parameters:

- Menu link title
- Path
- Description
- Enabled (Yes/No)
- Expanded (Yes/No)
- Parent link
- Weight

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Menus](#) » [First menu](#)

First menu [☰](#)

[LIST LINKS](#) [EDIT MENU](#)

Menu link title *
Option 1
The text to be used for this link in the menu.

Path *
option1
The path for this menu link. This can be an internal Drupal path such as `node/add` or an external URL such as `http://drupal.org`. Enter `<front>` to link to the front page.

Description
First level menu link
Shown when hovering over the menu link.

Enabled
Menu links that are not enabled will not be listed in any menu.

Show as expanded
If selected and this menu link has children, the menu will always appear expanded.

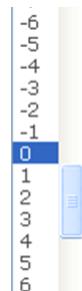
Parent link
<First menu>
The maximum depth for a link and all its children is fixed at 9. Some menu links may not be available as parents if selecting them would exceed this limit.

Weight
0
Optional. In the menu, the heavier links will sink and the lighter links will be positioned nearer the top.

[Save](#)

F6.7**Selection of the weight of a menu link**

The heaviest settings will sink (they will be lower down) as compared to the lighter links (they will be further up), which float.



The menu links created will be displayed as a tree with indented links (**List links** tab). **F6.8** This is the page from which the menu links will be edited once they have been created, in order to enable or disable them, expand them, edit them or eliminate them.

Home » Administration » Structure » Menus

First menu

F6.8

Indented menu links

The menu links will be shown in the form of an indented tree, on the **List links** tab of each menu.

We can sort and indent menu links by dragging them and dropping them, clicking on the  icon.

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
Option 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
Suboption 1.1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
Suboption 1.1.1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
Option 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete

Show row weights

+ Add link

Save configuration

The links can be sorted in a comfortable way by using the sorting icon () that is displayed next to each link. This is achieved by dragging a link, clicking (without releasing) on the sorting icon and dropping the link in its final position where we want to place it. It is also possible to indent the links by following the same method.

This drag and drop method utilises **Javascript**, so it will only be available if this is enabled on your browser. Should this not be available, only **weight-based sorting** can be used, as explained above.

To display the weights of each link or the sorting icons, we use the **Show row weights/Hide row weights** settings.

Figure **F6.9** shows the sorting of weight-based menu links.

Home » Administration » Structure » Menus

First menu

F6.9

Sorting of menu items by weight

Using "**Show row weights**" we will change the sorting by weight method.

MENU LINK	ENABLED	WEIGHT	OPERATIONS
Option 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete
Suboption 1.1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete
Suboption 1.1.1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete
Option 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	edit delete

+ Add link

Save configuration

Once all of the menu items have been created and organised, the next step so to enable the menu, which we will study in the next section.

Practical case 6.1

Creating a menu

In this practical case we are going to create a menu that we will call **My menu**. We will then add the following items:

- **Home**, will point to the front page or home page of the site.
- **About me**, will point to the **about-me** page that we created before.
- **Drupal**, will point to an external page, specifically to the original page of Drupal.org.

Step 1. Creation of the menu

To create the menu called **My menu** we will go to:

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Menus**

We will click on **Add menu**, and we will complete the information requested:

- **Title**: My menu (modifies the **URL path** or system menu name to **my-menu**).
- **Description**: Menu of links to my usual pages

By clicking on **Save**, we will have created the menu called **My menu**.

Step 2. Creation of items

Initially the menu that we have just created does not contain items.

To create the first item we access:

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Menus** [**My menu** ⇒ **add link**]

And we will complete the fields **F6.10** with the following values for the first link:

- Menu link title: **Home**.
- Path: **<front>**. To make reference to the front page of the site we use the **<front>** text. Drupal will replace this text with the link corresponding to the home page. In this way we will be able to change the configuration of the home page (**Configuration** ⇒ **Information about the site** [Setting **Default home page**]) without also having to modify the menu.
- Description: **Go to the Home page**.
- We will check the **Enabled** box
- We will not check the **Show as expanded** box.
- Parent item: **My menu**. In this way we will indicate that the item will appear at the first level of the menu called **My menu**.
- It will not be necessary to indicate a specific **Weight**, so we will leave this at 0 in all of the cases.

Home » Administration » Structure » Menus » My menu

My menu

LIST LINKS **EDIT MENU**

Menu link title *
Home
The text to be used for this link in the menu.

Path *
<front>
The path for this menu link. This can be an internal Drupal path such as `node/add` or an external URL such as <http://drupal.org>. Enter <front> to link to the front page.

Description
Go to homepage
Shown when hovering over the menu link.

Enabled
Menu links that are not enabled will not be listed in any menu.

Show as expanded
If selected and this menu link has children, the menu will always appear expanded.

Parent link
<My menu>
The maximum depth for a link and all its children is fixed at 9. Some menu links may not be available as parents if selecting them would exceed this limit.

Weight
0
Optional. In the menu, the heavier links will sink and the lighter links will be positioned nearer the top.

Save

To create the next item, **About me**, we must first create a node of the **Basic page** type. In this node you will be able to make a short presentation of yours, both personal and professional. The page created must have the **about-me** URL alias. Once the page has been created we will be able to create the next item on the menu, **About me**. In this case the Path will be "**about-me**", and the Menu link title is "**About me**".

To add the **Drupal** menu link we will have to indicate that this is an external page. To do this we introduce the full URL path of the page that it goes to. Path: <http://drupal.org>

Once the three menu items have been created, the structure of the menu will be the one shown in Figure. **F6.11** The links have appeared in alphabetical order, because we have given them all the same **Weight** (0).

Home » Administration » Structure » Menus

My menu

LIST LINKS **EDIT MENU**

+ Add link

Hide row weights

MENU LINK	ENABLED	WEIGHT	OPERATIONS
About me	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete
Drupal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete
Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	edit delete

Save configuration

F6.10**Practical case 6.1**
Link to home page

To link an item to the front page we use the `<front>` text.

In this way, although we change the front page, the menu item will continue being linked with the correct page.

F6.11**Practical case 6.1**
Menu links

Once the menu items known as **My menu** have been created we can vary the position that they appear at. By default, the items are shown as sorted alphabetically, because the weight is the same for all of them (0).

Step 3. Sorting of the items

To sort the menu items we will click on **Hide row weights** (if they are enabled) and then click (without releasing the mouse button) above the sorting icon of each item, dragging it and dropping it in the desired position. Move the items so that the final position is Home, About me, Drupal. To save the change we have to click on **Save configuration**. **F6.12**

Once the configuration has been saved, the configuration of the menu called **My menu** will be displayed as sorted.

F6.12

Practical case 6.1 Sort menu links

To sort the links we use the sorting icon dragging dragging and dropping the link that we want to move. Once all of the links have been placed in the desired order, it will be necessary to **Save the configuration**.

The screenshot shows the 'My menu' configuration page. At the top, there is a success message: 'Your configuration has been saved.' Below this, there is a 'Add link' button and a table titled 'MENU LINK'. The table has three columns: 'MENU LINK', 'ENABLED', and 'OPERATIONS'. It contains three rows with the following data:

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
About me	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
Drupal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete

At the bottom of the page is a 'Save configuration' button.

The menu created is not yet shown in any region of our site because it has not been enabled. In the next section we will see how the menu is enabled and the region where we want this to be displayed.

6.3

Enabling of the menu

By default, Drupal establishes two pre-defined regions where both menus can be hosted. These two regions are called **main links** and **secondary menus**.

From: **F6.13**

[Administration](#) \Rightarrow [Structure](#) \Rightarrow [Menus \[Settings\]](#)

We can choose which menus we want to appear in these two regions.

F6.13

Main links and secondary links

We can choose two default regions to promote the main links and the secondary ones.

The screenshot shows the 'Source for the Main links' configuration page. At the top, there is a note: 'The menu module allows on-the-fly creation of menu links in the content authoring forms. To configure these settings for a particular content type, visit the [Content types](#) page, click the [edit](#) link for the content type, and go to the [Menu settings](#) section.' Below this, there is a dropdown menu labeled 'Source for the Main links' with 'Main menu' selected. A note below the dropdown says: 'Select what should be displayed as the Main links (typically at the top of the page).'

 The screenshot also shows the 'Source for the Secondary links' configuration page. It has a similar structure with a dropdown menu labeled 'Source for the Secondary links' with 'User menu' selected. A note below the dropdown says: 'Select the source for the Secondary links. An advanced option allows you to use the same source for both Main links (currently *Main menu*) and Secondary links: if your source menu has two levels of hierarchy, the top level menu links will appear in the Main links, and the children of the active link will appear in the Secondary links.'

 At the bottom of both pages is a 'Save configuration' button.

The settings available for the basic organisation of the menus are:

- **Source for the main links.** This makes it possible to select a menu that will be shown in the space reserved for the **main links** (the position and graphic appearance depends on the theme selected, as we will study in **Unit 8**). The menu that has already been created that is known as **Main menu** will be shown.

Note that the menu loaded in this region will only be shown if these two conditions are met:

- o The **theme selected has** a space reserved for automatically displaying the **Main links**. This includes almost all themes.
- o The menu that we have indicated as **Source for the main links** has **at least one item created** (by default this menu contains the *Home* item).

Note

Do not use the main and/or secondary links

If we do not want the menus to use these regions, we can indicate this here, choosing **without main links** and/or **without secondary links**.

In the case of the previous conditions being met the menu of **Main links will be displayed directly**, with no need to enable this in the Block management, as we will see below.

- **Source for the secondary links.** This makes it possible to select a menu that will be displayed in the space reserved for the **secondary links** (the position and graphic appearance depends on the theme selected, as we will study in **Unit 8**). By default, the menu that has already created known as **User menu** will be displayed.

Note that the menu loaded in this region will only be shown if these two conditions are met:

- o The **theme selected has** a space reserved for automatically displaying the **Secondary links**. This is not a feature in most themes.
- o The menu that we have indicated as the **Source for the secondary links** has at least one item created (by default this menu contains the items *My account* and *Logout*).

In the case of the previous conditions being met the menu of **Main links will be displayed directly**, with no need to enable this in the Block management, as we will see below.

The regions in which the menus may appear depends on the theme. In the Drupal 7 default theme **Bartik**, these two menus are presented as shown in Figure

F6.14

The screenshot shows the homepage of a Drupal 7 site using the Bartik theme. At the top left is the Forcontu logo. To its right is the page title "Learn Drupal with Forcontu". On the far right of the header are "My account" and "Log out" links. Below the header, a blue navigation bar contains a "Home" link, which is highlighted with a red box. The main content area features a "Headline 1" section with a small image of two people and the URL "www.forcontu.com". A "Navigation" menu is visible on the left side of the content area, with a "Add content" link below it. A footer at the bottom contains a paragraph of placeholder text.

F6.14

Main and secondary links

Presentation of the menus of main and secondary Links in the Bartik theme.

In addition to the pre-defined regions for menus (main and secondary links), we can enable and display a menu in any region of the site. Below we detail the **steps necessary to enable and display a menu** in other regions of the site.

Step 1. Blocks administration area

Although the **blocks** will be studied in **Unit 7**, we need to understand them here to enable the menus that we created. When a menu is created, a **block** with the same title is automatically created.

To **manage the menu**, as we have seen, we will have to go to the Menus setting in the Administration menu. However, in order to **enable it**, and to post it to the right location, we will have to go to the Blocks setting:

URL Blocks

/admin/structure/block

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Blocks

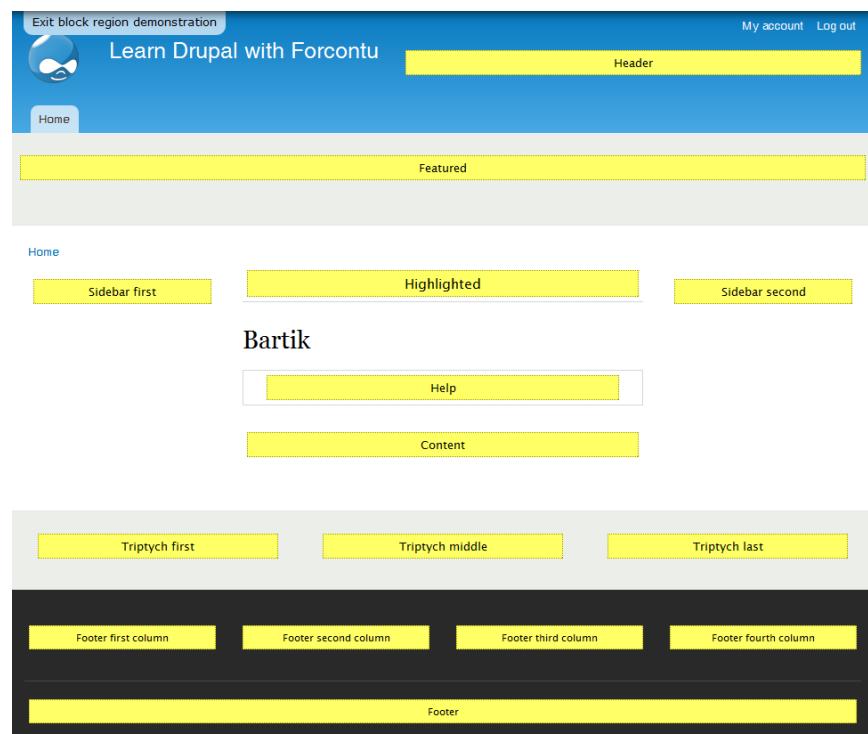
Themes are comprised of **regions** where blocks can be arranged in different positions and combinations. **Typical regions** are: **Left sidebar**, **Right sidebar**, **Header** and **Content**. These regions may vary depending on the theme selected. Figure **F6.15** shows the regions available in the Bartik theme, a theme that allows a wide variety of layouts. To get to this view of the theme regions, we have to click on the "**Demonstrate block regions**" link. We will study this in greater depth in **Unit 8**.

F6.15

Regions of the Bartik theme

By clicking on **Demonstrate blocks regions** the theme of the site will be shown with a graphic representation of the regions available.

The Bartik theme is a theme with many regions, which provides flexibility when it comes to locating contents on the site.



A particular region has to be assigned to display a block on the Website. In the same way as when we want to re-order the links of a menu, on this page we will also be able to promote blocks to regions simply by dragging and dropping them (if the sorting icons are not shown, click on **Hide row weights**).

By default, the new menus created will be displayed as disabled blocks.

F6.16

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Sidebar first		
+ Search form	Sidebar first	configure
+ Navigation	Sidebar first	configure
+ User login	Sidebar first	configure
Sidebar second		
No blocks in this region		
Triptych first		
No blocks in this region		
Triptych middle		
No blocks in this region		
Triptych last		
No blocks in this region		
Footer first column		
No blocks in this region		
Footer second column		
No blocks in this region		
Footer third column		
No blocks in this region		
Footer fourth column		
No blocks in this region		
Footer		
+ Powered by Drupal	Footer	configure
+ Masquerade	Footer	configure
Disabled		
+ First menu	- None -	configure
+ Main menu	- None -	configure
+ Management	- None -	configure
+ My menu	- None -	configure

F6.16

Regions and blocks

The blocks must be assigned to one particular region to be shown on the site.

The menus available are shown as blocks and they will appear as disabled by default.

The **Navigation** menu assigned to the "Firstsidebar" region is shown in this image. Since we have just created it, the menu called **My menu** is disabled.

Step 2. Selection of the region

Once the menu block has been identified in the Blocks administration area, we will select the region where we want to promote it to. If there are other blocks in the same region, we can sort these by using the sorting icon, dragging and dropping, in the same way as we did with the menu items.

F6.17

To make the changes effective it is important to click on **Save blocks**.

F6.17**Enable the menu block**

Once the region to which we want to promote the menu has been assigned, we can sort the different blocks by using the  icon (drag and drop).

 * The changes to these blocks will not be saved until the **Save blocks** button is clicked.

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Header		
No blocks in this region		
Help	Help	configure
Highlighted		
No blocks in this region		
Featured	No blocks in this region	
Content		
>Main page content	Content	configure
Sidebar first		
Search form	Sidebar first	configure
Navigation	Sidebar first	configure
User login	Sidebar first	configure
My menu*	Sidebar first	configure

Once the changes have been saved, the menu will be displayed in the selected region, with the styles defined in the installed theme. **F6.18**

F6.18**Presentation of the menu**

Once the changes made in the blocks administration area have been saved, the menu will be displayed in the selected region.



The screenshot shows a Drupal website with a blue header bar. In the top right corner, there are links for "My account" and "Log out". Below the header, there is a search bar and a "Home" link. On the left side, there is a sidebar with a "Navigation" section containing a "Add content" link. The main content area features a "Headline 1" section with a small image of two people and a link to "www.forcontu.com". Below this is a paragraph of text. At the bottom right of the main content area, there are "Read more" and "2 comments" links. A red box highlights the "My menu" block in the sidebar, which contains three items: "Home", "About me", and "Drupal".

In the next unit (**Unit 7**) we will study **blocks configuration settings**, which are also applicable to the **menu blocks** seen in this unit.

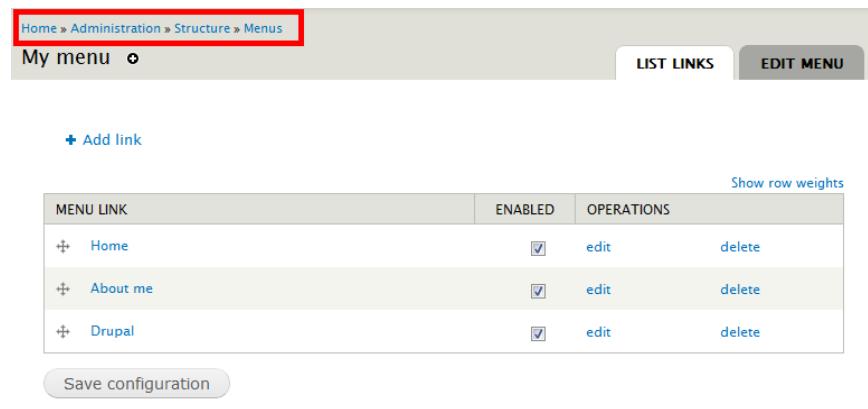
About breadcrumbs

6.4

Breadcrumbs play a very significant role in the navigation of a Website. As shown in **Figure F6.19** breadcrumbs denote the path or the hierarchical organisation that leads us from the home page to the content that is loaded.

Drupal is exclusively based on the items of the **Management menu** so as to calculate and display the breadcrumbs. This means that if we load a node that is not linked from the Administrative menu, but is linked in another menu, then only the link to the **Home** page will be shown in the breadcrumbs.

In **Unit 25** (intermediate level) we will study some additional modules that improve the behavior of the breadcrumbs allowing, for example, the breadcrumbs related to other site menus that are different from the management menu to be shown.



The screenshot shows the 'Menus' configuration page in Drupal. At the top, the breadcrumb path 'Home > Administration > Structure > Menus' is highlighted with a red box. Below this, the title 'My menu' is displayed with a dropdown arrow. To the right are 'LIST LINKS' and 'EDIT MENU' buttons. A 'Show row weights' link is located above a table. The table has three columns: 'MENU LINK', 'ENABLED', and 'OPERATIONS'. It contains three rows:

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
+ Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
+ About me	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete
+ Drupal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit delete

A 'Save configuration' button is at the bottom left.

F6.19

Breadcrumbs

Breadcrumbs tell us what point of the structure of a menu we are at.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

7 Blocks management

Blocks are pieces of code or content with different functionalities that are typically placed in the side columns of the site, although in reality they can be placed in any of the regions of the theme available on the site.

Many modules create specific blocks, for example, so as to demonstrate the progress of the latest contents published or to show the users registered on the site. We have already studied one good example of this in [Unit 6](#); one **block** is automatically generated for every **menu** created on the site.

It is also possible to directly create blocks, whether with HTML and CSS contents or with PHP code, as we will see in the intermediate and advanced levels of the course.

In this unit we will learn to enable and configure the blocks, as well as create new HTML content blocks.

Comparative D7/D6

Blocks configuration

The blocks configuration interface has improved in Drupal 7, grouping the settings of the different tabs together.

Contextual Links Module

One new development in Drupal 7 is the inclusion of the **Contextual Links** module in the core. This module, which is enabled by default, generates an icon in the upper right-hand corner of each block that functions in the manner of direct access to the block configuration options. On clicking on the icon a menu is displayed with one or several options, which may vary depending on the type of block.

Unit contents

7.1 What blocks are.....	110
7.2 Enabling and configuration of blocks	111
7.3 Creation of blocks	117



7.1

What blocks are

Blocks are pieces of code or content with different functionalities that are typically placed in the side columns of the site, although in reality they can be placed in any of the defined regions of the theme.

But, where do blocks come from? In principle, blocks will appear on **the blocks administration page** depending on the modules that have been installed. In the previous unit we have already seen that when a new menu is created, a block is also automatically created, which will be available to be placed in any region of the theme.

But we can also easily create our blocks with PHP code or HTML content. At this level of the course we will see how to create a simple block in HTML, leaving the more advanced aspects of the creation of blocks for the Intermediate or Advanced Levels.

Some **blocks** that we may encounter, depending on the modules installed, are:

- **User login.** This shows the site access form, requesting the user name and password. It also includes the links to *Create new account* and *Request a new password*.
- **Navigation.** This contains the Navigation menu.
- **Search form.** This shows a text field for carrying out fast searches on the site.
- **Site prepared with Drupal.** This shows a link to Drupal, typically on the left sidebar of the site, and it indicates that the site is prepared with this software.
- **Language switcher.** This displays a dropdown menu with the languages available on the site. This block will only be used on **multilingual sites**, as we will study in the **Intermediate Level**.
- **Who is connected.** This shows a list with the users who have recently accessed the site.
- **Syndicate.** This shows a link to the syndication of RSS contents.
- **New users.** This shows a list with the latest registered users on the site.

Figure F7.1 shows the **User login** block when we browse through the site as an anonymous user (unregistered).

F7.1

Login block

The login block for anonymous users is shown.

The screenshot shows a Drupal website's homepage. At the top, there is a blue header bar with the word "Home". Below the header, there is a "User login" block. This block has a red border around it. Inside the block, there are two input fields: one for "Username" and one for "Password", both with red asterisks indicating they are required. Below these fields are two links: "Create new account" and "Request new password". At the bottom of the block is a blue "Log in" button. To the right of the login block, there is a news item. The headline is "Headline 1". Below the headline, it says "Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20". Underneath that is a small thumbnail image of two people, a man and a woman, sitting at a desk. Below the thumbnail is the URL "www.forcontu.com". The main content area of the page contains some placeholder text: "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros."

Enabling and configuration of blocks

7.2

The **blocks administration area** is available at:

Administration⇒Structure⇒Blocks

The configuration of the blocks in the default theme will be displayed by default. Since the distribution of blocks depends on each one of the themes installed on the site, the upper tabs with the names of the active themes will enable us to edit the organisation of each theme.

F7.2

URL Blocks

/admin/structure/block

This screenshot shows the 'Blocks' administration page. At the top, there are three tabs: 'BARTIK' (which is highlighted with a red box), 'GARLAND', and 'SEVEN'. Below the tabs, there is a brief description of the page's purpose: "This page provides a drag-and-drop interface for assigning a block to a region, and for controlling the order of blocks within regions. Since not all themes implement the same regions, or display regions in the same way, blocks are positioned on a per-theme basis. Remember that your changes will not be saved until you click the *Save blocks* button at the bottom of the page. Click the *configure* link next to each block to configure its specific title and visibility settings." There is also a link to "Demonstrate block regions (Bartik)". A "Show row weights" link is located in the top right corner of the main table. The table itself has columns for 'BLOCK', 'REGION', and 'OPERATIONS'. It lists three regions: 'Header', 'Help', and 'Highlighted'. The 'Header' region contains the 'System help' block. The 'Help' region contains a 'Help' block with a dropdown menu set to 'Help'. The 'Highlighted' region contains no blocks. A "configure" link is provided for the 'Help' block.

F7.2

Blocks administration

Every active theme on the site facilitates separate distribution of blocks. The upper tabs enable us to access the blocks configuration of each theme.

By clicking on **Demonstrate blocks regions**, we will be able to have a more graphic representation of the regions that make up the theme that is selected. These and the regions available in the **Garland** and **Bartik** are shown in Figures F7.3 and F7.4 respectively. To go back to the list of blocks, click on **Exit block region demonstration**.

This screenshot shows the 'Learn Drupal with Forcontu' website using the 'Garland' theme. The page is divided into several regions: 'Header', 'Left sidebar', 'Content', 'Right sidebar', and 'Footer'. The 'Content' region is further subdivided into 'Highlighted', 'Help', and 'Content' blocks. Dashed boxes indicate the boundaries of these regions. The 'Header' region contains links for 'Home', 'My account', and 'Log out'. The 'Left sidebar' and 'Right sidebar' regions are currently empty. The 'Footer' region is also empty.

F7.3

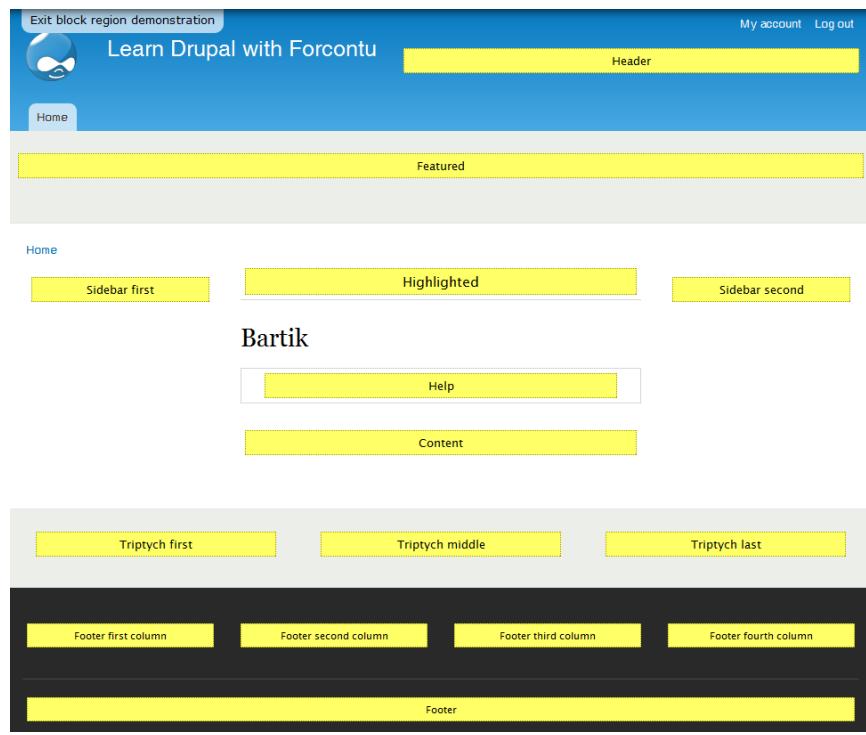
Regions in Garland

The Garland theme has a very basic regions configuration: left sidebar, right sidebar, header, highlighted, help, content and footer.

F7.4

Regions in Bartik

The Bartik theme is the Drupal 7 default theme and it has numerous regions.



The themes that comprise **regions**, which are spaces where blocks can be located. **Typical regions** are: **Left sidebar**, **Right sidebar**, **Header**, **Footer** and **Content**. These regions may vary depending on the theme selected.

A particular region has to be assigned to display a block on the site. In the administration area, the blocks appear grouped together according to the region where they are located. When they are not assigned to any region, they appear grouped together under the "Disabled" category. **F7.5**

We will see the steps necessary to **configure a block** below:

Step 1. Selection of the region

Once the block that we want to enable has been located in the blocks administration area, we will select the region where we want to place it. If there are other blocks in the same region, we must sort these according to how we want them to be displayed on the site. **F7.6**

The blocks can be sorted by clicking (without releasing) on the sorting icon and dropping the block in the final position where we want to place it. If we do not see the sorting icon, we have to click on **Hide row weights**.

[Show row weights](#)

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Left sidebar		
⊕ User login	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ Search form	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ Navigation	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ My menu	Left sidebar ▾	configure
Right sidebar		
<i>No blocks in this region</i>		
Content		
⊕ Main page content	Content ▾	configure
Header		
<i>No blocks in this region</i>		
Footer		
⊕ Powered by Drupal	Footer ▾	configure
⊕ Masquerade	Footer ▾	configure
Highlighted		
<i>No blocks in this region</i>		
Help		
⊕ System help	Help ▾	configure
Disabled		
⊕ First menu	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Main menu	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Management	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Recent comments	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Recent content	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Shortcuts	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Syndicate	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ User menu	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Who's new	- None - ▾	configure
⊕ Who's online	- None - ▾	configure

[Save blocks](#)

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Left sidebar		
⊕ User login	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ Search form	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ Navigation	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ My menu	Left sidebar ▾	configure
⊕ Who's online*	Left sidebar ▾	configure

F7.5**Blocks administration**

In the administration area, the active blocks appear as grouped together under the region that they are assigned to.

Unassigned blocks are grouped together under the "Disabled" category.

F7.6**Enable and sort blocks**

Once the region in which we want to place the menu has been assigned, we can sort the different blocks using the (drag and drop).

To make the changes effective it is important to click on **Save blocks**. Once the changes have been saved, they will be displayed in the selected region. **F7.7**

F7.7

Enabled block

By going to the front page we can see the block in the region that we have selected.

The screenshot shows a Drupal 7 website's front page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Home, About me, and Drupal. Below the navigation, there is a search bar and a menu titled 'My menu' with items for Home, About me, and Drupal. On the right side, there is a news article titled 'Headline 1' with a thumbnail image of two people at a desk. Below the article, there is a sidebar block titled 'Who's online' which displays 'There is currently 1 user online.' and a list containing '• admin'. This sidebar block is highlighted with a red rectangular box. At the bottom of the page, there is another news article titled 'Second article'.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Step 2. Configure the block

Every block has a “configure” link for accessing the specific configuration settings. The settings available are:

- **Block title.** **F7.8** Indicates the title that will be displayed in the block. It is possible to:
 - o Indicate a new title for the block.
 - o Leave it blank, and so the default block name will be displayed as the title.
 - o Write <none> to indicate that we do not want the block title to be displayed.
- **Region settings.** **F7.8** This makes it possible to specify in which region the block will be displayed for each one of the themes enabled on the site.

F7.8

Block configuration

Title field and region settings.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the 'Powered by Drupal' block. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Structure > Blocks. Below the breadcrumb, the block's title is listed as 'Powered by Drupal block'. The configuration page has a header 'Block title' with a text input field that is empty. Below this, there is a note: 'Override the default title for the block. Use <none> to display no title, or leave blank to use the default block title.' Under the heading 'REGION SETTINGS', there is a sub-section 'Specify in which themes and regions this block is displayed.' A dropdown menu labeled 'Bartik (default theme)' shows 'Footer' selected. Another dropdown menu labeled 'Seven (administration theme)' shows '- None -' selected. A third dropdown menu labeled 'Garland' also shows 'Footer' selected.

- **Visibility settings.** This establishes which pages the block will be visible on in the site, for which users and under which circumstances. It is divided into several sub-sections:

- o **Pages.** **F7.9** This makes it possible to show a block on specific pages. One of these settings has to be chosen:

- Show in all pages except those of this list.
- Only show the pages of this list.
- Show if the next PHP code returns the TRUE value (PHP mode, only for experts). This option will be displayed if we have the **PHP Filter** module enabled and it will be studied in depth on the **Intermediate** and **Advanced levels** of the course.

It is necessary to indicate the names of the pages in the **Pages** text table (one page per line) for the first two settings. In addition, the * token can be used to indicate any character. For example, we could use the following page names:

- **node/1.** This makes reference to the **node/1** page.
- **<front>.** This makes reference to the home page or the front page of the site.
- **blog*.** This makes reference to all of the pages that start with blog, and it may then contain other characters.
- **about-us.** This makes reference to the page with the **about-us** URL alias.

If we do not wish to indicate one page in particular, we will select the first option and we will leave the **Pages** field empty. In this way the block will be displayed on all of the pages.

Visibility settings

Pages Not restricted	Show block on specific pages
Content types Not restricted	<input checked="" type="radio"/> All pages except those listed <input type="radio"/> Only the listed pages <input type="radio"/> Pages on which this PHP code returns TRUE (experts only)
Roles Not restricted	
Users Not customizable	
<p>Specify pages by using their paths. Enter one path per line. The '*' character is a wildcard. Example paths are <i>blog</i> for the blog page and <i>blog/*</i> for every personal blog. <i><front></i> is the front page. If the PHP option is chosen, enter PHP code between <i><?php ?></i>. Note that executing incorrect PHP code can break your Drupal site.</p>	

F7.9

Visibility by page

We can show the block for a particular set of pages or indicate exceptions.

Expert users will be able to use a PHP code to create advanced conditions for viewing the block.

- o **Content types.** **F7.10** This makes it possible to display the block when the user is viewing the content types that have been marked. The site content types appear here.

F7.10**Visibility by content type**

On choosing particular content types, the block will only be shown when nodes of that type are displayed.

Visibility settings

Pages Not restricted
Content types Not restricted
Roles Not restricted
Users Not customizable

Show block for specific content types

- Article
- Basic page
- News

Show this block only on pages that display content of the given type(s). If you select no types, there will be no type-specific limitation.

- **Roles.** **F7.11** This makes it possible to show the block in particular roles. The treatment of roles and users will be extensively studied in **Unit 9**. The roles available on the site are displayed. If no role is selected, the block will be visible to all of the users.

F7.11**Visibility by roles**

The block only shows the selected roles.

Visibility settings

Pages Not restricted
Content types Not restricted
Roles Not restricted
Users Not customizable

Show block for specific roles

- anonymous user
- authenticated user
- administrator

Show this block only for the selected role(s). If you select no roles, the block will be visible to all users.

- **Users.** **F7.12** It is necessary to choose between one of these options:

- **Non-customizable.** Users cannot control the visibility of this block.
- **Customizable, visible by default.** Shows this block by default, but it allows each user to hide it.
- **Customizable, hidden by default.** Hide this block by default, but allows each user to show it.

F7.12**Customizable by user**

This allows the users to choose whether they wish to see the block or not.

Visibility settings

Pages Not restricted
Content types Not restricted
Roles Not restricted
Users Not customizable

Customizable per user

- Not customizable
- Customizable, visible by default
- Customizable, hidden by default

Allow individual users to customize the visibility of this block in their account settings.

Once these changes have been saved (**Save the block** button) we will have finished configuring the block.

Creation of blocks

7.3

As we have remarked, in addition to the blocks that are automatically generated when the different modules are installed, it is also possible to create customizable blocks of PHP code or HTML content.

We will only study the blocks with HTML content at this level, even though creating dynamic blocks is much more powerful, but it is necessary to have some knowledge of PHP for this.

To create a block, from the blocks administration area, we will click on **Add block**.

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Blocks [Add block]**

URL Add block

/admin/structure/block/add

The data requested for the new block, in addition to the comments in the configuration section, are as follows: **F7.13**

- **Block description.** This is the name that will be used in the blocks administration lists. It is best that this is descriptive enough to be able to identify it easily.
- **Block title.** This is the title that will be displayed to the users.
- **Block body.** This is the HTML code that defines the block content.
- **Text format.** By default, the post formats available are Filtered HTML and Full HTML. In **Unit 12** we will study how to modify these post formats. On this point it is enough to say that in order to be able to create blocks with any type of HTML label, it is necessary to select the Full HTML format. The **PHP code** post format, which makes it possible to introduce a PHP code, will become available by enabling the **PHP filter** module.

If before saving the configuration we have not selected a region in **Region settings**, the block will appear as *disabled*. To enable it we will have to select the region where we want it to be displayed, as was explained in the previous section.

F7.13

Create a block

Fields that we have to fill in when we create a new block.

By choosing the Full HTML text Format we will be able to create blocks with any HTML label in its content.

On creating the block we can select the region in which it will be shown directly, and so the block will be created and enabled on the site at the same time.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Blocks](#)

Blocks

BARTIK GARLAND SEVEN

Use this page to create a new custom block.

Block title
Expert in Drupal 7

The title of the block as shown to the user.

Block description *
Expert in Drupal 7

A brief description of your block. Used on the [Blocks administration page](#).

Block body *

```
<p>Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels:</p>
<ul>
<li>Beginner.</li>
<li>Intermediate.</li>
<li>Advanced. </li>
</ul>
```

Text format Full HTML More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

The content of the block as shown to the user.

REGION SETTINGS

Specify in which themes and regions this block is displayed.

Bartik (default theme)
Sidebar second

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L.. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F7.14

New HTML block

A HTML block created by us and located in the right-hand column of the site (**Second sidebar** region of the **Bartik** theme).

Home

Navigation
Add content

My menu

- Home
- About me
- Drupal

Headline 1
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20

www.forcontu.com

Expert in Drupal 7

Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels:

- Beginner.
- Intermediate.
- Advanced.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id

Direct access to the blocks configuration

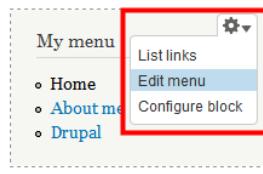
Drupal facilitates a faster way of accessing the configuration of the blocks. Users with block configuration permits will see the icon (⚙️) by placing the cursor over the block. By clicking on this icon, a small menu is displayed with the configuration setting options available for the block. **F7.15** The **Configure block** setting is no more than a direct link to the block configuration settings, seen in **section 7.2**.

Different configuration settings will be displayed depending on the block type. For example, if the block is a menu, direct accesses to **List links** and **Edit menu** will also be displayed, along with the common link to all of the blocks, **Configure block**.

Note

Contextual Links Module

The **Contextual Links** module, which is included in the Drupal installation, enabled by default, has to be enabled in order for the blocks configuration icon to be available. If this is not the case, it can be enabled from the **Modules administration** page.



My menu

- Home
- About me
- Drupal

List links
Edit menu
Configure block

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id

F7.15

Direct access to the block configuration

When the administrator user moves the cursor over a block, he will see an icon for accessing his configuration quickly. Since this block contains a menu, it also provides options for accessing the menu configuration.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

8 Themes

In Drupal, a theme is a set of files that makes it possible to change the visual appearance of the site. We can install a unique theme for the entire site or several themes, if we want the users to be able to select one theme from among those available on the site.

The choice of the theme will depend on the structure that we want for the site. That is why it is important to consider site layout and function (menus, blocks, columns, fixed width or variable, etc.). The more the theme fits the final structure that is desired, the fewer modifications will have to be made.

At present there are almost 600 themes free-of-charge for Drupal 7, published on Drupal.org. We can also find plenty of themes to purchase from website design companies.

The objective of this unit is to find out what the Drupal themes are, where you can find and download them and how to install, enable and configure them to change the design of your website. By the end of this unit, you will have a theme on your website that meets the needs of the website that you are designing.

Comparative D7/D6

Automatic installation of themes

Drupal 7 makes it possible to install themes in a more straightforward way than in the previous versions. We have a tool that enables us to choose between indicating the URL address where the compressed file of the theme is located, with no need to download it beforehand, and select and upload the file of the theme, if we already have this downloaded on our equipment.

In order for this setting to be available we have to have the **Update Manager** module enabled, by default.

Unit contents

8.1 What themes are	122
8.2 Repositories of themes	123
8.3 Manual installation of themes	128
8.4 Automatic installation of themes	130
8.5 Configuring a theme	132
8.6 Modifying a theme with CSS	139



8.1

What themes are

A **theme** is a set of files that provides the website with a particular visual appearance. By changing one theme for another it is possible to alter the complete appearance of the website, without changing the functionalities implemented and the contents created by doing this.

With the themes, Drupal **separates the contents of the presentation** or graphic design they are displayed with. Themes are designed with **cascade style sheets or CSS**, which makes it relatively straightforward to modify them and adapt them to specific needs.

The aim of the Beginner Level of the course is for the student to learn to modify themes, although a short introduction to editing the CSS files contained in the theme will be provided. In the Intermediate Level we will go into further depth about the modification of themes and we will set guidelines for ensuring the accessibility of the site.

Figure F8.1 shows an example of a website with Drupal that the **Corolla** theme has been applied to. This is available in the repository of themes.

F8.1

Site with Corolla theme

There are currently nearly 200 free-of-charge themes available for Drupal 7. The themes shared by the community can be downloaded free from drupal.org.

SEARCH

BOOK NAVIGATION

WHO'S NEW

- Navigator
- Midori
- Opera
- Konqueror
- Mosaic

WHO'S ONLINE

There are currently 0 users online.

USER LOGIN

Username:
Password:

SYNDICATE

RECENT COMMENTS

- Words instructions discrete 10 months 3 weeks ago
- Get tagging 10 months 3 weeks ago
- Help surface menu 10 months 3 weeks ago
- Purposes o, nearly all in 10 months 3 weeks ago
- Sent 'tune' blocks 10 months 3 weeks ago

RECENT BLOG POSTS

- Gain webhosting screen other
- Never materials wide not users html help knowledge now beautiful
- Terms entire it integrate books
- Terms entire it integrate books in
- Talk knew here viewing, handled return

Repositories of themes

8.2

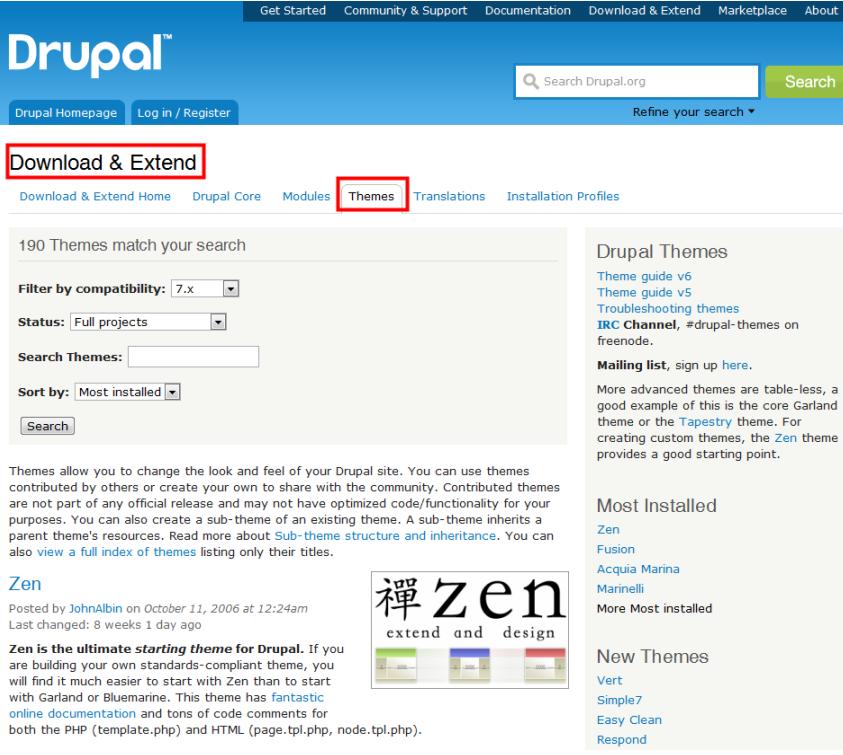
The official Drupal repository

The official repository of free-of-charge themes for Drupal is at <http://drupal.org>, in the section: **F8.2**

drupal.org ⇒ **Download & Extend** ⇒ **Themes**

URL Repository of themes
<http://drupal.org/project/themes>

This repository stores themes from different versions of Drupal (5.x, 6.x, 7.x and even 8.x, which is being developed). There are nearly 200 themes available for version 7, a quantity that will increase over time (as a reference, there are more than 600 themes for Drupal). All of the information shown in the repository of themes is in English.



The screenshot shows the Drupal.org Themes page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like 'Get Started', 'Community & Support', 'Documentation', 'Download & Extend', and 'Marketplace'. Below the navigation is a search bar with a placeholder 'Search Drupal.org' and a 'Search' button. A red box highlights the 'Download & Extend' link in the main navigation. Another red box highlights the 'Themes' tab in the secondary navigation below it. The main content area displays a search result for '190 Themes match your search'. It includes several filter options: 'Filter by compatibility: 7.x', 'Status: Full projects', 'Search Themes: [empty input]', and 'Sort by: Most installed'. A 'Search' button is also present. To the right, there's a sidebar titled 'Drupal Themes' with links to 'Theme guide v6', 'Theme guide v5', 'Troubleshooting themes', 'IRC Channel', '#drupal-themes on freenode', and a 'Mailing list' sign-up link. Below this is a section titled 'Zen' featuring the Zen theme logo and a brief description. Further down the sidebar are sections for 'Most Installed' (listing Zen, Fusion, Acquia Marina, Marinelli, and More Most installed) and 'New Themes' (listing Vert, Simple7, Easy Clean, and Respond).

Navigation through the repository of themes is facilitated with the set of **search filters** located in the upper part of the page. **F8.3** These themes are:

- **Filter by compatibility**, which selects the Drupal version of the theme.
- **Status**, which makes it possible to filter between themes that have already been published (Full projects) or projects under development (Only Sandbox projects). Generally, we will use the "Full projects" options.
- **Search Themes**, which makes it possible to select the themes that contain one particular string.
- **Sort by**, which makes it possible to sort the results according to:
 - o Relevancy
 - o Title
 - o Type

- Author
- Date
- Last release
- Last build
- Most installed

F8.3

Search filters in the repository of themes

The identification of themes is facilitated in drupal.org, having regard to different search and sorting filters: version, project status and text string. It furthermore makes it possible to sort the results obtained.

The screenshot shows a search interface for themes on drupal.org. At the top, it says "190 Themes match your search". Below that are several filter options: "Filter by compatibility: 7.x", "Status: Full projects", "Search Themes: (empty input field)", and "Sort by: Most installed". A "Search" button is at the bottom of the filter section. The background shows a list of theme results.

The following information is shown in English for each theme:

F8.4

- **Name of the theme.**
- **Who published it.** This shows a Drupal community user who published the theme in the repository, the time at which he did this and the time that has passed from when the post was last edited.
- **Capture or preview.** By clicking on the image of the simple of the theme, you can see an enlarged version of this.
- **Project Information.** This can contain very varied information, such as the main characteristics, compatibility with browsers, number of columns of the theme, description, etc.
- **Requirements.** The theme requires any other Drupal tool to be installed; this will be stated in this section.
- **Installation.** If it is necessary to follow instructions for a particular installation, these will be displayed in this section.
- **Downloads.** This shows the latest versions of the theme that are available for the different versions of Drupal. The versions that have already been completed and are ready to be used appear within the "Recommended releases" section. The versions that are still being developed or are at the test phase appear in "Development releases".

This list of themes also shows the publication date, the file size and the link for downloading it, with the possibility of choosing between two compressed file formats: *tar.gz* and *zip*.

- **Link to demonstration site.** Some themes have a link to a demonstration site. You will find this link in the "**Resources**" section, at the link: "**Try out a demonstration**".

It is not necessary to register yourself on the site to download a theme. It is enough to click on the link corresponding to the version that we want to download (in the **downloads** column).

Sky

[View](#) [Version control](#)

Posted by [Jeff Burnz](#) on September 29, 2007 at 6:22am

About the Drupal 7 version

Sky is a minimal, center aligned, CSS-based (no tables), multi-column layout theme, with Color module support (7.x only), that uses HTML5, CSS3 and the [960 Grid System](#).

Live preview and customization with the Color module is available with the Color Theme module, which is highly recommended for configuring color options in this theme: <http://drupal.org/project/colortheme>

#D7CX: I pledge that Sky will have a full Drupal 7 release on the day that Drupal 7 is released.

#D7AX: I pledge to make this theme as accessible as it can be. If you find any flaws, please submit an [issue](#). Help me fix them if you can.

Skinr Integration

When the [Skinr module](#) is released, lots of options will be added to this theme, including full grid support, block/content styles, font options, and drop down menus.

Upgrading from the 6.x version?

The Drupal 7 version is a complete rewrite. I highly recommend backing up your entire theme, and trying Sky separately to see if you want to use it **before** overwriting the previous version.

Drupal 6

The Drupal 6 version looks completely different than the screenshot pictured above. No further development will happen in the 6.x branch, aside from critical bug/maintenance fixes. To view a demo of the Drupal 6 version, [click here](#).

Project Information

Maintenance status: [Actively maintained](#)
 Development status: [Under active development](#)
 Reported installs: **5551** sites currently report using this theme. [View usage statistics](#).
 Last modified: March 16, 2011

Downloads

Recommended releases				
Version	Downloads	Date	Links	
7.x-1.6	tar.gz (74.92 KB) zip (102.64 KB)	2011-Feb-08	Notes	
6.x-3.11	tar.gz (330.36 KB) zip (348.33 KB)	2011-Feb-07	Notes	
Development releases				
Version	Downloads	Date	Links	
7.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (74.7 KB) zip (101.45 KB)	2011-Feb-25	Notes	

[View all releases](#) 

Purchased themes

In addition to the repositories of free-of-charge themes, it is possible to find sites that offer paid-for themes. These themes are not usually excessively costly and this may be a good option for endowing our site with an attractive form of design and one that is finished off well.

In general, these repositories have two prices for each theme. The lower Price usually corresponds to the licence of use of the theme on one single site. The higher, or "buyout" price involves the definitive purchase of and so this will cease to be on sale and we will have all of the rights over it, so we can use it on various sites. The fact that we definitively buy a theme does not mean that it has not been sold before, and therefore there could be other portals with the same design.

We start with the **Top Notch Themes** repository, available at: [F8.5](#)

<http://fusiondrupalthemes.com>

Top Notch Themes openly shares some themes free of charge such as **Acquia Marina** (http://drupal.org/project/acquia_marina) and **Acquia Slate** (http://drupal.org/project/acquia_slate), in addition to the **Fusion** theme, a theme that is used as the base for creating themes with advanced options (<http://drupal.org/project/fusion>).

F8.4

Theme page

The description of the theme contains varied information (in English) about the characteristics of the theme; the browsers supported, the number of columns, etc.

The version of the theme that we need to download is the latest one recommended for version 7.x ("Recommended releases" section).

Maintainers for Sky

Jacine - 168 commits
 last: 29 weeks ago, first: 3 years ago
[View all committers](#)
[View commits](#)

Issues for Sky

To avoid duplicates, please search before submitting a new issue.

[Search](#)

Advanced search

[All issues](#)
40 open, 438 total
[Bug reports](#)
14 open, 165 total
[Subscribe via e-mail](#)
 Oldest open issue: 15 Jun 09

Resources

[Read documentation](#)
[Read complete log of changes](#)
[View project translations](#)

Development

[View pending patches](#)
[Repository viewer](#)
[View commits](#)
[Report a security issue](#)
[View change records](#)

Related projects

[Abstract](#)
[Ladybug](#)
[Newswire](#)
[Color Theme](#)
[Orange](#)

F8.5

Top Notch Themes Repository

In addition to the paid-for themes, Top Notch Themes shares some free themes such as Acquia Marina and Acquia Slate.

The screenshot shows the homepage of the Top Notch Themes repository. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for 'log in | register', 'View cart', and 'Checkout'. Below the navigation is a search bar and a menu with options like 'shop themes', 'learn more', 'support', 'blog', and 'about'. A red stamp on the left side reads 'TOP NOTCH THEMES'. On the right, there are dropdown menus for 'Style' (bright, classic, clean, corporate, dark, fun, futuristic, grunge, light) and 'Color' (black, blue, brown, green, grey, orange, purple, red, white), with an 'APPLY' button. The main content area displays six theme preview cards:

- Tech Stop** \$269
- Bubble** \$229
- Lockdown** \$219
- Luxe** \$239
- Magazeen** \$0
- Early Edition** \$199

Each card shows a small screenshot of the theme's layout and features.

Another example of a paid-for repository is **Template Monster**, **F8.6** where you can find over 500 themes for Drupal. It is available at the following address:

<http://www.templatesmonster.com>

To Access the Drupal themes:

<http://www.templatesmonster.com/drupal-themes.php>

In the **Template Monster** search engine we can filter the results according to the price range of the themes, their authors, or even by category.

The screenshot shows the TemplateMonster.com website. At the top, there's a search bar with placeholder text "Enter Keyword or Product Number" and a "Shopping Cart" icon with a red notification bubble showing the number "0". Below the header, there are navigation tabs: Best Sellers, Categories, Web Templates, CMS Templates, E-commerce Templates, and Flash & Media. A breadcrumb navigation path "Home > CMS & Blog Templates >" is visible. The main content area features a large image of a smiling man on a computer screen displaying a website. The title "Drupal Themes" is prominently displayed, followed by the subtext "Create Your Site Easily with Responsive Drupal Themes from TemplateMonster". Below this, there are three icons: "100% Satisfaction Guarantee", "24/7 Free Support", and "Stock Photos Included". To the left, there's a sidebar titled "Drupal Templates Categories" listing various categories like Agriculture, Animals & Pets, Architecture, Art & Photography, Beauty, Books, Business, Cafe and Restaurant, City, Charity, Communications, Design, Education, Electronics, Entertainment, Environmental, Exterior design, Family, Fashion, and Flowers. To the right, there's a section titled "Top Rated Drupal Themes" featuring four "Bestseller" Drupal themes: "Book Reviews" (\$75), "Civil Engineering" (\$75), "Wedding Planner" (\$75), and "Flooring" (\$75). Each theme has a small thumbnail, a title, a price, and a rating.

F8.6**TemplateMonster.com Repository**

In Template Monster we can find over 500 paid-for themes for Drupal. Your search engine makes it possible to filter them by price range, which does not usually exceed € 60.

In **Rocket Theme** **F8.7** we can also find paid-for themes for Drupal 7. You can access RocketTheme at the address:

<http://www.rockettheme.com>

One advantage of this page is that it is possible to see the themes working on the particular page, and in this way it gives us a rough idea about whether this is what we need for our site.

The screenshot shows the RocketTheme website. At the top, there's a dark header with a cartoon astronaut logo on the left, social media links (Facebook, Twitter, YouTube, RSS) on the right, and navigation links: Member Login, View a Demo?, and Sign up Now!. Below the header, the main slogan is "RocketTheme is your new home for premium Drupal themes and we're helping to create stunning Drupal sites in the process". The main menu includes Home, Joomla!, WordPress, Drupal, phpBB3, Magento, Extensions, Forum, Join Today!, Account, Club Overview, Club Details, Drupal Themes, Drupal Downloads, Drupal Tutorials, Drupal FAQs, Demos, and Updates. The main content area features a section titled "Latest Drupal Themes" with two items: "Dominion" (Drupal Theme) and "Reaction" (Drupal Theme). Each theme has a preview image, a brief description, and download links for "Demo", "Download", and "Details". To the right, there's a "Drupal" section with the text "Professional Drupal Themes for as little as \$50" and a "Join Today!" button. Below that is a "Follow RocketTheme" section with links to "Like Us" on Facebook, "Follow Us" on Twitter, "Watch Us" on YouTube, and "Follow Us" via RSS.

F8.7**Rocket Theme Repository**

Rocket Theme also offers plenty of themes for Drupal. We can see it working on this particular page with the "Demo" button.

8.3

Manual installation of themes

We will begin by studying how to install a theme using the classic method, similar to the one used in Drupal 6. As we will see in the next section, Drupal 7 incorporates new functionalities that facilitate the installation and updating of themes and modules.

The manual method consists of downloading a theme and uploading it to the server where the site is hosted via TFP. The steps to be followed are these:

Step 1. Download the theme

Once we have decided upon a theme, whether paid-for or free of charge, we will download it by following the instructions of the relevant repository. In general terms, the downloaded files will be compressed with the extensions **.tar.gz** or **.zip**.

Step 2. Unzip the file

The next step is to unzip the downloaded file. The **.tar.gz** and **.zip** extensions tell us about a specific type of file compression. They can both be recognised by Windows file compressors and those of other operating systems, and we will also be able to use applications such as WinZip, Winrar or 7-zip for unzipping them. To continue with the installation, **unzip the downloaded file** with your usual file compression/unzipping software. If you do not have a piece of software of this type you can download the **7-zip** open software free of charge that is available at the URL: <http://www.7-zip.org> (If you do not have this software or do not know how to use it, consult **Annex A**).

Once unzipped it we will have a folder with the name of the theme.

Step 3. Upload the files to the server

We will then upload the unzipped folder of the theme to the server.

The themes can be uploaded at two locations:

/sites/default/themes or **/sites/all/themes**

Note

Location of themes

Although Drupal already includes a **/themes** folder with the core themes in the installation root, the new themes do not need to be added in it. The **/themes** folder stores the basic themes that come with the installation and we do not need to alter their content.

Drupal makes it possible to create multiple websites that use the same Drupal base. In a structure of this type, known as a multi-site, the folder **/sites/all** will be used to upload the common modules and themes to all of the sites. We make reference to the additional modules and themes at all times, whether these are contributed by the community or developed by us. The modules and themes of the core are located in other system folders and they must never be modified.

In general, by creating a website, we will use the **/sites/all/themes** folder for storing the additional themes. This is also the folder that Drupal will use when uploading the themes of the site using the automatic method that we will see in the next section.

Drupal 7 creates the folders **/sites/all/themes** and **/sites/all/modules** during its installation. If these folders are not created, this would be the time to do this.

In **Figure F8.8** we have uploaded the **corolla** and **sky** themes to the **/sites/all/themes** folder. Before uploading the themes to the server, check

that you are situated within the right folder.

Nombre de archivo	Tamaño...	Tipo de archivo	Ultima modificación	Permisos
..				
corolla		Carpetas de archivos	04/09/2011 13:12:29	0755
sky		Carpetas de archivos	04/09/2011 13:13:11	0755
README.txt	161	Documento de texto	18/08/2011 14:19:49	0644

F8.8

Themes uploaded to the server

The capture shows the FTP application with the folders structure of the server. Two themes, **corolla** and **sky**, have been uploaded within /sites/all/themes.

Step 4. Enabling the theme

Once uploaded to the server, we must enable the theme so that is available to be used on the site. We will be able to enable this from: **F8.9**

Administration⇒Appearance

URL Themes
</admin/appearance>

DISABLED THEMES



Sky 7.x-2.3

A minimal, re-colorable theme for Drupal 7 that uses HTML5 and [Adaptivetheme 7.x-2.x](#) base theme.

[Enable](#) | [Enable and set default](#)



Stark 7.12

This theme demonstrates Drupal's default HTML markup and CSS styles. To learn how to build your own theme and override Drupal's default code, see the [Theming Guide](#).

[Enable](#) | [Enable and set default](#)

F8.9

Disabled themes

In order for a theme to be available to be used on the site, it is necessary for this to be active. There may be several active themes on one site, but only one of these can be set as the default one.

Enabling and configuring of themes is done in **Appearance**.

If we want the enabled theme to be applied to the site, we only have to use the **Set default** option. Take account of the fact that there may be several themes enabled on a site, but only one of these may be the default theme.

In this section we also find the possibility of configuring the **administration theme**, as was explained in [Unit 3](#). It is important to remember that, if we have selected a different theme for the administration area, the themes selection page will not change even though we select another theme as the default one, because we are continuing in the administration area. This is the correct type of functioning, because we have previously told our system not to change the administration area theme, even though it may change the general theme of the site.

Therefore, in order to see the new appearance of the site, we will have to leave the administration area, for example loading the front page. **F8.10**

F8.10**Change of theme**

If we have selected a specific theme for the administration area (within the **Appearance** section), we will not see the changes in the design of the site until we leave the administration area. This figure shows the front page of the site applying the **Corolla** theme.

The screenshot shows a Drupal 7 website with the following layout:

- Header:** A logo consisting of four colored squares (blue, green, yellow, orange) followed by the text "Learn Drupal with Forcontu".
- Search Bar:** A search input field with a "Search" button.
- Navigation:** A sidebar with links: "Add content", "Home", "About me", and "Drupal".
- Who's Online:** A sidebar showing "There is currently 1 user online: admin".
- Content Area:**
 - Headline 1:** Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20. Content: "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.".
 - Second article:** Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 13:32. Content: "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis tortor vulputate arcu, sed eleifend ante elit non odio. Proin erat nibh, dignissim at ullamcorper in, tincidunt vel tellus. Ut pharetra convallis venenatis. Quisque consequat lacus vel est semper nec vulputate velit faucibus. Duis vel arcu fermentum nunc blandit placerat. Nulla facilisi. Vestibulum pulvinar est mollis sapien venenatis scelerisque. Donec mollis porta nunc, id adipiscing diam vulputate nec. Nunc at orci in arcu auctor laoreet mattis ac eros.".
- Right Sidebar:** "EXPERT IN DRUPAL 7" featuring a photo of two people working on laptops and the text: "Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels: Beginner, Intermediate, Advanced."

8.4**Automatic installation of themes**

Drupal 7 makes it possible to install themes in a more straightforward way than in earlier versions. We have a tool that enables us to choose between informing it about the URL address where the compressed file of the theme is located, with no need to download it beforehand, or select and upload the file of the theme, if we have already downloaded it onto our equipment.

In order for this option to be available we must have the enabled the **Update Manager** module by default (we can check this in the modules administration area **Administration** ⇒ **Modules**).

To install a new theme we have to go to: **F8.11**

URL Install theme
</admin/appearance/install>

The first option that we will find is **Install from a URL**. We have to indicate the URL of the compressed file of the theme, which we can obtain easily by accessing the theme page and clicking on download with the right button, whether in **.tar.gz** or in **.zip**. In the popup menu of the browser we will select the **Copy link address** option, and then Paste this into the text table where the URL is requested. Take account of the fact that this option may vary depending on the browser that you are using.

We can also download the compressed file or the theme, as we have done until now, and upload it via the **Upload a module or theme archive to install** option.

In both cases we have to specify compressed files with **.zip** or **.tar.gz** extensions.

Home » Administration » Appearance

Appearance LIST UPDATE SETTINGS

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: `zip tar tgz gz bz2`.

Install from a URL

For example: <http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz>

Or

Upload a module or theme archive to install

No se ha...archivo

For example: `name.tar.gz` from your local computer

F8.11**Install theme**

We can install a theme in two easy steps, by indicating its URL path or uploading the compressed file of the theme from our equipment.

In this case we are installing the **Danland theme**, available at the [drupal.org](#).

By clicking on **Install**, Drupal will do what is necessary to install the theme, and if everything comes out right, it will display a page to us indicating this. **F8.12**
From here we will be able to go to the **Appearance** page again so as to enable the theme and establish it as the default one if we want to, or the administration pages of the site.

In the event of failing to find the theme of the path provided or the file that we have tried to install not being a valid Drupal theme, the system will display an error message.

Update manager**F8.12****Installation of completed theme**

The automatic installer informs us that the theme installation has gone well.

 Installation was completed successfully.

danland

- Installed `danland` successfully

Next steps

- [Enable newly added themes](#)
- [Administration pages](#)

The themes installed following this method will be automatically promoted to the **/sites/all/themes** folder, along with other themes that have been automatically or manually uploaded.

Once installed, we will enable and establish the theme as the default one from **Administration** ⇒ **Appearance**. After this step, we can go to the front page of the site and check how the presentation of the site has changed with the new theme. **F8.13**

F8.13**Change of theme**

Thus the front page of our site is displayed after installing, enabling and setting the recently-installed theme, **Danland**, as the default theme.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

8.5**Configuring the theme**

Every **active** theme is associated with a configuration area, which can be accessed from:

Administration ⇒ **Appearance [Settings in each theme]**

The configuration settings will vary from one theme to another, depending on how they have been implemented. This will provide us with a greater degree of customization of the theme so as to adapt it to the image that we want on our site.

In **Figure F8.14** we show the settings that are common to all of the themes:

- **Toggle display.** It is possible to enable or disable certain items, such as the logo, the site name, the site slogan, etc.
- **Logo image settings.** This makes it possible to upload an image with the site logo. To do this we have to disable the **Use the default logo** setting.
- **Shortcut icon settings.** This makes it possible to indicate an image for the shortcut icon or "favicon", which is the icon shown on the address bar or browser tab, next to the page title or next to the URL, depending on the browser that we are using.

Home » Administration » Appearance » Settings

Appearance

LIST **UPDATE** **SETTINGS**

Global settings Bartik Corolla Danland Garland Seven Sky

These options control the display settings for the *Danland* theme. When your site is displayed using this theme, these settings will be used.

TOGGLE DISPLAY

Enable or disable the display of certain page elements.

Logo
 Site name
 Site slogan
 User pictures in posts
 User pictures in comments
 User verification status in comments
 Shortcut icon
 Main menu
 Secondary menu

LOGO IMAGE SETTINGS

If toggled on, the following logo will be displayed.

Use the default logo
 Check here if you want the theme to use the logo supplied with it.

SHORTCUT ICON SETTINGS

Your shortcut icon, or 'favicon', is displayed in the address bar and bookmarks of most browsers.

Use the default shortcut icon.
 Check here if you want the theme to use the default shortcut icon.

Save configuration

F8.14**Basic configuration**

Basic configuration settings, corresponding to the *Danland* theme. These settings are common to most Drupal themes.

F8.15**Colour scheme**

The colour scheme makes it possible to modify the background, text and link colours of the site. This figure shows the colour scheme for the Garland theme.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Appearance](#) » [Settings](#)

Appearance [LIST](#) [UPDATE](#) [SETTINGS](#)

[Global settings](#) [Bartik](#) [Corolla](#) [Danland](#) [Garland](#) [Seven](#) [Sky](#)

These options control the display settings for the *Garland* theme. When your site is displayed using this theme, these settings will be used.

Content width

Fluid width

Fixed width

Specify whether the content will wrap to a fixed width or will fluidly expand to the width of the browser window.

COLOR SCHEME

Color set [Blue Lagoon \(Default\)](#)

Base color	#0072b9	
Link color	#027ac6	
Header top	#2385c2	
Header bottom	#5ab5ee	
Text color	#494949	

Preview

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F8.16**More configuration settings**

Some themes make it possible to configure other parameters, such as the font size, number of columns and the size of these, etc.

The configuration settings shown correspond to the **Corolla** theme.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Appearance](#) » [Settings](#)

Appearance [LIST](#) [UPDATE](#) [SETTINGS](#)

[Global settings](#) [Bartik](#) [Corolla](#) [Danland](#) [Garland](#) [Seven](#) [Sky](#)

These options control the display settings for the *Corolla* theme. When your site is displayed using this theme, these settings will be used.

Standard Layout

- [Tablet Layout](#)
- [Smartphone Layout](#)
- [Fonts](#)
- [Font Size](#)
- [Heading Styles](#)
- [Rounded corners](#)
- [Box Shadows and Textures](#)
- [Image Settings](#)
- [Menu Bullets](#)

Standard Layout

The standard layout is for desktops, laptops and other large screen devices.

Choose sidebar positions

Set the width of each sidebar

Unit [%](#) First sidebar * 20

Global settings

From the **Global settings** tab we can define default settings that will be applied to the themes installed, unless specified to the contrary in one theme in particular. The settings available are common to all of the themes (toggle display, logo image settings and shortcut icon settings).

F8.14

Practical case 8.1

Installing and configuring the Kanji theme

In this practical case, we are going to see how the **Kanji** theme is installed and configured step by step.

Step 1. Search for and download the Kanji theme

To locate the **Kanji** theme we will use the themes search engine available on drupal.org. To do this go to <http://drupal.org>, and access:

drupal.org ⇒ **Download & Extend** ⇒ **Themes**

URL Repository of themes
<http://drupal.org/project/themes>

Use the search table that we will find in the top part of the page, introducing the text "**kanji**" within **Search themes**, and locate the Kanji theme from among the search results.

Once on the theme page, <http://drupal.org/project/kanji>, locate the **Downloads** section and search for the latest stable version of the theme for Drupal 7. Download the theme in one of the available formats (**.tar.gz** or **.zip**).

Then follow **step 2a** to carry out the manual installation of the theme or jump to **step 2b** to carry out the automated installation.

Step 2a. Manual installation of the theme

Once the compressed file has been downloaded we will unzip it and upload it to our server via FTP. Specifically, we will upload it to the **/sites/all/themes** folder.

If the **themes** folder has not yet been created within **/sites/all**, we will have to create it now. Drupal protects the **/sites/all** folder by changing the permissions, so that this is not written on by mistake. To be able to create the themes folder from your FTP, you will have to change the permissions of the parent file, **/all**, assigning writing permissions to it (typically **755**). Consult **Annex A** for further information about the assigning of permissions to files and folders.

Once the **/sites/all/themes** folder has been created, we will upload the **kanji** folder that is extracted from the downloaded theme file by FTP.

The location of the theme will therefore be **/sites/all/themes/kanji**.

Step 2b. Automatic installation of the theme

In order to have this setting available we must have the **Update Manager** module activated by default, (we can check this in the modules administration area **Administration** ⇒ **Modules**).

To install a new theme we have to go to: **F8.17**

URL Install theme
/admin/appearance/install

Administration ⇒ **Appearance [install new theme]**

Since we have downloaded the theme from drupal.org, we will use the **Upload a module or theme archive for installing** setting. Simply click on **select file** and locate the file downloaded on your equipment. Then click on **Install**.

F8.17

Practical case 8.1 Automatic installation of the theme

We can install a theme in two easy steps, by indicating its URL path or uploading the compressed file of the theme from our equipment.

The screenshot shows the 'Appearance' page under 'Administration'. It has three main sections: 'Install from a URL' (with a text input field for a URL like 'http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz') and 'Upload a module or theme archive to install' (with a file selection input field containing 'kanji-7.x...2.tar.gz'). Below these are buttons for 'LIST', 'UPDATE', and 'SETTINGS'. A note at the top says 'You can find modules and themes on drupal.org. The following file extensions are supported: zip tar tgz gz bz2.' A large 'Install' button is at the bottom.

Step 3. Enabling the theme

If you have done the previous steps correctly, the **Kanji** theme will already be available in the themes administration area, albeit disabled.

Access: **Administration** ⇒ **Appearance [install new theme]**

and check that the Kanji theme is available in the **disabled themes** section. **F8.18**

URL Themes
/admin/appearance

F8.18

Practical case 8.1 Enable the theme

The theme installed will be initially disabled.

By clicking on "Enable and set default" we will be changing the theme of our site to **Kanji**.

DISABLED THEME



Kanji 7.x-2.2

Theme with fixed size, multiple columns and regions.

Enable **Enable and set default**

To change the theme of the site for the **Kanji** theme, we will select the **Enable and set default** setting.

Step 4. Configuring the theme

Once the theme has been enabled the **Settings** link will be displayed to the right of this. From configuring the theme we are able to check the display of the fields studied: logo, site name, site slogan, main menu, secondary menu, shortcut icon, etc. These settings will be checked or unchecked depending on the **Global**

settings that we have defined for all of the themes.

Enable at least the following settings: Logo, site name and Main menu.

In **Logo image settings** select an image that you want to use it as upload it using the form (first disable the **Use the default logo** setting). You can upload the image by FTP and indicate the path or upload it directly using the form.

Once these fields have been done, save the configuration and access the front page of the site to check the toggle displays of the theme. **F8.19**

F8.19

Practical case 8.1 Configuring the theme

Once the theme has been configured we will be able to check the changes made in the presentation by accessing the front page of the site.

Step 5. Assignment of blocks to regions

The next step is to go to the Blocks administration and re-assign the available blocks to the new regions of the theme. This is necessary because there may be differences between one theme and another in regards to the name of the regions, and this means that the blocks become disturbed by being automatically relocated.

URL Blocks

/admin/structure/block

Access: Administration ⇒ Structures ⇒ Blocks

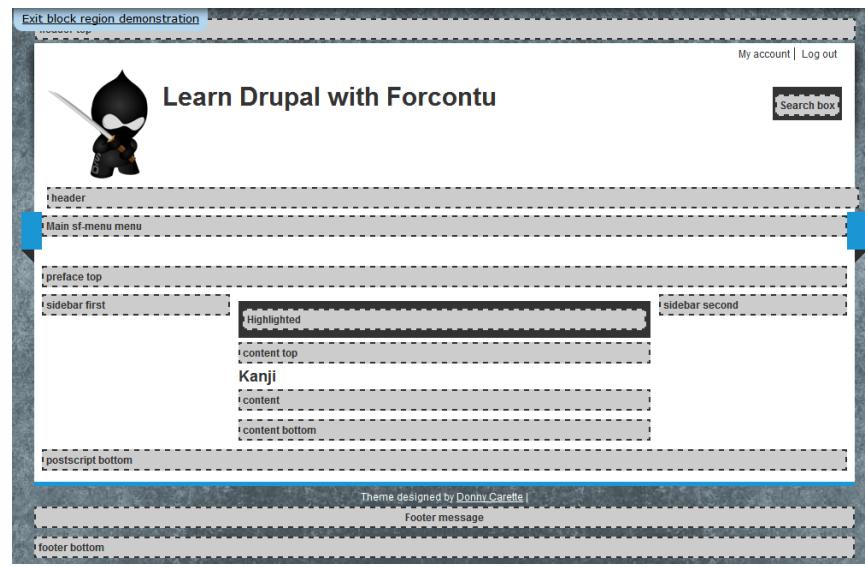
to assign the blocks to the right regions. On this page we see all of the modules enabled on the site in the tabs. Since we are going to configure the blocks for the Kanji theme we choose the Kanji tab.

By clicking on **Demonstrate block regions (Kanji)** we can see a page where the regions of the theme are identified, so as to give us a clearer idea of where we can place our blocks. To go back to the Blocks administration, we use the **Exit block region demonstration** button. **F8.20**

F8.20

Practical case 8.1 Regions of the Kanji theme

The regions available in the Kanji theme are displayed.



On the Blocks administration page we see several blocks that are not promoted to any region of the theme. To enable any of the blocks we only have to assign them a region, and then click on **Save blocks**.

We are then going to enable the **Who's new** block, which comes with Drupal by default, promoting it to the right-hand column of the site. **F8.21** To do this we locate the **Who's new** block, and we assign it the **Second sidebar** region. We save it and we can now go to the front page of the site in order to check that the block has been promoted to the selected region. With this we have completed the configuration of the new theme.

F8.21**Practical case 8.1
Final presentation**

Once the blocks have been relocated to their corresponding regions, we have completed the configuration of the new theme.

Modifying a theme with CSS

8.6

As we have already remarked, it is possible to modify the appearance of a theme using the CSS style sheets. It is unnecessary to have programming knowledge, but we do need to understand website layout using CSS. In the **Intermediate Level**, we will devote one unit to learning HTML and CSS.

In **Figure F8.22** we show a typical structure of files and folders within a theme. At this level we will only make small modifications to styles in the following files and folders:

- **style.css** file. The main file that contains the styles is called **style.css**. There may be other additional style files, such as in the theme shown as an example, where there are other files known as **ie7.css** and **ie8.css** which, as their names indicate, it contains specific styles for the different versions of the Internet Explorer (IE) browser.
- The **images folder**. This contains the images of the theme. We can modify the existing images or add new images, in which case it will be necessary to reference these correctly from the CSS styles sheet.

In **Figure F8.23** we see a fragment of a CSS file, where the configuration parameters applicable to every HTML label used are defined. While it is necessary to have intermediate knowledge of HTML and CSS to understand and edit this file, it is possible to modify some parameters by simple deduction, based on the name of the item.

For example, if we analyse this fragment of CSS code,

```
#header{
  background: url('images/frame_top.jpg') no-repeat 0 66px
  transparent;
}
```

it is easy to deduce, at least, that the *images* folder containing the *frame_top.jpg* image is loaded in the page header. If we want the header to load another image, we only have to upload the new image to the *images* folder and change the reference in the CSS file.

F8.22**Structure of files and folder in a theme**

When modifying the style sheets of a theme we have to take care not to touch the rest of the files (especially the .php files) and not change the name of the existing files.

		Folder
	color	Folder
	images	Folder
	base-rtl.css	409 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	base.css	7.322 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	colors.css	2.334 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	comment-wrapper.tpl.php	2.37 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	comment.tpl.php	1.908 File php
	corolla.info	3.547 1.316 File php
	dynamic.css.php	1.551 File info
	forum-icon.tpl.php	856 233 File php
	ie7.css	682 400 File php
	ie8.css	1.403 642 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	LICENSE.txt	529 293 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	logo.png	14.940 5.705 Text Document
	maintenance-page.tpl.php	4.031 4.031 PNG Image
	node--book.tpl.php	3.018 912 File php
	node.tpl.php	5.062 2.013 File php
	page-content.tpl.php	5.174 2.029 File php
	page-sidebar-first.tpl.php	4.941 1.703 File php
	page-sidebar-second.tpl.php	3.372 1.341 File php
	page.tpl.php	3.380 1.342 File php
	poll-bar-block.tpl.php	5.351 1.723 File php
	poll-bar.tpl.php	865 409 File php
	print.css	858 403 File php
	reset.css	906 446 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	screenshot.png	532 341 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	style-rtl.css	19.386 19.310 PNG Image
	style.css	3.178 1.003 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	template.php	29.300 6.518 Cascading Style Sheet Document
	theme-settings.php	6.225 2.122 File php
		4.052 859 File php

F8.23**style.css file**

All of the styles applicable to the site are defined in the *style.css* file. It is necessary to have intermediate knowledge of both CSS and HTML.

```
/*
 ** HTML elements
 */
body {
    font-family:'Lucida Grande', 'Lucida Sans Unicode', Helvetica, Verdana, Arial, Tahoma,
    font-size:14px;
    color: #39444d;
    background:url('images/bg.png') top center;
    margin:0 0 15px;
}

tr.odd td, tr.even td {
    padding: 0.3em;
}

h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6 {
    font-family: Helvetica, Arial, "Lucida Grande", Verdana, sans-serif;
    color:#111;
}

h1 {
    font-size: 35px;
    color: #39444d;
    font-family:'Georgia',Times,Serif;
}
```

9

Extending functionalities with modules

Drupal is a modular system that is to say, it is composed of a set of modules that communicate and interact between each other, in order to contribute different functionalities to the website. The inclusion of new modules may change the way the modules interact and/or add new system characteristics and functionalities.

The Drupal core includes some modules that contribute the most basic functionalities to the system, but today there are also 2500 additional modules in Drupal 7 that the members of the Drupal community develop and maintain and that can be easily incorporated into the system.

Although the general installation process is shared by all of the modules, it is very common for us to find small differences that are necessary to understand to successfully complete the installation. The configuration of the modules is varied and it may be very simple or relatively complex, depending entirely on the module. It will generally be the author of the module who guides us, via the documentation, in the process of installing and configuring it.

In this unit we limit ourselves to explaining the generic modules installation process, and we will also look in detail at how to configure some very useful modules, without overlooking the fact that we are at the **beginner level** of the course. In the **intermediate level** we will tackle more complex modules in depth, in both installation and configuration and in functionalities contributed to the system.

The objective of this unit is therefore for you to make yourself familiar with the Drupal modules concept and with the processes of installing and configuring them. The learning will be carried out in practical cases of installation and configuration of new modules.

Comparative D7/D6

Installation of modules

We will find the main difference incorporated into Drupal 7 in the automatic installation of modules, contributing the URL to the compressed file of the module or uploading the file. With this system, we avoid having to connect via FTP in order to upload the files to the server, which simplifies and speeds up the modules installation process.

Modules administration area

The modules administration area has been improved and it now includes links to Help, Permissions and Configuration for each module, when they are available.

Unit contents

9.1 What modules are.....	142
9.2 Core modules	143
9.3 Repositories of modules	149
9.4 Downloading and installing modules	152
9.5 Configuring modules	156



9.1

What modules are

When we are building the website, it will be necessary to incorporate additional functionalities that are not available in the Drupal core. Modules make it possible to increase and improve the functionalities of the site, in a relatively quick and straightforward way.

Modules are hence sets of functionalities with the capacity to be integrated into a Drupal installation, adding and/or improving the functioning of the site in a multitude of areas: administration, contents management, user management, electronic commerce, etc.

Modules are developed and freely shared by the Drupal community of users and developers. This means that it is quite common to find errors and incompatibilities between modules (which it is appropriate to report to their authors) and this is why we have to keep our website updated and in an ongoing state of continuous review and improvement.

Once the modules have been uploaded to our site, we will be able to consult the modules available (enabled and not enabled) in **F9.1** the modules management area:

URL Module
`/admin/modules`

F9.1

Modules

It is possible to access the list of modules that are available and active on our Drupal Website via the **Modules** page.

The screenshot shows the Drupal 7 Modules management interface. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Modules. Below the breadcrumb, there are three buttons: LIST, UPDATE, and UNINSTALL. The main content area is titled "CORE". It contains a table with columns: ENABLED, NAME, VERSION, DESCRIPTION, and OPERATIONS. The table lists several core modules:

ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	Aggregator	7.12	Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds).	Help Permissions Configure
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block	7.12	Controls the visual building blocks a page is constructed with. Blocks are boxes of content rendered into an area, or region, of a web page. Required by: Dashboard (enabled)	Help Permissions Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Blog	7.12	Enables multi-user blogs.	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Book	7.12	Allows users to create and organize related content in an outline.	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Color	7.12	Allows administrators to change the color scheme of compatible themes.	Help
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Comment	7.12	Allows users to comment on and discuss published content. Requires: Text (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled) Required by: Forum (disabled), Tracker (disabled)	Help Permissions Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contact	7.12	Enables the use of both personal and site-wide contact forms.	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Content translation	7.12	Allows content to be translated into different languages. Requires: Locale (disabled)	

Core modules

9.2

The Drupal 7 core incorporates **44 modules**, which will be available after the installation. All of these modules are grouped together in the **Core** section.

Some of these modules are essential for the functioning of Drupal, and so the system will not let us disable them. These are the ones that state, in their description: "**Needed for Drupal**".

The **obligatory modules** that form part of the Drupal 7 core are:

- **Field** and **Field SQL storage**, which make it possible to jointly add fields to entities, such as nodes and users. We will explain these concepts in this particular section.
- **Filter**, which carries out filtering actions on the contents to be displayed.
- **Image**, which enables the system to handle images.
- **Node**, which carries out the actions necessary for the publication and management of contents.
- **System**, responsible for the general site administration.
- **Taxonomy**, which makes it possible to categorise content.
- **Text**, which defines simple text field types.
- **User**, necessary for the registration, access and management of users.

Other modules are enabled by default, but they are not essential, although they probably contribute functionalities that it is not advisable to disable. This is the case, for example, with the **Menu** and **Path** modules.

A third group of modules consists of all of those that are also included in the Drupal core, because it has been considered that they are modules that can cover the needs of most users, but they are initially disabled. One only has to enable these modules to make use of them.

We will see a short description of each one of the modules distributed with the Drupal core:

Aggregator

This makes it possible to integrate syndicated content into our website. By content we understand the content generated by other websites in RSS, RDF or Atom news channels format.

Block

This makes it possible to create, manage and display block on the site. As we will study in [Unit 7](#), blocks are static or dynamic boxes of content, which are displayed in the available regions of the theme.

Blog

This module, initially disabled, makes it possible to quickly enable and set underway a multi-user blog on the website. This module is studied in depth in [Unit 13](#).

Book

A book in Drupal is a set of pages that are linked and arranged into a hierarchical structure, which could be chapters, sections and sub-sections. The books can be used in order to present contents on our site such as manuals, tutorials, lists of frequently asked questions and other materials which, by their nature, require a hierarchical organisation. This module will be studied in [Unit 15](#).

Color

Some Drupal themes are compatible with the Color module, enabling a change in the color scheme. For example, the Garland theme makes it possible to set the background color, text color, links, etc. and this is achieved thanks to their compatibility with Color.

Comment

This is the module that makes it possible to publish comments on the site that are associated with the contents. It has the tools available in order to be able to integrate comments into the types of content of our site and multiple permissions in order to decide which users will be able to comment on the contents.

Contact

This generates a contact form for the website. This is the fastest way to present a contact form so that the users or visitors can communicate with the site administrator.

Content translation

This makes it possible for the content to be translated into different languages. If we want to have a multilingual site, this module is the one that is going to enable us to be able to translate the nodes into all of the languages in which our site is being configured.

Contextual links

This module, which is activated by default, generates an  icon in the upper right-hand corner of blocks and items that functions as a form of direct access to the configuration settings. Clicking on the icon will display a menu with one or several options, which will vary depending on the type of block or item.

Dashboard

This module offers another functionality that may be very useful to the administrators and developers of the site. By enabling this, a link is added in the administration menu, known as the **Control panel**. The Control panel is an area in which multiple blocks can be added, in such a way that the administrator can organise the administration tools and information that are most used on the site on one page.

Database logging

When this is enabled, certain events that have taken place on the website are stored in the database. Some errors such as **access denied** to certain pages, or attempts to visit pages that are not found, can be analysed in order to improve the Website.

Field

This module, which we have already studied in [Unit 5](#), makes it possible to add fields to the Drupal entities (for example, to content types and users).

Field SQL storage

This module is necessary in order for the information added in the fields that have been created using the Field module can be stored in the database.

Field UI

This provides the user interface (UI) so that the users with the right permissions can add and manage the fields associated with the entities. The **Field**, **Field SQL storage** and **Field UI** modules are closely related.

File

This makes it possible to attach files to the contents. It defines a **File** field type that can be used in any entity (content types, users. etc.).

Filter

This module handles the text formats and associated filters. The filters will work on the text in order to provide a format to the final presentation. The text formats initially available are Filtered HTML, Full HTML and Plain text. For example, the HTML labels permitted for the Filtered HTML format will be limited to one set of these.

Forum

This adds discussion forums to the site. This module will be studied in depth in [Unit 14](#).

Help

This makes it possible for help about the modules to be viewed, generally in the form of messages in the upper part of the page. It is also responsible for displaying a link to the help page of each module that incorporates it, on the **Modules administration** page.

Image

This makes it possible to upload and display images in the entities. The Image field that we have studied in the additional fields of the content types comes from this module.

List

This makes it possible to create additional fields of the **list of items** type, which we can add to the entities.

Locale

This makes it possible to use several languages on the site, as a base for the translation of the interface and of the contents.

Menu

This provides an interface for handling menus in Drupal. As we have seen, a menu is a hierarchical collection of links, which can lead to pages that are within or outside the site.

Node

This is an essential module for the functioning of Drupal and it manages all of the tasks related to the nodes. It is responsible for the creation, editing, deletion, configuration and viewing of the content of the site.

Number

This module, enabled by default, provides us with the opportunity to create fields for different numerical types (whole, decimal, float), which we will be able to add to entities.

OpenID

Internet users have to handle numerous access data for different web portals. OpenID is a decentralised identification standard that we can use to identify ourselves on the different portals. The module makes it possible for OpenID Access data to be used on the website with Drupal, with no need to have a specific user name and password for our page.

Options

This module incorporates the checks necessary for using selection boxes and option buttons in the fields implemented by the Field module.

Overlay

This adds the administrative overlay. If we have it enabled we will see how all of the administration pages are loaded on the active site page, such as a popup window or overlay. When the administration tasks have been finished, we will go straight back to the site page that we were visiting before going into the administration area.

Path

This module is used to assign an URL alias to the internal paths of the site. In this way, the node/50 paths can be replaced by a friendly URL, which is identified with the content (for example, about-us). It is enabled and it is highly advisable to use it so that it will be properly positioned in the search engines (fundamental for the SEO positioning).

PHP filter

This module allows us to insert a PHP code in the body of the nodes and in the content of the blocks, which will be run when these are going to be displayed on screen. It may be very useful for creating dynamic contents, running portions of PHP code in order to vary the content or presentation of the information. After enabling this, we will see that we have got another text format available, PHP Code, which is the format that we will have to select in the contents in order for the PHP code to be run as such. This module has to be used carefully, because improper use could lead to the site generally malfunctioning.

Poll

This makes it possible to create polls. By enabling it, we will see that we have a new content type, "Poll", with which we will be able to ask questions of the site users and they will be able to express their opinions by voting for any of the available options. We will see this in greater detail in this particular Unit, in the **practical case 9.1**.

RDF

With this module, Drupal allows you to add metadata to the contents of the site, which helps other applications (such as for example, RSS feed aggregators and search engines) to better understand the relations and attributes of the site. Proper use of these metadata will also mean better positioning in the search engines.

Search

This enables searches on the site. Searches will be studied in [Unit 17](#).

Shortcut

This module manages the "shortcuts" bar, in which users will be able to add direct links to the pages that they use most.

Statistics

This provides tools for recording site access statistics (which make it possible, for example, to obtain the most visited pages on the site).

Syslog

This states the main events occurring in the system using the *syslog* protocol, which generally consists of writing to this end on a logfile on the server where Drupal is run. Correctly configuring this may depend on the server where the website is hosted.

System

This is a fundamental core module, which cannot be disabled. It is responsible for managing the general functioning and use of the site. It is also responsible for checking the performance, the cache, enabling and disabling of themes, presentation of the administration area and the configuration of the main site settings. It periodically runs maintenance operations of the site, and it also configures the actions that are used with the triggers.

Taxonomy

This permits the categorising of the content through terms and vocabulary. Use of taxonomy is studied in [Unit 11](#).

Testing

This makes it possible to run tests on the Drupal core and on the active modules, guaranteeing that the web site code works correctly. It is a fundamental tool for site developers, especially when they find an error and they want to enclose it in order to locate the module that generates it.

Text

This provides the control necessary to handle text fields. It is a basic module, because much functionality depends on it. If we want to add text fields to entities, this module will be the one responsible for them functioning. It is also closely related to the Filter module, because the content of the text fields will have to pass through one of the established text formats.

Toolbar

This controls the toolbar that the administration menu displays in the upper part of the page.

Tracker

This stores information about recently published content. On the [/tracker](#) page we will be able to view the recent content, which as a general rule will be that which is published or modified since the last visit of a user to the page. Furthermore, every user has a tab dedicated to this task "Tracking", in his user account available ([/user](#)). This module is disabled by default.

Trigger

This activates the actions that can be triggered in certain system events. With this module it is possible to configure the site so that, for example, e-mail is sent to the author of a node every time that a user makes a comment on it.

Update manager

This periodically checks the updates available on the site, for both the core and the modules and themes that are enabled, informing the administrator about the new versions available. It is highly advisable to enable this to keep the site updated. It also makes it possible to automatically install modules, a functionality that we will use in this particular Unit.

User

This module is essential for the functioning of Drupal, and so it cannot be disabled. It is responsible for managing the user accounts, the roles and the permissions of the site.

Repositories of modules

9.3

The official Drupal modules repository

The official modules repository, in the same way as with the one for themes, is also found at <http://drupal.org> (in English), by accessing: **F9.2**

drupal.org ⇒ **Download & Extend** ⇒ **Modules**

The screenshot shows the Drupal.org modules repository search interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like 'Get Started', 'Community & Support', 'Documentation', 'Download & Extend', 'Marketplace', and 'About'. Below the navigation is a search bar with a placeholder 'Search Drupal.org' and a 'Search' button. To the right of the search bar is a dropdown menu labeled 'Refine your search'. The main content area has a heading 'Download & Extend' and a sub-heading 'Modules'. It displays a message: '1634 Modules match your search'. Below this are several filter dropdowns: 'Modules categories: - Any -', 'Filter by compatibility: 7.x', 'Status: Full projects', 'Search Modules: [empty input]', and 'Sort by: Most installed'. A 'Search' button is located below these filters. To the right of the search form, there are two sections: 'Most Installed' (listing 'Views', 'Content Construction Kit (CCK)', 'Token', 'pathauto', and 'More Most installed') and 'New Modules' (listing 'Comment Anonymizer', 'TweetPack', 'Webform Encrypt', 'Picasa Slideshow Input Filter', and 'More New Modules'). Below the search form, there's a note about contributed modules being add-ons for Drupal, mentioning compatibility issues and how to contribute. There are also sections for 'Views' (last updated November 25, 2005) and 'Drupal 7 note' (warning about CTools cache flushing issues). The bottom of the page has a footer with links to 'What is Views', 'The Views module provides a flexible method for Drupal site designers to control how lists and tables of content (nodes in Views 1, almost anything in Views 2) are presented. Traditionally, Drupal has hard-coded most of this, particularly in how taxonomy and tracker lists are formatted.' and 'This tool is essentially a smart query builder that, given enough information, can build the proper query, execute it, and display the results. It has four modes, plus a special mode, and provides an impressive amount of functionality from these modes.'

URL Repository of modules

<http://drupal.org/project/modules>

F9.2

Repository of modules at drupal.org

We can find plenty of modules at Drupal.org that add new functionalities to our web site.

Navigation through the modules repository is facilitated with the set of **search filters** situated in the upper part of the page. These filters are:

- **Modules categories**, assists us in being able to filter the module by the category that it belongs to, depending on the area of the functions that it carries out.
- **Filter by compatibility**, which makes it possible to select the version of Drupal that we want the module for.
- **Status**, which makes it possible to filter those modules that are finished to be completed or those that are in the test phase from among all of the available modules.
- **Search Modules**, which makes it possible to select the themes that contain one word.

- **Sort by**, which makes it possible to sort the results by:
 - o Relevancy
 - o Title
 - o Type
 - o Author
 - o Date
 - o Last release
 - o Last build
 - o Most installed

The repository of drupalmodules.com modules

Although the official Drupal portal has been markedly improved, the site recommended for consulting and locating modules continues being drupalmodules.com. **F9.3** Unlike with drupal.org, this site is completely focused on modules for Drupal and it incorporates filters and search engines that make it possible to locate the modules in a smoother and more straightforward way. Furthermore, it incorporates graphics that show the functionalities, security, ease of use and documentation on a scale from 1 to 5 for each module and user comments in some cases.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F9.3

drupalmodules.com

The website drupalmodules.com is exclusively orientated towards the Drupal modules. We can find plenty of modules with the site's useful search and rating tools.

Drupal Modules Module Finder New Modules RSS Feeds Code Search Drupal Hosting News

Home | Latest Reviews | Top Rated | Most Downloaded | Most Favorited | Category List | Rating Guide | Forum | About | Sponsor Us

Most Downloaded

- 1. Administration menu**
Provides a theme-independent administration interface (aka. navigation, back-end). It's a helper for novice users coming from other CMS, a time-saver for site administrators, and useful for developers..."
Downloads: 28766 Administration, Developer, Site navigation, Utility, 4.7.x, 5.x, 6.x, 7.x, 8.x
- 2. Content Construction Kit (CCK)**
"The Content Construction Kit allows you to add custom fields to nodes using a web browser. Drupal 7 and Fields in Core. Most of CCK has moved to core in the Drupal 7 version. Please note that this is not..."
Downloads: 25175 Administration, Developer, Site navigation, Utility, 6.x, 7.x
- 3. Views**
"Drupal 7 note When installing Views on Drupal 7, you absolutely must have CTools at least alpha4 and you may need to flush cache as much as twice. There are currently issues with core's cache flushing..."
Downloads: 23736 Content display, Views, 6.x, 7.x
- 4. FCKeditor - WYSIWYG HTML editor**
"CKEditor module: CKEditor is the successor to FCKeditor and has its own CKEditor module. The FCKeditor module will not receive any new features, nor will it be updated for Drupal 7. Upgrading to CKEditor..."
Downloads: 21952 5.x, 6.x
- 5. Pathauto**
"The Pathauto module automatically generates path aliases for various kinds of content (nodes, categories, users) without requiring the user to manually specify the path alias. This allows you to get..."
Downloads: 15623 Administration, Path management, Utility, 6.x, 7.x

Search Modules Search
Restrict search to:
 Drupal 6.x
 Drupal 5.x
 Drupal 7.x
 Modules
 Reviews

User login Username: * Password: * Log in Create new account Request new password

Sponsored By
700 Over 700 text effects for Photoshop.

Highest Rated

1. Featured Content
2. Flag
3. Menu Trails
4. Vertical Tabs
5. Backup and Migrate

Most Downloaded

1. Administration menu
2. Content Construction Kit (CCK)
3. Views
4. FCKeditor - WYSIWYG HTML editor
5. Pathauto

Top Drupal Books

1. Using Drupal (O'Reilly)
2. Definitive Guide to D7
3. Beginning Drupal 7
4. Drupal For Dummies
5. Pro Drupal Development 7

more

New Modules

- Automated Views Optimize
- Indexes Detaller
- Sassy Substitutions
- Commerce ePayment
- PageAPI
- My Episodes
- Ubercart Order Status Pane
- Workflow Content Permissions
- BSOD - Blue screen of death
- Profiler Builder
- CloudMenu

more

Recent Posts

The repositories are synchronised, along with the versions of the modules available on both sites are exactly identical. Therefore, we will be able to use the repository that seems most friendly and useful to us.

The modules are shown as arranged into different categories. We show some of these below:

- Utility
- Content
- Content display

- Third-party integration
- Administration
- Developer
- Content Construction Kit, CCK
- Community
- Media
- User access/authentication
- User management
- Filters/editors
- Views
- Javascript Utilities
- Taxonomy
- Theme related
- e-Commerce
- Mail
- Commerce / advertising
- File management
- Search
- Import/export
- Syndication
- Site navigation
- Security
- Organic Groups
- Location
- Event
- Multilingual
- Statistics
- Evaluation/rating
- RDF
- Games and Amusements
- Performance and Scalability
- Paging

From drupalmodules.com we can also access the lists of interest, such as the **Top Rated** modules, the **Most Downloaded** modules and the **New Modules** added to the repository.

9.4

Downloading and installing modules

Before downloading a module be sure that the version is compatible with Drupal 7 is available and that is a **stable and recommended version**.

Figure F9.4 shows the format of presentation of the available versions of a module in the drupal.org repository.

The recommended versions are shown in green. The versions of the modules for Drupal 7 will have the format 7.x-y.z, where y.z will be the number of the version of the module. For example, a version identified as 7.x-1.19 means that it is valid for Drupal 7 and that this is 1.19 of the module.

Versions under development are identified with the literal term **-dev** after the version of the module (for example, **7.x-1.x.dev**). This versions are not at all recommended, but in the cases in which there are no final versions of the module and we need one urgently, we will be able to install them and test them, first making a back-up copy of the database.

Beta versions (-beta, for example, **7.x-1.0-beta4**) are usually versions that have been tested more than the versions under development and in some cases they even appear as recommended versions, so we will be able to install them with no problems (albeit always exercising caution).

F9.4

Versions of modules at drupal.org

The recommended versions of the module are displayed in green, in the Recommended releases section.

Downloads

Recommended releases

Version	Downloads	Date	Links
7.x-1.3	tar.gz (58.53 KB) zip (68.51 KB)	2011-Mar-17	Notes
6.x-2.1	tar.gz (57.4 KB) zip (69.74 KB)	2010-Dec-27	Notes

Other releases

Version	Downloads	Date	Links
6.x-1.4	tar.gz (107.51 KB) zip (146.54 KB)	2010-May-29	Notes
5.x-1.3	tar.gz (35.68 KB) zip (43.56 KB)	2010-May-29	Notes

Development releases

Version	Downloads	Date	Links
7.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (58.78 KB) zip (68.78 KB)	2011-May-08	Notes
6.x-2.x-dev	tar.gz (58.17 KB) zip (68.23 KB)	2011-May-08	Notes

Manual installation of modules

In the same way as we saw with the installation of Themes ([Unit 8](#)), we can manually or automatically install the modules. We firstly look at the procedure for manually installing a module.

Once the module has been located and you have checked that it is the right version, we will download it. We have the possibility of downloading it with the **.tar.gz** or **.zip** extensions. After unzipping this file we will have a folder with the name of the module that contains all of the files necessary for installing it.

This folder has to be uploaded by FTP where the additional modules will be hosted, separated from the core modules. The modules can be uploaded at two locations:

/sites/default/modules or /sites/all/modules

Drupal allows you to create multiple websites that use the same Drupal base. In a structure of this type known as **multisite**, we will use the /sites/all/ folder to upload the themes and modules that are common to all of the sites. We make reference to the additional themes and modules at all times, whether contributed by the community or developed by us. The core themes and modules are located in other system folders and these must never be modified.

In general, when we create a website, we will use the **/sites/all/modules** folder for storing the additional modules. This is also the folder that Drupal will use when uploading the modules, utilising the automatic method that we will see below.

Drupal 7 creates the /sites/all/themes and /sites/all/modules folders during the installation. If these folders have not been created, this would be the time to do it.

It is advisable to locate any **readme** file that can be distributed with the module and follow the instructions that the authors of this make, especially if they concern installing and/or subsequently configuring it.

Once the new module has been uploaded via FTP, this will be available in the modules management area of the website (**Administration** ⇒ **Modules**).

The modules are grouped together by functionalities in this list, and the core modules are separated from the other modules.

The modules that are active will have the **Enabled** table to the left of them selected. Some modules appear as active but there is no possibility of unchecking this setting. This is because other modules depend on these and they have to be disabled in the right order. It may also be the case that these are simply **obligatory core modules**, that cannot be disabled. **F9.5**

ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Filter	7.12	Filters content in preparation for display. Required by: Drupal	Help Permissions Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Forum	7.12	Provides discussion forums. Requires: Taxonomy (enabled), Options (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled), Comment (enabled), Text (enabled)	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Help	7.12	Manages the display of online help.	Help

F9.5

Active and inactive modules

From the list of Drupal modules we can consult those that are active and inactive, as well as the relationships with other modules. In the Figure, the **Help** module is active and it can be directly disabled. The **Forum** module is disabled. The **Filter** module cannot be disabled because it is an obligatory Drupal module.

On the other hand, the list of modules shows whether certain modules depend on the installation of a second module in order to enable it and also whether other modules make use of its functionalities.

For example, in **Figure** we **F9.6** can identify the following relationships between modules:

- The **Taxonomy** (enabled) module is necessary for the **Forum** (disabled) module. This is not an error, because the **Forum** module is the one **Taxonomy** needs, not the other way around. The opposite case, **Forum** enabled and **Taxonomy** disabled, cannot arise,

- The **Tracker** (disabled) module depends on the installation and enabling of the **Comment** module (also disabled), and therefore we should first enable the **Comment** module so as to be able to enable the **Tracker** module afterwards.

F9.6**Relationships between modules**

The relationships between modules can be identified from the Drupal modules list.

ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Taxonomy	7.12	Enables the categorization of content. Requires: Options (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled) Required by: Drupal (Field type(s) in use – see Field list), Forum (disabled)	Help Permissions Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Testing	7.12	Provides a framework for unit and functional testing.	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Text	7.12	Defines simple text field types. Requires: Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled) Required by: Drupal (Field type(s) in use – see Field list), Comment (enabled), Forum (disabled), Tracker (disabled)	Help
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Toolbar	7.12	Provides a toolbar that shows the top-level administration menu items and links from other modules.	Help Permissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	Tracker	7.12	Enables tracking of recent content for users. Requires: Comment (enabled), Text (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled)	

Lastly, in order to complete the installation/enabling of the module, and once the possible relationships with other modules have been checked, we will mark the module as **Enabled** and we will click on the **Save configuration** button. The system will install and enable the module or modules selected and it will tell us about incident occurring during this process.

We can also access the **uninstall process** from the modules list. Generally speaking, it is enough to disable a module, but in some cases it could be of interest to us to erase all traces of the module, including the tables or fields from the database and the stored data. The list of the modules that can be uninstalled will be displayed from the **Uninstall** tab.

F9.7**Uninstallation of modules**

List of modules likely to be completely uninstalled.

Home » Administration » Modules		
Modules		
LIST	UPDATE	UNINSTALL
The uninstall process removes all data related to a module. To uninstall a module, you must first disable it on the main Modules page .		
UNINSTALL	NAME	DESCRIPTION
<input type="checkbox"/>	Blog	Enables multi-user blogs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Book	Allows users to create and organize related content in an outline.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Overlay	Displays the Drupal administration interface in an overlay.
Uninstall		

Automatic installation of modules

Drupal 7 allows you to install modules in a more straightforward way. We have a tool, the automatic installation of modules, which allows us to choose between indicating the URL address where the compressed file of the module is located, or to select the file if we already have it disabled on our equipment. We must enable the **Update Manager** module in order for this setting to be available.

To install a module we must access: **F9.8**

Administration ⇒ **Modules** ⇒ **Install new module**

URL Install module
</admin/modules/install>

We have got two options, **Install from an URL**, which must be the one of a zipped file where the module is, or **Upload a file**, which has first been downloaded onto our equipment. In both cases, we can specify compressed files with the **.zip** or **.tar.gz** extensions.

Home » Administration » Modules

Modules

LIST **UPDATE** **UNINSTALL**

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: `zip tar tgz gz bz2`.

Install from a URL

For example: `http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz`

Or

Upload a module or theme archive to install

Seleccionar archivo No se ha...archivo

For example: `name.tar.gz` from your local computer

Install

F9.8

Automatic modules installation tool We can install a module in two easy steps, stating its URL path or by uploading the path from our equipment. In this case we are installing the Dossier theme, available at the [Drupal.org](#) repository.

When we click on **Install**, Drupal will do what is necessary to download and install the module, and if everything goes well it will display a message telling us this. A message will also be displayed if there is an error, such as the stated URL path not being correct.

We must take account of the fact that the modules that are installed using this method are stored at **/sites/all/modules**, in case we want to access them at any time.

Once the module has been installed, we still have to go back to the **Modules** page in order to check the enable box and then click on **Save configuration**. After this step, the module will be installed and enabled on our site.

9.5 Configuring modules

Although the process of installing and enabling one module is usually common to all of them, we will find significant differences when it comes to configuring and completing each module.

To start, the installation and enabling of a module may generate the following:

- **New settings on the Administration menu.** To find these new settings generated by the module that installed, we recommend that you use the view by modules function of the administration area (URL **admin/index**).
- **New blocks.** Some modules generate new blocks that are ready to be used. These blocks will appear as disabled by default, and therefore you will need to go to the blocks administration area in order to enable them and promote them to the region of the site that we want.
- **New configuration settings.** And finally, many modules generate new configuration settings integrated into other sections of the site (for example, using new tabs).
- **Permissions.** The modules can generate permissions that we must configure correctly. We will study more about users, roles and permissions in [Unit 10](#).

The best way of making yourself familiar with the installation and configuration of modules is by analysing various practical examples. Two practical cases of installing and configuring modules that are not very complex will be shown below.

Throughout the course we will study additional modules that are more complex that will enable us to build websites that are really professional and with advanced functionalities.

Practical case 9.1

Installing and configuring the Poll module

In this first practical case we will install the **Poll** module, which includes the Drupal core. With the Poll module we will be able to create basic polls, which the site users will be able to vote in.

Step 1. Enable the Poll module

The Poll module is included in the Drupal core so we will not have to download it or upload it to the server. To enable the module access **Administration** ⇒ **Modules**, check the **Poll** module as **Enabled** and then click on **Save the configuration**. Once the installation has been done, a message will be displayed on the screen indicating whether the operation has been carried out correctly or any error has taken place.

Step 2. Configuration of permissions

We have to then configure the permissions associated with the module for the profiles defined on the website. While we look at the management of users and permissions in more detail in [Unit 10](#), we can here access:

Administration \Rightarrow People [Permissions tab]

URL Permissions
</admin/people/permissions>

Figure F9.9 lists the permissions associated with the **Poll module**.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Poll			
Vote on polls	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cancel and change own votes	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View voting results	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

F9.9

Practical case 9.1

Poll module permissions

We must configure the permissions associate with the Poll module for the roles available on the site.

For the time being we allow both anonymous and registered users to be able to vote in the polls. Furthermore, registered users will be able to cancel their votes. This configuration means that only the site user administrator will be able to view the results of the votes. To apply these permissions, check the boxes shown in **Figure F9.9**

Figure F9.9

The **Poll** module generates a **Poll content type**, which will be used to create Polls. As this is a content type, additional permissions related to the module will also be generated, but within the Node module. The permissions for each type of new content are: create new content, edit own content, edit any content, erase own content and erase any content. **F9.10**

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
<i>Poll: Create new content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Poll: Edit own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Poll: Edit any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Poll: Delete own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Poll: Delete any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

F9.10

Practical case 9.1

Node modules permissions

Permissions of the Node module related to the Poll content type.

After studying [Unit 10](#) we will be able to create more complex structures of roles and permissions. For example, we will be able to create a **Polls manager** role so that, with the right permissions, only the users who have that role assigned are able to create and manager polls.

Step 3. Create a poll

We are now ready to create our first poll. The **Poll** generates a new content type, called a **Poll**, with some particular fields that are completely different from those of the Page or Article content types seen up to now. To create a Poll access: **F9.11**

Administration \Rightarrow Content \Rightarrow Add content [Poll]

URL Add Poll
</node/add/poll>

F9.11

Practical case 9.1

New Poll content type associated with the module

The installation of the **Poll** module is associated with the creation of a new content type called a **Poll**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add content' interface. A red box highlights the 'Poll' option under the 'Content type' section. The 'Poll' description states: 'A poll is a question with a set of possible responses. A poll, once created, automatically provides a simple running count of the number of votes received for each response.'

The poll creation form shows specific fields for this content type.

F9.12

Practical case 9.1

Creation of a new Poll

The creation of a new **Poll** node is very simple; you just need to complete the form corresponding to the new associated content type.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Poll' form. The 'Question' field contains 'What do you think about this course?'. The 'CHOICE' table has five rows with 'Excellent', 'Very Good', 'Good', 'Satisfactory', and 'Bad' options, all with a vote count of 0. The 'POLL SETTINGS' section shows 'Active' status and 'Unlimited' duration. The 'Menu settings' section indicates 'Not in menu' and 'Provide a menu link' is unchecked. The 'Revision information' section shows 'No revision'. The 'URL path settings' section shows 'No alias'. The 'Comment settings' section shows 'Open'. The 'Authoring information' section shows 'By admin'. The 'Publishing options' section shows 'Published, Promoted to front page'. At the bottom are 'Save' and 'Preview' buttons.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

The fields of the Poll content type are:

- **Question.** This is the question that we ask to those polled.
- **Options.** These are the possible replies that the users who are polled can select. We can add an “unlimited” number of possible replies, using the **More options** button when we have used up the available option fields.
- **The vote counter.** This is the number of votes that each reply has received. This will be being completed as the users send their votes.
- **Poll status.** This makes it possible to close or open the poll manually.
- **Duration of the poll.** This makes it possible to set a time period in which the poll will remain open, after which it will close automatically.

In addition to these specific fields you can configure the rest of the settings studied above for other content types: Menu settings, Revision information, URL path settings, Comments settings, Authoring information, Publishing options.

Assign the URL alias "**poll-course**" to the poll but don't promote it to the front page.

Once the poll has been published it is now possible to view it on our website like any other node (www.example.com/encuesta-curso). On the same page of the poll we will have access to Edit, Results and Votes. **F9.13**

What do you think about this course?

[View](#) [Edit](#) [Results](#) [Votes](#)

Submitted by [admin](#) on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 19:50

- Excellent
- Very Good
- Good
- Satisfactory
- Bad

[Vote](#)

F9.13

Practical case 9.1 New poll published

The node created of the **Poll** type is associated with additional tabs such as **Results** and **Votes**.

The **View tab** shows the poll and it invites the user to send his vote. The **Results tab** shows the results of the poll to date. When the user votes, the results will be shown in the **View tab**, because the poll will cease to be available (unless his vote is cancelled). The **Results tab** disappears after the vote, because this information will be displayed in the **View tab**.

Finally, the **Votes** tab shows the users who have voted and the option that they have chosen. In the case of anonymous users, the vote is controlled by IP, and therefore it will not be possible to vote twice from the same IP, accessing as an anonymous user.

These links will be available for the user administrator and for the users with the right permissions, as we will study in **Unit 10**.

Step 4. Enable the poll block

As we have already stated above, some modules generate new blocks during the installation process. This is the case of the **Poll module**, which generates the "**Most recent poll**" block. The block will display the latest published poll.

To enable this block we have to access the blocks administration: **F9.14**

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Blocks**

F9.14

Practical case 9.1

Most recent poll Block

We can enable the **Most recent poll** module from the blocks management area.

BLOCK	REGION	OPERATIONS
Sidebar first		
User login	Sidebar first	configure
Search form	Sidebar first	configure
Most recent poll*	Sidebar first	configure

This enables the **Most recent poll** block and shows it in the left-hand column of the site. **F9.15**

F9.15

Practical case 9.1

Final poll

Publication of the poll in the left-hand column of the site (**Most recent poll** block).

Practical case 9.2

Installing and configuring the External Links module

The **External Links** module is used, in site contents, to differentiate between internal links and external links. The module identifies all of the external links to the site and it adds the  icon to them. It also differentiates the links that point to an e-mail address, using the  icon.

Another interesting application of this module is that it will enable us to mark new links that have certain characteristics as external and open them in a new window. By way of an example, in this practical case, we will make all of the links to PDF files be considered to be external, and in addition to flagging them with the relevant icon, they are opened in a new window.

Step 1. Installation and configuration of the External Links module

The **External Links** module is available to be downloaded in the Drupal modules repository. You can search for this by its name or download it directly at:

<http://drupal.org/project/extlink>

We will install it using the automatic modules installation tool, available at **Administration**⇒**Modules**⇒**Install new module**. We will introduce the URL address of the compressed file of the module at **Install from an URL**. To obtain this URL we locate the latest stable version of the module, we click on some of the *tar.gz* or *zip* links with the right-hand button and we select "Copy link address" (this may vary a little depending on the web browser that we are using).

Once installed, we have to enable the module from **Administration**⇒**Modules**, by clicking on the **Enabled** box and then on **Save configuration**.

Step 2. Configuration of the External Links module

To configure the module we have to go to: **F9.16**

Administration⇒**Configuration**⇒**User interface**⇒**External links**

We will enable the following settings:

URL [Configure External Links](/admin/config/user-interface/extlink)
</admin/config/>
[user-interface/extlink](#)

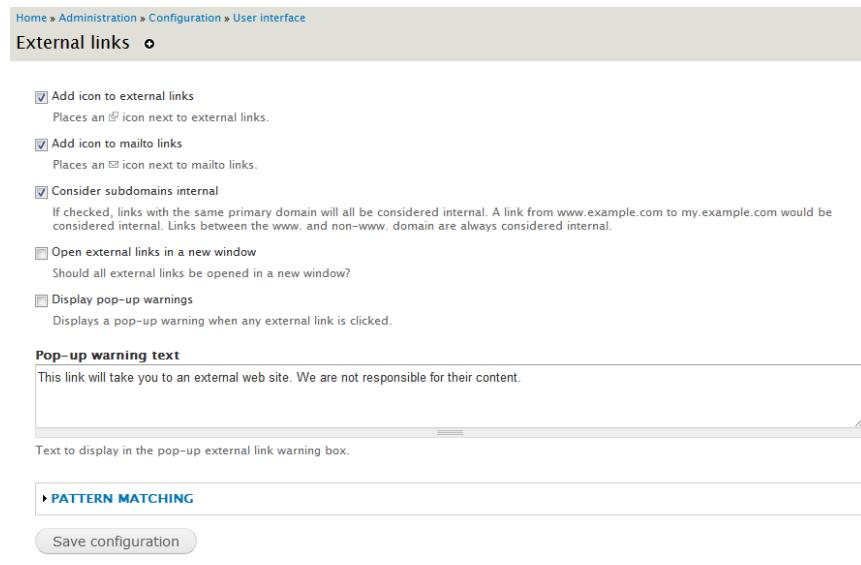
- **Add icon to external links.** Add the  icon to the external links.
- **Add icon to mailto links.** Add the  icon to the mailto links.
- **Open external links in a new window.** The external links will be opened in a new window.

F9.16**Practical case 9.2****Configuration of External Links**

With **External Links** we can get an  icon displayed next to the external links.

We can also add an  icon next to the e-mail addresses.

The external links can be opened in new windows.



External links

Add icon to external links
Places an  icon next to external links.

Add icon to mailto links
Places an  icon next to mailto links.

Consider subdomains internal
If checked, links with the same primary domain will all be considered internal. A link from www.example.com to my.example.com would be considered internal. Links between the www. and non-www. domain are always considered internal.

Open external links in a new window
Should all external links be opened in a new window?

Display pop-up warnings
Displays a pop-up warning when any external link is clicked.

Pop-up warning text
This link will take you to an external web site. We are not responsible for their content.
Text to display in the pop-up external link warning box.

PATTERN MATCHING

Save configuration

Step3. Testing the functioning of External Links

If we browse through the site it is certain that we will find some external links that the external link icon has been added to. In order to ensure ourselves that the module is functioning correctly we are going to create a new node, of the news type, with the following characteristics:

- Content type: **News**
- URL alias: **news3**
- Title: **Expert in Drupal 7**
- Body: Write at text that includes an external link and a link to electronic mail. You can include the following HTML code:

```
<a href="http://www.forcontu.com/experto-drupal-7" title="Expert in Drupal 7">More about the Expert in Drupal 7 course</a>.
```

```
If you need further information you can get in touch at the mail address<a href="mailto:info@example.com" title="Contact">info@example.com</a>.
```

- Attach a PDF file.
- Complete the rest of the obligatory news fields.

Once the news has been published, you will be able to check that the icon relating to each one of the links has been added. **F9.17**

Expert in Drupal 7

Submitted by admin on Wed, 01/22/2014 - 10:16

Opening:

Forcontu has a wide experience in Drupal training both for beginners and for professional developers. With Forcontu's "Expert in Drupal 7" course you will acquire the necessary skills to create and manage your own website.



Forcontu has a wide experience in Drupal training both for beginners and for professional developers. With Forcontu's "Expert in Drupal 7" course you will acquire the necessary skills to create and manage your own website.

[More about the Expert in Drupal 7 course](#).

If you need further information you can get in touch at the mail address info@example.com.

PDF File:

[Forcontu - Expert in Drupal 7.pdf](#)

Step 4. Open PDF files as external links

As we have already mentioned above, the **External Links** module allows us to consider the links that meet certain conditions as external. We will later configure this so that all of the links to PDF files are considered to be external, flagging them with the relevant icon and these are opened in a new window.

Look at the link to the **News in PDF** in **Figure F9.17**

No differentiator icon is shown as this is an internal link.

To change this behavior, go back to the configuration of the **External Links** module, in:

Administration⇒ **Configuration**⇒ **User interface**⇒ **External links**

URL [Configure External Links](/admin/config/user-interface/extlink)
[/admin/config/
user-interface/extlink](/admin/config/user-interface/extlink)

This displays the Pattern Matching tab that you will find at the end of the page and in the **Include links matching the pattern** option, stating the text ".pdf". In this way we will be indicating that all of the links whose URL has the ".pdf" pattern will be flagged as external. **F9.18**

F9.18

Practical case 9.2

Use of patterns with External Links

Using common expressions we can get certain links to be considered as external or internal.

PATTERN MATCHING

External links uses patterns (regular expressions) to match the "href" property of links.

Here are some common patterns.

Common special characters:

All special characters (`\$. ? () / * +`) must also be escaped with backslashes. Patterns are not case-sensitive. Any pattern supported by JavaScript[®] may be used.

Exclude links matching the pattern

Enter a regular expression for links that you wish to exclude from being considered external.

Include links matching the pattern

Enter a regular expression for internal links that you wish to be considered external.

[Guardar configuración](#)

Finally we will check that the functioning is what is expected, going back to the content that was previously created. The external link icon will now be shown next to the PDF file link. **F9.19**

F9.19

Practical case 9.2

PDF files as external links

Once the module has been configured, the links to PDF files will always be considered to be external files and they will be opened in a new window.

Expert in Drupal 7

Submitted by admin on Wed, 01/22/2014 - 10:16

Opening:

Forcontu has a wide experience in Drupal training both for beginners and for professional developers. With Forcontu's "Expert in Drupal 7" course you will acquire the necessary skills to create and manage your own website.



Forcontu has a wide experience in Drupal training both for beginners and for professional developers. With Forcontu's "Expert in Drupal 7" course you will acquire the necessary skills to create and manage your own website.

[More about the Expert in Drupal 7 course](#).

If you need further information you can get in touch at the mail address info@example.com.

PDF File:

[Forcontu - Expert in Drupal 7.pdf](#)

With the **External Links** module, we have modified the default behavior of Drupal with the external links. There is no doubt that this is a way of helping the navigation for the site visitors, because they will know at all times when a link will lead them to an external page, and we can also assure ourselves that all of the external pages are opened in a new window.

We have seen an example of how simple it is to add functionalities to the website using the modules. In addition, we have been able to see that the configuration process may be very different for each module, which will compel us to study these separately. We will study many other modules that extend the Drupal functionalities in the coming Units and levels.

10

Management of users, roles and permissions

In the earlier units we have browsed through Drupal with the **administrator user (admin)**. We have only seldom ended the user administrator session and browsed through the site as an **anonymous user** to check the functioning of some modules.

In **assigning permissions** related to modules we have also initiated the only two roles existing in the system, the **anonymous user** role and the **authenticated user** role.

Users, roles and permissions are the final piece of the control structure we've been studying that unlocks the power of Drupal CMS.

Each user can have one or more roles assigned. By default, every user who registers and identifies himself in the system must have an authenticated user role. Each role can have any number of permissions assigned to it from among those available on the website. We have already seen that every time we enable a new module it is common for new permissions associated with this to be generated.

In summary, the permissions refer to particular module functionalities, which are the ones in charge of generating them, and are associated with the roles. Users will have permission for these functionalities or not, depending on the roles that have been assigned to each one of them.

Only the administrator user, which is not a role in itself, can skip this procedure, by having access to all of the Drupal functionalities and the modules installed. That is to say, the administrator user has all of the permissions, unless we specify to the contrary. In this unit we will go into greater depth about these concepts, studying **how users, roles and permissions are managed**. We will also see how to define **access rules** for permitting or preventing certain users from having access to certain elements.

Unit contents

10.1 Creating and editing users accounts	166
10.2 Configuring the user accounts.....	174
10.3 Establishing roles and access permissions.....	179
10.4 Additional user fields	184

10

10.1 Creating and editing users accounts

Note

Can't you see the Login?

If you cannot see the **Login** block, this may be because of two reasons:

1. The **Login** block is not enabled (assigned to a region of the theme).
2. You have already logged in as another user (for example, as the **admin** user).

Drupal users can be created in two different ways: on the one hand, any visitor can initiate the **create new account** process on the site, although it will be necessary for the administrator to activate an account; on the other hand, the site administrator user may be the person who registers the user directly.

As we shall see later on, it is possible to modify the **site registration policy**, either so that users can create accounts with no need for approval, or so that the site does not accept the registration of users, in such a way that only the administrators can create new accounts.

Creating a new user account (by a visitor)

In **Figure F10.1** we show the **Login** block from where registered users will be able to access the site.

This block is only visible when we access the page as an anonymous user, that is to say, we have not logged in with our user account on the site. This is why if we are functioning as the administration user (admin) at such a time, we have to click on **Log out** in order to view the block. We also need to take account of the fact that the block must be active and assigned to a region of the theme.

F10.1

Login Block

If the site policy permits this, any visitor will be able to start his registration process by clicking on the **Create new account** link.

The screenshot shows a Drupal website with a blue header bar containing the text "Learn Drupal with Forcontu". Below the header, there is a "Home" button. On the left side, there is a "User login" form with a red border. The form has fields for "Username*" and "Password*", both marked with a red asterisk indicating they are required. Below the fields are two links: "Create new account" and "Request new password". At the bottom of the form is a "Log in" button. To the right of the login form, there is a "Headline 1" section with the text "Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20". Below this text is a small image of two people working at a computer and the URL "www.forcontu.com".

The **Login** block also includes a link to **Create new account** for those visitors who wish to register on the site.

The **Create new account** link will take the visitor to the page with the **/user/register** URL, **F10.2** where he will only have to state his **user name** and a valid **electronic mail address**. A **welcome e-mail** with additional instructions will be sent to that account.

User account

[Create new account](#) [Log in](#) [Request new password](#)

Username *

Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.

E-mail address *

A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.

[Create new account](#)

If the data entered are accepted by the system, a notification will be sent indicating that the data have been correctly received and that an email has been sent to the stated address. The new user is also informed that the account is pending approval by the administrator. **F10.3**

Home

Thank you for applying for an account. Your account is currently pending approval by the site administrator.
In the meantime, a welcome message with further instructions has been sent to your e-mail address.

User login
Username *

Password *

[• Create new account](#)
[• Request new password](#)

Headline 1
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 14:20

www.forcontu.com
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum sodales, mauris a rhoncus molestie, turpis

In **Figure F10.4** we show the e-mail message that the user will receive by default.

Account details for demouser at Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner (pending admin approval)

info@mysite.com 12:12 (0 minutes ago)

to me

demouser,

Thank you for registering at Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner . Your application for an account is currently pending approval. Once it has been approved, you will receive another e-mail containing information about how to log in, set your password, and other details.

-- Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner team

F10.2

Create new account

The basic site registration form only requests a user name and a valid electronic mail address, which cannot be recorded (repeated) in the system.

F10.3

User accounting awaiting validation

Message informing about the creation of the account in the absence of validation by the administrator.

F10.4

Welcome e-mail

The user will receive a welcome e-mail in his e-mail account.

According to the default registration policy, the user will have to wait for his account to be approved by the administrator in order to be able to access the site with the new account that is created.

Editing user accounts (by the administrator)

Since the account is **awaiting approval**, we will enter the site as the **administrator user** (admin) in order to activate it.

The administration of users of the site is done from:

URL People
/admin/people

F10.5

User administration

In **People**, we can view the request for new accounts, approving them or rejecting them.

Administration⇒ People

As is shown in **Figure F10.5** the new user created appears by default with **blocked** status,

The screenshot shows the 'User administration' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'LIST' and 'PERMISSIONS'. Below the tabs, there's a search bar labeled 'People' and a link to '+ Add user'. Underneath, there are two sections: 'SHOW ONLY USERS WHERE' and 'UPDATE OPTIONS'. The 'SHOW ONLY USERS WHERE' section contains dropdown menus for 'role' (any), 'permission' (any), and 'status' (any), with a 'Filter' button. The 'UPDATE OPTIONS' section has a dropdown menu set to 'Unblock the selected users' and an 'Update' button. The main area displays a table of users with columns: checkbox, USERNAME, STATUS, ROLES, MEMBER FOR, LAST ACCESS, and OPERATIONS. The table shows three users: 'demouser2' (blocked), 'demouser' (active), and 'admin' (active). The 'admin' user is highlighted in blue.

	USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	demouser2	blocked		2 min 21 sec	never	edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	demouser	active		6 hours 23 min	5 hours 34 min ago	edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	active	• administrator	7 hours 19 min	3 sec ago	edit

Note

User search filters

As new modules related to user administration are installed, it is possible for new filters to be incorporated into this page in order to facilitate the search for users.

From this page we will be able to manage the user accounts created on the site, and to do this we will have the search filters set by role, permission and/or status to help us.

The administration area also makes it possible to carry out actions on several users at the same time (selected users). In particular, this allows for the:

- Unblocking of the selected users
- Blocking the selected users
- Cancelling the selected user accounts
- Adding a particular role to the selected users
- Deleting a particular role of the selected users

By clicking on the new user's **edit** link we will be able to edit and activate the account. **F10.6**

Home > demouser

demouser [VIEW](#) [EDIT](#) [SHORTCUTS](#)

Username *
demouser
Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.

E-mail address *
demo@example.com
A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.

Password
 Password strength:

Confirm password

To change the current user password, enter the new password in both fields.

Status
 Blocked
 Active

Roles
 authenticated user
 administrator

MASQUERADE SETTINGS
Enter the users this user is able to masquerade as

 Enter a comma separated list of user names that this user can masquerade as.

PICTURE
Upload picture
 No se ha... archivo
 Your virtual face or picture. Pictures larger than 1024x1024 pixels will be scaled down.

LOCALE SETTINGS
Time zone
 Europe/London: Monday, February 13, 2012 - 20:06 +0000
 Select the desired local time and time zone. Dates and times throughout this site will be displayed using this time zone.

[Save](#) [Cancel account](#)

We will also be able to adjust some settings of this account:

- **User name:** This is the user name of the new registration, which must be unique.
- **Email address:** An electronic mail address associated with the new account, which must also be unique.
- **Password:** The password for the new user can be authenticated on the website.
- **Status:** Makes it possible to **block** or **activate** the account.
- **Roles:** This is possible to indicate which roles the user will have.
- **Language:** This makes it possible to indicate the default language for the e-mail messages in the new account.
- **Upload image:** We can associate an image with this user.
- **Time zone:** This is used to adjust the time zone of the site to the user's preferences, and will show the dates and times according to that time zone.

F10.6

Activate user account

From the **edit** link, associated with a user account, we will be able to access the editing of this and modify any of its values.

The status field enables us to activate or block a user account.

Other values that we can change are: user name, electronic mail address, password, user language, image and time zone.

Once we have set the **Status** at **Active** and we have saved the change to the new account, the list of user accounts on the **People** page will appear as updated, where the user status now appears as **active**.

First access and setting of password

An electronic mail **F10.7** has also been sent to the user who requested the account at this time. This e-mail tells him that his account has been approved and he is given a unique link via which he will be able to enter the site for the first time.

F10.7

E-mail reporting account activation

When the new account is approved by a site administrator, the user will be sent an e-mail informing him that his account has been approved.

He is also shown a link that he has to use to enter the site for the first time.

Account details for demouser at Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner (approved)

info@mysite.com to me

demouser,

Your account at Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner has been activated.

You may now log in by clicking this link or copying and pasting it into your browser:

http://intermedio7.lgvalver.aprendedrupal.es/user/reset/11/1390389820/WvEldoPNMtU58od93MXqqFKNjN61Wkh_BDiL3pVFk_

This link can only be used once to log in and will lead you to a page where you can set your password.

After setting your password, you will be able to log in at <http://intermedio7.lgvalver.aprendedrupal.es> in the future using:

username: demouser
password: Your password

-- Learn Drupal 7 - Beginner team

When the user clicks on the e-mail link, the system will oblige him to set a password for future sessions. **F10.8**

F10.8

First Login

Using the electronic mail link we will be able to use the account for the first time. The system will ask for the password for future accesses at this time.

Reset password

This is a one-time login for *demouser* and will expire on *Thu, 01/23/2014 - 12:23*.

Click on this button to log in to the site and change your password.

This login can be used only once.

[Log in](#)

When he clicks on **Login** **F10.9** the user will be able to indicate the Access password for the site and alter other parameters such as his electronic mail address, the language and the time zone.

This form **F10.9** is not just use during the user registration process, but it can also be utilised in order for the user to modify his details at any time. This will be available for the user from:

User menu ⇒ [My account \[Edit\]](#)

demouser

[View](#) [Edit](#)

Current password

Enter your current password to change the *E-mail address* or *Password*. [Request new password](#).

E-mail address *

A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.

Password

Password strength:

Weak

Confirm password

To make your password stronger:

- Make it at least 6 characters
- Add lowercase letters
- Add uppercase letters
- Add numbers
- Add punctuation

To change the current user password, enter the new password in both fields.

Picture

Upload picture

[Seleccionar archivo](#)

No se ha s...n archivo

Your virtual face or picture. Pictures larger than 1024x1024 pixels will be scaled down.

Locale settings

Time zone

Europe/London: Monday, February 13, 2012 – 20:08 +0000



Select the desired local time and time zone. Dates and times throughout this site will be displayed using this time zone.

[Save](#)

F10.9

Set password and edit account

The user has to set his password when he enters for the first time.

He also has the opportunity to change some of the settings of his account, such as the language chosen for the e-mail messages, his image and time zone.

Creating user accounts (by the administrator)

The administrator user can directly create user accounts from the **People** page, using the **Add user** button. **F10.10**

F10.10

Add user

The administrator can create user accounts directly (Add user)

The screenshot shows the 'People' administration page. At the top right, there are 'LIST' and 'PERMISSIONS' buttons. Below them is a search bar with placeholder text 'Search users'. A red box highlights the '+ Add user' button. Below the search bar is a section titled 'SHOW ONLY USERS WHERE' with three dropdown menus: 'role' set to 'any', 'permission' set to 'any', and 'status' set to 'any'. To the right of these dropdowns is a 'Filter' button. Below this is a section titled 'UPDATE OPTIONS' with a dropdown menu set to 'Unblock the selected users' and an 'Update' button. At the bottom is a table titled 'User list' with columns: USERNAME, STATUS, ROLES, MEMBER FOR, LAST ACCESS, and OPERATIONS. The table contains three rows:

	USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	demouser2	blocked		6 min 45 sec	never	edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	demouser	active		6 hours 28 min	1 min 43 sec ago	edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	active	• administrator	7 hours 24 min	5 sec ago	edit

In this case the administrator has to state all of the user's details, including the access password. By enabling **Notify the user of new account**, that user will be sent an informative e-mail. **F10.11**

F10.11

Create user account

The administrator has to state a valid user name, electronic mail address and password.

In addition it is possible to state which roles the user will have assigned to him, whether the account will be active and whether the system has to notify the user that the account has been created.

This screenshot shows the 'Create user account' form. At the top right are 'LIST' and 'PERMISSIONS' buttons. The form includes fields for 'Username' (with a note: 'Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.'), 'E-mail address' (with a note: 'A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.'), 'Password' (with a note: 'Provide a password for the new account in both fields.'), 'Confirm password' (with a note: 'Provide a password for the new account in both fields.'), 'Status' (radio buttons for 'Blocked' and 'Active'), 'Roles' (checkboxes for 'authenticated user' and 'administrator'), and a 'Notify user of new account' checkbox (which is checked). At the bottom is a 'Create new account' button.

Cancelling a user account

The administrator can cancel a user account from the **Edit** tab of the account (**Cancel account** button at the end of the form).

To cancel an account, the administrator has to determine what will happen with the account and the contents introduced by the user. The options available are: **F10.12**

- **Disable the account and keep its content.** The cancelled account will have the Blocked status and the user will not be able to log in on the site. The contents and comments created by the user before will continue as published. Since the account has not been deleted, the administrator will be able to activate the user account again at any time.
- **Disable the account and unpublish its content.** The cancelled account will have the Blocked status and the user will not be able to log in on the site. The contents and comments created beforehand by the user will be unpublished. The administrator will be able to activate the account and the contents of the user again.
- **Delete the account and make the content belong to an Anonymous user.** The user's account will be completely deleted, and he will disappear from the list of site users. Since the content published has to be associated with a user, the only way of not deleting the user's content and keeping it published is by assigning it to an Anonymous user. This action cannot be undone.
- **Delete the account and its content.** The user account will be completely deleted. This action cannot be undone, and so once the account has been deleted all of the user's details and the contents that have been published will be lost.

Finally, it could be possible to ask the user for confirmation by electronic mail, in such a way that the cancellation will not become effective until he validates the operation.

[Home](#) » *demouser*

Are you sure you want to cancel the account *demouser*? 

F10.12

Cancel user account

When we cancel an account we can select whether this will be deleted or it will just be disabled. We can also decide what will happen with the content that has been published by the user.

When cancelling the account

- Disable the account and keep its content.
 - Disable the account and unpublish its content.
 - Delete the account and make its content belong to the *Anonymous user*.
 - Delete the account and its content.
- Require e-mail confirmation to cancel account.

When enabled, the user must confirm the account cancellation via e-mail.

Select the method to cancel the account above. This action cannot be undone.

[Cancel account](#)

[Cancel](#)

10.2

Configuring the user accounts

From **account settings** we will be able to modify the configuration of the user accounts and the accounts creation/cancellation policy:

URL Account settings
</admin/config/people/accounts>

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **People** ⇒ **Account settings**

In this section we will analyse the configuration settings available.

Accounts creation and cancellation policy

The administrator user will be able to **change the site registration policy** in the **Accounts creation and cancellation** section. **F10.13**

F10.13

Account creation and cancellation settings

There are three registration policies on the site: only the administrator can create an account, visitors can freely create accounts; and visitors can create accounts but they need approval from the administrator.

We can also define the default action when a user account is cancelled.

REGISTRATION AND CANCELLATION

Who can register accounts?

- Administrators only
- Visitors
- Visitors, but administrator approval is required

Require e-mail verification when a visitor creates an account.

New users will be required to validate their e-mail address prior to logging into the site, and will be assigned a system-generated password. With this setting disabled, users will be logged in immediately upon registering, and may select their own passwords during registration.

When cancelling a user account

- Disable the account and keep its content.
- Disable the account and unpublish its content.
- Delete the account and make its content belong to the *Anonymous* user.
- Delete the account and its content.

Users with the *Select method for cancelling account* or *Administer users* permissions can override this default method.

There are three possible strategies, depending on **who can create the user accounts**:

- Only the site administrators can create new user accounts (**Only administrators** setting).
- Visitors can create accounts without approval from the administrator (**Visitors** settings).
- Visitors can create accounts but it is necessary for the administrator to approve these before they can use them (**Visitors, but approval from the administrators is necessary** setting). This system makes it possible for the administrator to have greater control over the site users. This is the setting activated by default following the installation of Drupal.

From **Accounts creation and cancellation** we will also be able to establish what will happen when a **user account is cancelled**. The available options, explained in the previous section, are:

- Disable the account and keep its content.

- Disable the account and unpublish its content.
- Delete the account and attribute all of its content to an Anonymous user.
- Delete the account and its content.

The method selected can only be modified by those users with certain permissions (**Select the method for cancelling the account** or **Manage users**).

Customization settings

Continuing with the **Account settings**, we see some general settings and some related to customization:

- **Anonymous users.** **F10.14** Here we can change the name utilised on the site so that we are referring to an anonymous user. For example, we could use **Visitor** instead of **Anonymous**.
- **Administrator role.** **F10.14** All of the available permissions will be automatically assigned to the administrator role, in both the core modules and in the additional modules that are installed on the site. By default, the role with all of the permissions is **administrator**. Take account of the fact that you change this role you will only be assigned the permissions of the new modules that are installed.

Home » Administration » Configuration » People

Account settings

SETTINGS **MANAGE FIELDS** **MANAGE DISPLAY**

ANONYMOUS USERS

Name *
Anonymous

The name used to indicate anonymous users.

ADMINISTRATOR ROLE

Administrator role
administrator

This role will be automatically assigned new permissions whenever a module is enabled. Changing this setting will not affect existing permissions.

F10.14

Account settings

Among the settings available we can modify the term assigned to anonymous users and change the administrator role, which by default is **administrator**.

Within the **Personalization** group, **F10.15** we can configure the following settings:

- **Enable signatures.** User signatures are utilised in publishing comments. This is a fixed form of text defined by the user that will be added at the end of the comments
- **Enable user pictures.** When enabled, these display new settings that will enable us to configure the dimensions and the weight of the photos uploaded by the users. Certain guidelines can also be written that will show the user when he is going to upload her image, which are useful for preventing inappropriate images being published. By default, users'

photos will be uploaded to the **/sites/default/files/pictures** folder. The system will be responsible for automatically creating the **pictures** folder.

F10.15**Customization of user accounts**

In the Customization section we can configure some of the account viewing settings, such as user signatures and images.

PERSONALIZATION

Enable signatures.
 Enable user pictures.

Picture directory

 Subdirectory in the file upload directory where pictures will be stored.

Default picture

 URL of picture to display for users with no custom picture selected. Leave blank for none.

Picture display style

The style selected will be used on display, while the original image is retained. Styles may be configured in the [Image styles](#) administration area.

Picture upload dimensions
 pixels
 Pictures larger than this will be scaled down to this size.

Picture upload file size
 KB
 Maximum allowed file size for uploaded pictures. Upload size is normally limited only by the PHP maximum post and file upload settings, and images are automatically scaled down to the dimensions specified above.

Picture guidelines

 This text is displayed at the picture upload form in addition to the default guidelines. It's useful for helping or instructing your users.

Configuring electronic mail addresses

We have also seen that when a user creates a new account he will be sent an electronic mail that confirms to him that the account has been created and that it is awaiting approval. Furthermore, when the administrator approves the account, another e-mail will be sent to the user with the site access link for the first time.

From the **Electronic mails** section **F10.16** we can change the content of the e-mails used in the communication with the user during the processes related to his account (registration, blocking, cancellation and password recovery).

E-mails

Welcome (new user created by administrator) Welcome (awaiting approval) Welcome (no approval required) Account activation Account blocked Account cancellation confirmation Account canceled Password recovery	<p>Edit the welcome e-mail messages sent to new member accounts created by an administrator. Available variables are: [site:name], [site:url], [user:name], [user:mail], [site:login-url], [site:url-brief], [user:edit-url], [user:one-time-login-url], [user:cancel-url].</p> <p>Subject</p> <p>An administrator created an account for you at [site:name]</p> <p>Body</p> <p>[user:name],</p> <p>A site administrator at [site:name] has created an account for you. You may now log in by clicking this link or copying and pasting it to your browser:</p> <p>[user:one-time-login-url]</p> <p>This link can only be used once to log in and will lead you to a page where you can set your password.</p> <p>After setting your password, you will be able to log in at [site:login-url] in the future using:</p> <p>username: [user:name]</p>
---	---

[Save configuration](#)

F10.16

Electronic mails

In the electronic mails section we can adjust the e-mails that are sent to users when different events related to their user accounts take place.

The messages that we can modify are:

- **Welcome (new user created by an administrator).** This is the message that the user will receive when the administrator directly creates his account.
- **Welcome (awaiting approval).** This is sent when a visitor creates an account but it is necessary to have approval from the administrator.
- **Welcome (with no need for approval).** This is sent when a visitor creates an account and it is unnecessary to have approval from the administrator.
- **Account activation.** This is sent when the user account is activated. A box makes it possible to establish whether or not the users are informed by sending them this message.

D7/D6 Comparison**Access rules**

The access rules that Drupal 6 incorporated into the core disappear in Drupal 7. In place of that, the system is simpler and it just integrates the functionality of block Access by IP address.

In order to integrate a system of access rules that is similar to that of Drupal 6 into Drupal 7, we can use the **User restrictions** module. (this module will be studied in Unit 33 of the Intermediate level).

URL IP address blocking

</admin/config/people/ip-blocking>

F10.17**IP address blocking**

We can specify a list of IP addresses from which access to our page will be completely restricted.

- **Account blocked.** This is sent when the user account is blocked. A box makes it possible to establish whether or not the users are informed by sending them this message.
- **Confirmation of account cancellation.** If a user asks to cancel his own account he will be sent this mail asking for the confirmation of this action. He may also receive this e-mail when the administrator cancels the account by checking the box for requesting confirmation from the user.
- **Account cancelled.** This message is sent to a user when his account has been cancelled for him. A box makes it possible to establish whether or not the users are informed by sending them this message.
- **Password recovery.** This message is sent to the user when he asks for his account password to be reset.

A list of replacement variables available is shown in each e-mail message. These variables are strings that we can use when we refer to certain values related to the user account. For example, if we use the variable **[user:name]** in the Welcome message, this will be replaced by the **user name** when the e-mail is sent.

IP address blocking

Drupal incorporates a system for restricting access from certain IP addresses. We can use this if we are recording unwanted accesses from certain IP addresses. This setting is available from: **F10.17**

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **IP address blocking**

Home » Administration » Configuration » People
IP address blocking

IP addresses listed here are blocked from your site. Blocked addresses are completely forbidden from accessing the site and instead see a brief message explaining the situation.

IP address

 Enter a valid IP address.

Add

BLOCKED IP ADDRESSES	OPERATIONS
66.249.72.100	delete
66.249.73.99	delete

Establishing roles and access permissions

10.3

A **role** is defined as a set of rules that are automatically applied to all of the users that have this assigned to them. In this way, Drupal permits the site administrator to manage **what each user can** and **cannot do** in a more straightforward and organised manner.

Drupal initially has three user roles:

- **Anonymous user.** This role is employed for the users who do not have an account or who have not been authenticated (general visitors). This cannot be deleted from the system.
- **Registered user.** This role is the one that is automatically assigned to all of the users who have an account and have logged on to the site with that account. Therefore, as a minimum, all of the registered users will have this role and they can furthermore have other additional roles assigned to them. This role cannot be deleted from the system either.
- **Administrator.** This role is associated with the system administrator user. Drupal will assign all of the available permissions to this role, for both the core modules and the additional modules that are installed on the site. This role can be edited and even deleted, although this is not advisable.

In addition to the default roles, it is possible to create new roles in order to differentiate the tasks that the users can carry out. It is appropriate to define a set of roles that are sufficiently descriptive so that, just by knowing about the role that a user has assigned to him, we can deduce which actions he can do on the site.

Examples of well-defined roles are:

- **Newsletter manager**, to define the permissions necessary so that the user with this role can manage the site newsletters.
- **Managing editor**, to define the permissions necessary in order to be able to manage all of the site contents.
- **Writer**, to define the permissions necessary so as to be able to write on the site but not publish the contents. This means that the contents sent by the Writer will have to be validated and published by the Editor or managing Editor.
- **Forums moderator**, to define the permissions necessary in order to be able to moderate the forums: publish, modify and delete messages and replies from the users.
- **Polls manager**, to define the permissions necessary to be able to manage the polls: publish our polls, end polls, delete them, etc.
- **Participant**, to define the users that can participate in the portal but without management permissions. For example, they will be able to publish in the forums and comment on the contents published by the portal managing users.

Managing roles

The managing of roles is carried out from: **F10.18**

URL Roles

/admin/people/permissions/roles

Administration ⇒ **People** ⇒ **Permissions** ⇒ **Roles**

From this page we can access the full list of roles, which allows for:

- The **creation of new roles**, writing the name of the new role in the text box available beneath the list of roles and clicking on the **Add role** button.
- The **editing of an existing role**, clicking on the **edit role** link.
- The **assigning of permissions** to the role, using the **edit permissions** link

F10.18

Roles

The correct definition of a set of **roles** makes it possible to adjust the Drupal security and administration in detail.

NAME	OPERATIONS
anonymous user (locked)	edit permissions
authenticated user (locked)	edit permissions
administrator	edit role edit permissions
moderator	edit role edit permissions
editor	edit role edit permissions

It is important to place particular stress on the fact that **users can have various roles**. This is fundamental when it comes to **deciding which actions** a particular user **can carry out**, because if he has various roles, the permissions associated with each one of these will be combined in order to create a complete map of user permissions.

Assigning of permissions to roles

As has already been mentioned above, the **permissions** associated with each role define which actions can be carried out by the users who have that particular role assigned to them.

The assigning of permissions to the different roles can be adjusted manually. The modules are responsible for creating their own permissions, and these will appear directly on the portal when additional new modules are installed.

To access the managing of the permissions of a role, click on the **edit permissions** link of a role, or we can also directly access managing permissions for all roles from: **F10.19**

Administration ⇒ People ⇒ Permissions

In either of the two cases we will come to a complete form that is going to make it possible to manage the permissions of a specific role (by accessing from the **edit permissions** button of a particular role) or various roles (by accessing managing permissions directly).

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR	MODERATOR	EDITOR
Block					
Administer blocks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Comment					
Administer comments and comment settings	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
View comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
Post comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
Skip comment approval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
Edit own comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The left-hand column shows the permissions available, grouped together by the module that they belong to (the one that has created them). On the right there will be as many columns as there are roles defined on the site (as a minimum, the columns corresponding to the **anonymous user** and **registered user** roles will always appear).

A checkbox is displayed in the intersection between a permission and a role, which makes it possible to enable or disable the relationship between both of them. When a table is enabled, this means that the role of the column has the row permission assigned to it.

In order to configure the permissions we can check and uncheck those that we consider opportune and then click on **Save permissions** at the end of the page, saving all of the assignments carried out.

Whenever a new module is installed, it is necessary to consult the list of permissions for checking whether the module has created new permissions. If this is the case, we will have to configure the permissions for the existing roles, or if we consider this necessary, create the relevant new roles.

URL Permissions

/admin/people/permissions

F10.19**Managing permissions**

The correct definition of a set of **permissions** associated with a particular role makes it possible to control the behavior of the users on a website

Note**Inheritance of permissions**

All of the additional roles created on the site will be directly inherited by the permissions assigned to the **Registered user** role.

This automatic inheritance is represented by means of the enabled selection table, with no possibility of disabling it. To be able to modify these permissions, it is necessary to first disable the assignment to the **Registered User**.

To finish, you have to state that the assigning of permissions is generally associated with a series of actions, the most common ones of which are:

- **Administer:** This makes it possible for the users to completely manage the functionalities of a module. This is a very delicate type of permission and it can only be assigned to users we trust.
 - o For example, the **administer URL alias** permission of the **path** module makes it possible for users to edit, create and delete URL aliases, as if he were the administrator user.
- **Access or View:** This allows users to use or view the functionalities of a module but not to manage it.
 - o For example, the **View comments** permission of the **Comment** module allows users to access or view the comments that have been published, but it does not allow them to create the, edit them or delete them.
- **Create:** This generally permits users to create certain content types.
 - o For example, the **Basic page: Create new content** permission of the **Node** module permits users to create new forum topics, but it does not allow them to edit or delete the basic pages created by they themselves or other users.
- **Edit (any/own):** This permits users to edit the contents of a particular type, created by any user (**any**) or just the own contents (**own**).
 - o For example, the **Article: Edit any content** permission of the **Node** module permits the users to edit all of the articles. However, the **Article: Edit own content** permission only makes it possible to edit the articles published by the users.
- **Erase (any/own):** This makes it possible for users to delete the contents of a particular type, created by any (**any**) or just their own contents (**own**).
 - o For example, the **Article permission: Erase any content** allows you to delete any article, whether your own or created by other users. The **Article permission: Erase own content** only allows you to delete the articles created you yourself as the user.

Assigning of roles to users

Once we have studied how to create the roles and configure the permissions, we just have to assign those roles to the users of our website. We can carry out the assigning in two ways from the **Administration⇒People** page.

The first one of these is done by first selecting the users who we want to assign a particular role to, and then the lists of settings for Update options is displayed, and choose the appropriate role within **Add a role to the selected users**. We then click on the **Update button**. **F10.20**

Home > Administration

People

LIST **PERMISSIONS**

Add user

SHOW ONLY USERS WHERE

role	any
permission	any
status	any

Filter

UPDATE OPTIONS

Unblock the selected users

- Masquerade as user
- Unblock the selected users
- Block the selected users
- Cancel the selected user accounts
- Add a role to the selected users**
- administrator
- moderator**
- editor
- Remove a role from the selected users**
- administrator
- moderator
- editor

	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
administrator	17 min 17 sec	never	edit
moderator	6 hours 38 min	12 min 15 sec ago	edit
editor	7 hours 34 min	43 sec ago	edit

F10.20

Assignment of roles from the list of users

By displaying the **Update settings** list we will be able to assign or unassign a particular role to all of the users previously selected on the list of users.

The second way is by accessing the **individual editing of each user** (edit link) where we will be able to enable or disable the user roles. **F10.21**

Home » demouser

demouser

VIEW **EDIT** **SHORTCUTS**

Username *

Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.

E-mail address *

A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.

Password

Confirm password

Password strength:

To change the current user password, enter the new password in both fields.

Status
 Blocked
 Active

Roles

- authenticated user
- administrator
- moderator
- editor

F10.21

Assignment of roles from the user editing

We can access user editing in order to enable and/or disable their roles.

10.4 Additional user fields

In **Unit 5** we saw how to define new fields associated with the contents types. In Drupal 7, both the content types and the users are considered to be **entities**, and thanks to the **Fields** module it is possible to assign additional fields of different types to them: text, image, date, number, etc.

The fields associated with the user accounts are managed from: **F10.22**

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Account settings** ⇒ **Manage fields**

Consult **section 5.2** to check how to add new fields.

URL User fields
</admin/config/people/accounts/fields>

F10.22

User fields

Two additional fields, Name and Surnames, have been added in the Figure that will come to form part of the user form.

LABEL	NAME	FIELD	WIDGET	OPERATIONS
+	User name and password	account	User module account form elements.	
+	Timezone	timezone	User module timezone form element.	
+	First name	field_firstname	Text	Text field edit delete
+	Last name	field_lastname	Text	Text field edit delete
Add new field <input type="text"/> Label <input type="text"/> Field name (a-z, 0-9, _) Type of data to store. <input type="button" value="Select a field type -"/> <input type="button" value="Select a widget -"/> Add existing field <input type="text"/> Label <input type="button" value="Select an existing field -"/> Field to share <input type="button" value="Select a widget -"/>				

Save

One difference applicable to the user fields is the **Display on user registration form** setting. By checking this setting (or by stating that the **field is required**), the field **F10.23** will be displayed in a user account creation form, along with the user name and the e-mail address.

F10.23

Show field in the registration form

By clicking this option the field will be displayed on the user registration form.

USER SETTINGS
 These settings apply only to the *First name* field when used in the *User* type.

Label *

Required field
 Display on user registration form.
 This is compulsory for 'required' fields.

Figure F10.24 shows the registration form (Create new account) where two additional fields, **Name** and **Surnames** have been added.

User account

[Create new account](#) [Log in](#) [Request new password](#)

Username *

Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.

E-mail address *

A valid e-mail address. All e-mails from the system will be sent to this address. The e-mail address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by e-mail.

First name *

Last name *

[Create new account](#)

F10.24

Additional fields in the registration form

The additional fields that have been marked as "display as user in the registration form" are displayed.

The fields created in the user account but that are not displayed in the registration form will be available when the account is edited from **My account**.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

11 Taxonomy

Taxonomy is the science of classification. We use the concept of taxonomy in Drupal to refer to the taxonomy module, integrated into the core, which allows for the site contents to be classified.

In addition to studying how categories are created and how they are assigned to the contents, we will look at other additional modules that improve on or make use of taxonomy.

Comparative D7/D6

Assigning of taxonomy to nodes

We will find the main difference as compared to Drupal 6 in the way of assigning a vocabulary to a content type.

We managed which content types were associated before from the taxonomy. In Drupal 7, the vocabularies are assigned to the entities by adding a new field of the **Term reference** type. This system is more flexible than the previous one, because it will enable us to assign taxonomy terms, not just to the content types, but also in general to any of the entities defined (content types, users, etc.).

Unit contents

11.1 Vocabularies and terms	188
11.2 Categorising the contents	192
11.3 Additional modules.....	200



11.1

Vocabularies and terms

The Drupal taxonomy system is going to enable us to organise and categorise the contents of our website.

The Drupal **Taxonomy** module comprises two fundamental elements: the **vocabularies** (or categories) and the **terms** (or tags). Each vocabulary can be grouped together into one or more terms.

By means of the **vocabularies**, Drupal enables us to categorise the nodes, and by means of the **terms**, we can describe particular aspects of these. For example, on a website dedicated to literature we could have the following structure of vocabularies and terms for the books:

- **Vocabulary 1:** Genre
 - o **Term 1:** Fantasy
 - o **Term 2:** Novel
 - o **Term 3:** Poetry
 - o **Term 4:** Suspense
 - o ...
- **Vocabulary 2:** Author
 - o **Term 1:** Gabriel García Márquez
 - o **Term 2:** Edgar Allan Poe
 - o **Term 3:** Julio Verne
 - o **Term 4:** Dan Brown
 - o ...
- **Vocabulary 3:** Country of the author
 - o **Term 1:** Spain
 - o **Term 2:** England
 - o **Term 3:** France
 - o **Term 4:** United States
 - o ...

This categorisation would enable us, among other options:

- To obtain a list of books of the Novel genre.
- To obtain a list with all of the books by Dan Brown.
- To obtain a list with all of the books of the Novel genre written by Spanish or French authors.

In order to utilize the contents categorisation functions described, we have to enable the **Taxonomy** module on our site. This is a module that is integrated into the core, which is enabled by default after Drupal is installed.

With the **Taxonomy** module **enabled**, we will be able to access the management of taxonomies by means of: **F11.1**

URL Taxonomy
</admin/structure/taxonomy>

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Taxonomy

Taxonomy

Taxonomy is for categorizing content. Terms are grouped into vocabularies. For example, a vocabulary called "Fruit" would contain the terms "Apple" and "Banana".

[+ Add vocabulary](#)

VOCABULARY NAME	OPERATIONS
Tags	edit vocabulary list terms add terms

Tags Vocabulary (Labels)

The installation of Drupal creates the **Tags (Labels)** vocabulary, initially with no terms, which is associated with some content types, such as the **Article**. When we create an **Article** type node, the terms entered in the **Tags** field (separated by commas) will become vocabulary terms, even though they have not yet been created. The Tags field is also an autocomplete field, which means that if we add term that exists in the vocabulary, it will display this and it will permit us to select it.

F11.2

Create Article

Title *
Expert in Drupal 7

Tags
Drupal 7, eLearning
Enter a comma-separated list of words to describe your content.

Body (Edit summary)

Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels:
Beginner, Intermediate and Advanced.

Text format Filtered HTML

[More information about text formats](#)

The result of adding the terms when the node is created will enable us to view it directly when we save it.

F11.3

Expert in Drupal 7

[View](#) [Edit](#)

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:35

Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels: Beginner, Intermediate and Advanced.

Tags:
Drupal 7 eLearning

This is the functioning of the **Tags** vocabulary created by default in the installation, and also that of any other vocabulary that we add to our Taxonomy.

F11.1

Taxonomy

The **Taxonomy** module makes it possible to create vocabularies and terms for categorising the content.

F11.2

Adding Tags to a new Article

Drupal includes the Tags vocabulary by default. This vocabulary is associated with the Article content type, and therefore we can assign terms when we create a node of this type.

We can indicate the terms that we want, separated by commas. Those that do not exist will be created automatically

F11.3

Viewing the Tag added to the node

After creating the node we will see the terms that we have added to the node, and hence, to the Tags vocabulary.

Creating vocabulary and terms

We can create new vocabularies using the **Add vocabulary** button that we will find on the Taxonomy administration screen, again at:

URL Taxonomy
</admin/structure/taxonomy>

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Taxonomy**

In this way, we will be able to create the vocabularies that we will use on the site. **F11.4**

F11.4

Add vocabulary

To create a vocabulary we just have to state its Name and Description.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#)

Taxonomy •

Name *	<input type="text" value="Level"/>	Machine name: level [Edit]
Description	<input type="text" value="Required level"/>	
Save		

By simply stating **Name** and **Description** of the vocabulary, and clicking on **Save**, we have already created this, and we will be able to see it on the Taxonomy administration page. As an example, we have created a vocabulary called **Level**. **F11.5**

F11.5

Add vocabulary

The Level vocabulary that we have just created already appears in the vocabularies list.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#)

Taxonomy •

✓ Created new vocabulary *Level*.

Taxonomy is for categorizing content. Terms are grouped into vocabularies. For example, a vocabulary called "Fruit" would contain the terms "Apple" and "Banana".

[+ Add vocabulary](#)

[Show row weights](#)

VOCABULARY NAME	OPERATIONS		
Level	edit vocabulary	list terms	add terms
Tags	edit vocabulary	list terms	add terms

Save

From this particular page we will be able to access the tools for **Edit vocabulary**, **Add terms** and the **List of terms**.

As an example, we will add a new term to our **Level** vocabulary, by clicking on **Add terms**. **F11.6**

Home » Administration » Structure » Taxonomy » Level

Level

LIST **EDIT** **MANAGE FIELDS** **MANAGE DISPLAY**

Name *
Beginner

Description
Beginner is the minimum required level.

Text format Filtered HTML More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

URL alias
beginner
Optionally specify an alternative URL by which this term can be accessed. Use a relative path and don't add a trailing slash or the URL alias won't work.

RELATIONS

Save

F11.6**Add term to the vocabulary**

For every term we can specify the Name, Description, URL Alias, Patent terms and Weight.

The Name is essential and the description is advisable. The URL alias will help us to improve our page by having friendlier URL addresses.

The Parent terms help us to put the terms in a hierarchy. The Weight makes it possible to sort the appearances of the terms in the lists.

When inserting the new term we will have to complete the following fields:

- **Name.** This is the name of the term, as this will appear in the list of terms.
- **Description.** It is advisable to use a short description of the term. This can help us to correctly identify when our list of terms starts being created.
- **URL alias.** All Taxonomy terms have an associated URL, by means of which the list of all of the nodes that are related to that term is shown. In this field we can choose an optional URL alias, which is recommended for having friendlier URL son our site, and useful so that the search engines can have a short reference to this. As we will see in the upcoming section, by using this URL a list will be shown with all of the site contents that have the term assigned.
- **Parent terms.** If we have other terms created, we can decide on this term that we have created being a child of the other one. This will enable us to create a hierarchy of terms. By default, all of the terms will be associated with the vocabulary root.
- **Weight.** This determines the order in which the terms are displayed. The terms with the same number of weight will be presented in alphabetical order.

Once the terms have been added to the vocabulary, we will be able to see the list and edit them or delete them from the **List** tab. It is also possible to sort the terms from this tab. The terms will be displayed to the user so he can choose the Beginner, Intermediate and Advanced terms. **F11.7**

F11.7**List of the terms of the vocabulary**

From the list of vocabulary terms we can edit and delete the terms created beforehand. We can also sort them.

NAME	OPERATIONS
Beginner	edit
Intermediate	edit
Advanced	edit

11.2 Categorising the contents

Having reached this point at which we now know how to create and establish relationships in a set of **vocabularies and terms**, it is important to specify that properly designing the structure of the taxonomy of a website is very useful when it comes to organising and presenting the information to the website users.

We will see some examples of the presentation of information on the basis of the taxonomy in this section, but first we are going to see how to assign vocabulary to a content type.

Assigning vocabulary to a content type

Once we have created the vocabulary we need to associate it with a content type. This is the way of being able to associate the nodes of the content type in question with the vocabulary terms. In Drupal 7 terms are associated with an added content, adding a new field with the content type.

As an example, we are going to associate the **Level** vocabulary, which we have created beforehand, with the **Article** content type.

To do this we will go to the editing of the **Article** content type, and we will add a **Term reference** type field.

We access to edit the content type from:

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Content types** ⇒ **Article [configure fields]**

The screenshot shows the 'Manage fields' tab selected for the 'Article' content type. In the 'Add new field' section, a 'Term reference' field is being created with the internal name 'field_level'. The 'Label' is set to 'Level'. The 'Widget' dropdown shows 'Autocomplete term widget (tagging)'. The 'Operations' column includes 'edit' and 'delete' links.

F11.8**Add taxonomy fields to the content type**

In order to link the Author vocabulary that we have just created with the Article content type, we will go to the editing of this content type and we will add a new "Term reference" type field.

Here we will add a **Term reference** type field to the content type. **F11.8**

We locate the **Add new field** row. In the **Tag** column we will specify "Level" (this is the name of the field that we will see when it comes to creating nodes), in the **Name** "field_level" column (the internal name that Drupal uses to make reference to this field), in the **Field** column we will select "Term reference" (that is to say, this field will make reference to vocabulary terms) and in **Control** "Selection list" (in this way we will be able to see all of the vocabulary terms in a list and we will be able to choose the one that applies to the node that we are creating).

By **Saving** we move on to the next configuration screen of this field, in which we will choose the vocabulary that it will make reference to, which will be the **Level** vocabulary for this example. **F11.9**

The screenshot shows the 'FIELD SETTINGS' tab for the 'Level' field. Under 'FIELD SETTINGS', the 'Vocabulary' dropdown is set to 'Level'. A note below states: 'The vocabulary which supplies the options for this field.' The 'Save field settings' button is visible at the bottom.

F11.9**List of terms of the Level vocabulary**

In the second step of the creation of this new field we will choose the Taxonomy vocabulary that we want to associate it with.

Once the vocabulary has been selected, we continue with the field configuration. We have the following settings in this form: **F11.10**

- **Tag.** This is the tag that we have initially assigned to the field.
- **Necessary field.** If this box is checked the field will be required, that is to say, by creating a node it will be necessary to select a value by obligation.

- **Help text.** We can enter a text that will be used as a form of help for this field when he is creating the node.
- **Default value.** This shows a list with the vocabulary terms. We can select one of these, which will be the default value that will be displayed to the user when the node is created. Of course, the user will be able to change this value.
- **Number of values.** We can choose the maximum number of values that can be entered into the field. If we put 1, only one vocabulary term can be chosen in each node. If we choose Unlimited, we will be able to choose everything that we want to.
- **Vocabulary.** In this step we can decide to change the vocabulary linked to the field.

We will finish the configuration of this field with the **Save options** button. We will now have it ready to use in creating nodes of the Article type.

F11.10

Configuration of the field

From field configuration we can set the Tag, Necessary field, Help text, Default value, Number of values and Associated vocabulary values.

Home > Administration > Structure > Content types > Article > Manage fields

Level •

FIELD SETTINGS

ARTICLE SETTINGS

These settings apply only to the *Level*/field when used in the *Article* type.

Label *
Level

Required field

Help text

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub><sup> <tt> <p>

DEFAULT VALUE

The default value for this field, used when creating new content.

Level
- None -

LEVEL FIELD SETTINGS

These settings apply to the *Level*/field everywhere it is used.

Number of values
1

Maximum number of values users can enter for this field.

Vocabulary *
Level

The vocabulary which supplies the options for this field.

Save settings

To see how the assigning of a taxonomy term to a content works, we will create an article type node, from:

Administration ⇒ Content ⇒ Add content ⇒ Article

We will find the fields we have already studied in the form for creating an **Article** type, **F11.11** and how we will also find the **Level** field that we have just added.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Article' form. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home > Add content > Create Article. The 'Title' field contains the placeholder 'Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet quis sapien.'. The 'Tags' field contains 'Drupal 7' and has a note below it: 'Enter a comma-separated list of words to describe your content.' The 'Body (Edit summary)' field contains a sample text about ipsum dolor sit amet. Below it, the 'Text format' dropdown is set to 'Filtered HTML'. A note next to it says 'More information about text formats'. Under the text format, there's a list of allowed HTML tags. The 'Image' section includes a file upload area where 'Seleccionar archivo' is selected, and an 'Upload' button. The 'Level' field is highlighted with a red box; its dropdown menu shows 'Advanced' as the selected option. On the right side of the page, there's a sidebar with the heading 'F11.11 Create Article' and a text block explaining that when creating an Article type node, we can assign terms from the Author vocabulary thanks to the new 'Level' field.

F11.11

Create Article

When we create an Article type node we can assign terms of the Author vocabulary thanks to the new field that we have just created.

As in the field configuration we have chosen the one that indicates the *Values number* of the field is *Unlimited*, we can select several authors at the same time.

The Tags field is also a field that is linked to a Taxonomy vocabulary, created by default in the Drupal installation.

This field shows a list of all of the terms of the Level vocabulary, for which we can choose the one that we want. Since we have chosen the "Number of values" is 1 when we created the field, we will only be able to select one value from the list.

We should recall that the **Tags** field is already a Taxonomy vocabulary, which the one is created by default from the time of the installation. In this field we have entered the terms *training*, *courses*, *D7*. As we will see, the display of this type of field is different from that of our **Level** vocabulary. This is configured in the **Control type** that we have chosen when we created the field. For the Level field we have chosen "Selection list", which will provide us with a list so we can choose among all of the terms available in the vocabulary. If we have chosen "Term autocomplete control (tagged)" we would have a text box similar to that of the Tags field, in which we wrote the first letters of a term and an autocompleted function helps us by displaying for us the available terms that coincide with these initial letters.

When we Save we can see the result of the node created. **F11.12**

F11.12**Field configuration**

When we view the node the terms chosen in the Authors field will be chosen, in the same way as happens with the Tags field, which is also a field associated with a Taxonomy vocabulary.

Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet quis sapien.

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:49

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Cras eget convallis felis. Duis eu tortor sit amet risus accumsan iaculis at eu elit. Nulla congue aliquam lorem, ornare viverra purus placerat sit amet. Duis placerat euismod turpis sit amet aliquet. Mauris erat lorem, cursus sed congue eu, consectetur eget metus. Sed mauris sapien, facilisis in adipiscing in, consectetur id justo. Donec auctor volutpat fringilla. Vivamus sodales dignissim felis, vitae dignissim arcu elementum eu. Suspendisse potenti. Praesent consectetur sapien luctus neque gravida hendrerit. Sed ipsum elit, vestibulum ut posuere vel, lacinia molestie odio. Donec vel mi non eros mattis cursus.

Tags:	
	Drupal 7
Level:	
	Advanced

We see that the Taxonomy vocabulary terms **are links**. If we click on any of these we will go to a page where all of the nodes that have these terms associated with them are displayed in a list.

Hence, this way of categorising the contents of our site can be very useful for us in assisting users to be able to move comfortably through the contents that are of most interest to them.

Obtaining a list of nodes with a common term

As we have seen, by clicking on a taxonomy term we will access a list with all of the nodes that are associated with such a term. Therefore, Drupal makes it possible to access all of the published nodes that are associated with one particular term, via an URL address. URLs of the following type will be used to do this:

<http://www.example.com/taxonomy/term/5>

where **parameter 5** (to give one example) is the internal identifier that Drupal uses to make an unmistakeable reference to a particular term.

In **Figure F11.13** we see, as an example, the page that is obtained by visiting the previous URL, where identifier number 5 corresponds to the term **Drupal 7** (term included within the **Tags vocabulary**).

We can see that the term that all of the nodes have in common is indicated in the top part. A progress report or summary on the modes that have this term associated with them will be displayed.

Drupal 7

Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet quis sapien.

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:49

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Cras eget convallis felis. Duis eu tortor sit amet risus accumsan iaculis at eu elit. Nulla congue aliquam lorem, ornare viverra purus placerat sit amet. Duis placerat euismod turpis sit amet aliquet. Mauris erat lorem, cursus sed congue eu, consectetur eget metus. Sed mauris sapien, facilisis in adipiscing in, consectetur id justo. Donec auctor volutpat fringilla. Vivamus sodales dignissim felis, vitae dignissim arcu elementum eu. Suspendisse potenti. Praesent consectetur sapien luctus neque gravida hendrerit.

Tags:
Drupal 7

[Read more](#)

Expert in Drupal 7

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:35

Expert in Drupal 7 is the latest online Drupal 7 course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels: Beginner, Intermediate and Advanced.

Tags:
Drupal 7 eLearning

[Read more](#)

So if we have assigned a URL alias on creating a term, then rather than accessing with the previous URL:

<http://www.example.com/taxonomy/term/5>

we will be able to do it with a friendly URL, for example:

<http://www.example.com/drupal7>

assuming that we have indicated "drupal7" as the URL alias of the Drupal 7 term.

Regardless of whether the terms have an URL alias assigned or not, we can find out the identifier assigned by Drupal to every term by loading the list of terms of a vocabulary:

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Taxonomy [list of vocabulary terms]

By clicking on a term or simply moving the cursor over the link of a term, we will find out the URL assigned to the list of nodes of the term, which will be either of the two types seen above (by numerical identifier of the term or by URL alias, in the cases in which we have assigned one).

F11.13

List of nodes of the same term

By knowing the identifier of each term we can generate categorised lists of nodes.

D7/D6 Comparison Taxonomy operators

While Drupal 6 allowed for the use of the AND (,) and OR (+) operators to generate taxonomy lists, this functionality is not available in Drupal 7.

Additional fields in vocabularies

Up to now, we have seen how to add additional fields in the node and user entities. However, in Drupal 7 the taxonomy terms are also considered to be an entity, and therefore we will be able to add additional fields to them in the same way as we have done with the entities studied (**sections 5.2 and 10.4**).

The new fields are added from the editing of a vocabulary, and they will be available for all of the terms created within that vocabulary. **F11.14**

F11.14

Field configuration

When we view the node the terms chosen in the Authors field will be chosen, in the same way as happens with the Tags field, which is also a field associated with a Taxonomy vocabulary.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage Fields' tab of the 'Level' vocabulary configuration page. The table lists fields: 'Name' (name, Term name textfield), 'Description' (description, Term description textarea), and 'Image' (field_level_image, Image). The 'Image' row is highlighted with a red border. Below the table are sections for 'Add new field' and 'Add existing field'.

LABEL	NAME	FIELD	WIDGET	OPERATIONS
+ Name	name	Term name textfield		
+ Description	description	Term description textarea		
+ Image	field_level_image	Image	Image edit delete	
+ Add new field	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> - Select a field type -	- Select a widget -	
+ Add existing field	<input type="text"/>	- Select an existing field -	- Select a widget -	

Below the table are two input fields: 'Label' and 'Field name (a-z, 0-9, _)', and two dropdown menus: 'Type of data to store.' and 'Form element to edit the data.'

In this section we will see how to create these fields, because the method is similar to the one studied for content types and users. If it is necessary, state that the additional fields to a vocabulary will be displayed on the nodes listing pages of a term. **F11.15**

F11.15

Field configuration

When we view the node the terms chosen in the Authors field will be chosen, in the same way as happens with the Tags field, which is also a field associated with a Taxonomy vocabulary.

The screenshot shows a Drupal node page for a 'Beginner' level. The node title is 'Beginner'. The content area contains an image of a book titled 'Drupal 7' and some placeholder text. A red box highlights the image field.

To do this activity, you must have passed the Beginner Level.

Beginner
Submitted by admin on Fri, 01/24/2014 - 10:19
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Morbi vel imperdiet leo. Duis iaculis nisl sed elit aliquet consectetur. Maecenas ullamcorper arcu elit, in imperdiet magna aliquam eget. Praesent luctus nec diam ut convallis. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Phasellus ac fringilla lectus. Cras dapibus ipsum enim, sit amet porta nunc condimentum ut. Curabitur aliquet sed nibh id tincidunt. Nullam vestibulum sagittis augue vitae vulputate. Quisque augue sapien, molestie sit amet tempor at, lobortis id ligula.
Tags:
Drupal 7

RSS Sources based on taxonomy

Lastly, Drupal makes it possible to generate an **RSS source**, commonly known as a **feed** or **web feed**, for every term, by means of an URL, which can be used for any piece of **RSS content aggregator** software.

To do this we have to add the **feed** parameter to the URL of the taxonomy, for example:

<http://www.example.com/taxonomy/term/14/feed>

It is possible to add this news channel to an RSS reader, in such a way that any user will be able to follow the content updates of our site directly from their news reader.

11.3 Additional Modules

Once the basic functionalities of the Taxonomy module have been studied, we are going to see some additional modules that make use of the taxonomy.

Taxonomy Block

This module is available at: http://drupal.org/project/taxonomy_block

We will be able to install the module by making use of the automatic installation of modules, seen in [Unit 9](#). The module does not have relationships with other modules that do not belong to the Drupal core.

The Taxonomy Block module functions in a very simple way. The module will generate a block that will display a list of the vocabulary terms indicated. The first thing that we have to do is go to the module configuration, which we will find at:

[Administration \(/index\) ⇒ Index tab ⇒ Taxonomy Block](#) F11.16

F11.16

Taxonomy Block configuration

We configure which vocabulary we want to display in the block.

Home » Administration » Configuration
Taxonomy Block

Select a Vocabulary
Tags

Select Vocabulary for used by taxonomy block.

Show node count

Save configuration

We will select the vocabulary that we want to load in a block and we will click on **Save configuration**. We will also check the **Show node count** box, which is used so that the number of nodes that are associated each term appears next to it.

We must now go to the blocks administration page ([Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Blocks](#)) and locate the **Taxonomy Block**, which will initially be disabled.

Examining the block configuration settings, we will confirm that there are no specific settings added by the module, beyond the settings that are common to all of the blocks, which we already know about. We will enable the block, assigning it to a region of the site. F11.17

F11.17

Taxonomy block Once we have indicated the vocabulary that we want to show and enabled the block in a region of our site, we will now be able to see it by showing all of the terms.

Regions
Tags

- Drupal 7 (3)
- eLearning (1)
- News (2)

Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet quis sapien.
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:49
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Cras eget convallis felis. Duis eu tortor sit amet iaculis at eu elit. Nulla congue aliquam lorem, ornare viverra purus placerat sit amet. Duis pellentesque turpis sit amet aliquet. Mauris erat lorem, cursus sed congue eu, consectetur eget metus. Sed

Taxonomy Menu

This module is available at: http://drupal.org/project/taxonomy_menu

Taxonomy Menu enables us to create menus on the basis of taxonomy vocabularies. The first thing that we have to do is **create a new menu**, which we will leave empty, with no items. The vocabulary terms will be added as items of the menu. Optionally, we will be able to manually create other links in this menu. The vocabulary terms will simply be added to the menu in the place where we indicate this to it, whether at the menu root or as children of an item of the same.

As the first step, we will create a menu, from: **F11.18**

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Menus [add menu]

The screenshot shows the 'Add menu' form. At the top, there are navigation links: Home, Administration, Structure, and Menus. Below that, a title field is labeled 'Title *' with the value 'Tags'. A description field is labeled 'Description' with the value 'Menu Tags for Taxonomy Menu.' A 'Save' button is at the bottom. Navigation buttons 'LIST MENUS' and 'SETTINGS' are on the right.

F11.18

Creation of a menu to use with Taxonomy Menu

We will create a new menu in this step. The vocabulary terms will be added to it automatically thanks to the **Taxonomy Menu** module.

We will then edit any of the vocabularies available, where we will find new configuration settings added by the **Taxonomy Menu** module.

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Taxonomy [Edit vocabulary]

These options lie within the **Taxonomy menu**: **F11.19**

- **Location of the menu.** We will select in which menu and under which element the new menu items will be created. As has already been commented, the menu has to be created in advance. By default the value will be DISABLED, which will indicate that such vocabulary is not related to any taxonomy menu.
- **Menu path type.** This enables us to indicate how the paths that are generated in the menu links are generated. We will usually establish these as Default, which means that the links of the items will have the structure /taxonomy/term/tid (tid is the taxonomy term identifier, a number). The URL alias of the term will also be used with this option when this has been indicated
- **Select to re-build the menu on sending.** This box should only be checked if problems in the menu are discovered, for example if not all of the vocabulary terms are displayed.

After **Saving**, we will have finished the menu configuration.

F11.19

Configuration of the vocabulary for adding the terms to a menu.

We now have a new section, **Taxonomy menu**, in the vocabulary editing. We can specify which menu we will add the terms of this vocabulary to.

Name *
Tags Machine name: tags [Edit]

Description
Use tags to group articles on similar topics into categories.

TAXONOMY MENU

Menu location
<Tags>

The menu and parent under which to insert taxonomy menu items.

Menu path type
Default

The path will be taxonomy/term/tid if Default has been selected.
The menu path will be passed through drupal_get_path_alias() function so all aliases will be applied.

Select to rebuild the menu on submit.
Rebuild the menu on submit. **Warning:** This will delete then re-create all of the menu items. Only use this option if you are experiencing issues like missing menu items or other inconsistencies.

Save Delete

As we have already studied in **unit6**, a block is generated with every menu created, which we will be able to enable and assign to any region of the site. The next and final step is to access the blocks administration, by means of:

Administration⇒Structure⇒ Blocks

and locate and enable the block of the menu created. **F11.20**

F11.20

Taxonomy menu created

The steps have been:

1. - Create the menu
2. - Access the vocabulary and indicate that the terms will appear in the menu that has been created.
3. - Enable the block generated by the menu

Tags

- Drupal 7
- News
- eLearning

Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 20:49
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Cras eget convallis felis.
accumsan iaculis at eu elit. Nulla congue aliquam lorem, ornare viverra purus pl
euismod turpis sit amet aliquet. Mauris erat lorem, cursus sed congue eu, conse

12 Text formats and WYSIWYG editors

In Drupal, a filter is a rule or a set of rules that are used to transform the text entered by the user. For example, it is possible to add a filter to delete text strings that are enclosed with a previously defined pattern. It is also possible to make a substitution of strings or add additional text.

The filters are applied making use of the text formats. By indicating that a text will have a particular text format, we are establishing a set of rules for transformation that will be applied to the text before displaying this on the website.

Comparative D7/D6

Text formats

In Drupal 6 we made reference to the text formats as "input formats". It is possible you may also find this nomenclature in references to Drupal 7.

Plain text format is a new text format, which was not available in Drupal 6.

Unit contents

12.1 Filter and text formats	204
12.2 Configuration of text formats and filters	205
12.3 Adding text formats	208
12.4 WYSIWYG editors	209



12.1 Filters and text formats

A filter is a rule or set of rules that are used for transforming or manipulating the text entered by the user. Every filter has a different target. For example, it is possible to add a filter to delete text strings that enclose a previously defined pattern. It is also possible to make a substitution of strings or add additional text.

In Drupal, filters are applied by making use of text formats. By indicating that a text will have a particular format, we are establishing a set of rules for transformation that will be applied at the time of generating the presentation of the site (loading the page in the browser), but internally the database stores the original text entered by the user at all times, without applying any type of transformation.

Text formats are, therefore, a set of filters that are applied to text in an organized way. The correct order of the filters is fundamental to obtaining the desired text results.

D7/D6 Comparative

Text formats

In Drupal 6, text formats were known as "input formats". It is possible you will find references to this nomenclature in Drupal 7.

Plain text format is a new text format, which was not available in Drupal 6.

Default filters

We will find the following filters available in our initial Drupal installation:

- **Display any HTML as unformatted text.** This displays the text as plain text, stripping out any type of format.
- **Restrict allowed HTML tags.** This is responsible for deleting unpermitted HTML tags. This is configured by stating allowed HTML tags, in such a way that the filter will strip out the rest of the tags not included in the list. This corresponds to the (HTML filter) of Drupal 6.
- **Convert line breaks into HTML.** This converts the line breaks in tags
 or<p> HTML, depending on whether there is a single line break or a double line break, respectively.
- **Convert the URLs into links.** This converts website and electronic mail addresses into HTML links (...).
- **Correct faulty or chopped off HTML.** This corrects the faulty or chopped off HTML. For example, if the user formats to create a tag<p>.

Default text formats

Initially, Drupal integrates three text formats: **Filtered HTML**, **Full HTML** and **Plain text**.

- **Filtered HTML.** This format is the most restrictive one of all of them, applying all of the previous filters. The use of this text format may be useful for limiting the texts published by users in forums and comments.
- **Full HTML.** Unlike the previous format, Full HTML does not apply the HTML Filter, and so all of the HTML tags will be permitted. This is the recommended text format for the users who are responsible for managing the site contents.
- **Plain text.** This shows the text with no format. This format does convert line breaks into HTML and it also converts the URLs into links.

As we will see in the next section, some modules can add new text formats and/or filters.

Configuration of text formats and filters

12.2

To see and configure the available text formats on the site we must access: **F12.1**

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Content authoring⇒ Text formats

Home » Administration » Configuration » Content authoring

Text formats

Text formats define the HTML tags, code, and other formatting that can be used when entering text. **Improper text format configuration is a security risk.** Learn more on the [Filter module help page](#).

Text formats are presented on content editing pages in the order defined on this page. The first format available to a user will be selected by default.

[+ Add text format](#)

NAME	ROLES	OPERATIONS	
Filtered HTML	anonymous user, authenticated user, administrator	configure	disable
Full HTML	administrator	configure	disable
Plain text	All roles may use this format	configure	

[Save changes](#)

URL Text formats
</admin/config/content/formats>

F12.1

Text formats

By default, Drupal has the text formats known as **Filtered HTML**, **Full HTML** and **Plain text**.

From the text formats list we can access the configuration of each one of these. When editing a text format, we will be able to select the following configuration options: **F12.2**

- **Roles.** We will specify which roles can use this text format.
- **Enabled filters.** This indicates which filters will be applied in using the text format.
- **Filter processing order.** The end result shown may differ if we use the same filters in a different order. It will therefore be important to apply the filters in the right order. Use the weight selector to sort the filters, or drag the filter to the desired position.
- **Filter settings.** Some of the enabled filters may require additional configuration. The configuration settings will be grouped together into tabs in filter settings, for each one of the enabled filters that can be configured.

F12.2**Configuration of text formats**

For every text format we can specify the filters that will be applied and the roles that will be able to make use of this.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Content authoring](#) » [Text formats](#)

Filtered HTML

A text format contains filters that change the user input, for example stripping out malicious HTML or making URLs clickable. Filters are executed from top to bottom and the order is important, since one filter may prevent another filter from doing its job. For example, when URLs are converted into links before disallowed HTML tags are removed, all links may be removed. When this happens, the order of filters may need to be re-arranged.

Name *
Filtered HTML Machine name: filtered_html

Roles

anonymous user
 authenticated user
 administrator
 moderator
 editor

Enabled filters

Limit allowed HTML tags
 Display any HTML as plain text
 Convert line breaks into HTML (i.e.
 and <p>)
 Convert URLs into links
 Correct faulty and chopped off HTML

Filter processing order

Show row weights

+	Convert URLs into links
+	Limit allowed HTML tags
+	Convert line breaks into HTML (i.e. and <p>)
+	Correct faulty and chopped off HTML

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
 This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Filter settings

We can configure the following parameters from the filters available: **F12.3**

F12.3

Text formats. Configure filters. We can configure the URL and HTML filters. The HTML Filter makes it possible for you to indicate the HTML tags permitted in the input format. The rest of the tags not included in the list will be deleted from the text that is entered.

Filter settings

Limit allowed HTML tags Enabled	Allowed HTML tags <a> <code> <dl>
Convert URLs into links Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display basic HTML help in long filter tips <input type="checkbox"/> Add rel="nofollow" to all links

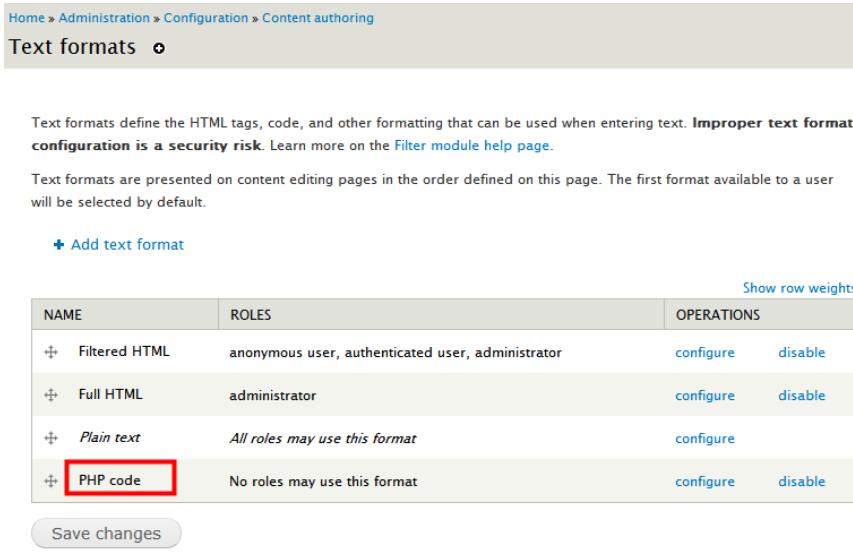
- The **Limit allowed HTML tags** Filter, indicating allowed HTML tags. We can also indicate whether help for HTML use will be displayed and whether the rel="nofollow" attribute will be added in all of the links that are converted, so as to stop SPAM (and search) robots following them.
- The **Convert URLs into links** Filter, indicating the maximum number of characters that the link text will have.

The PHP text format

Drupal includes an additional text format that permits the use of PHP into the content. In order for this format to be available it is necessary to firstly enable the **PHP filter module**, available among the core modules that are not enabled by default. **F12.4**

By accessing the configuration of the **PHP code** input code, we discover a new filter called the **PHP Evaluator**, which will be responsible for executing the PHP code that is entered. As can be seen, none of the other filters will be applied.

The PHP code must include the PHP opening and closing tags `<?php` and `?>`. The code entered does not exclusively have to be PHP: all of the code that is not between PHP opening and closing tags will be treated like HTML, and therefore it is possible to combine both languages.



Home > Administration > Configuration > Content authoring
Text formats [⊕](#)

Text formats define the HTML tags, code, and other formatting that can be used when entering text. [Improper text format configuration is a security risk](#). Learn more on the [Filter module help page](#).

Text formats are presented on content editing pages in the order defined on this page. The first format available to a user will be selected by default.

[+ Add text format](#)

Show row weights			
NAME	ROLES	OPERATIONS	
Filtered HTML	anonymous user, authenticated user, administrator	configure	disable
Full HTML	administrator	configure	disable
Plain text	All roles may use this format	configure	
PHP code	No roles may use this format	configure	disable

[Save changes](#)

F12.4

PHP text formats

The **PHP code** text format will be available when the **PHP Filter** core module is enabled.

12.3 Adding text format

We can create new customised text formats, from: **F12.5**

URL New text format

/admin/config/content/formats
/add

F12.5

Add text format

We can create personalised input formats, selecting the roles and filters that we want apply (from among those available).

**Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Content authoring
⇒ Text formats [Add text format]**

The screenshot shows the 'Add text format' configuration page. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Configuration > Content authoring > Text formats. Below the breadcrumb, the title 'Add text format' is displayed with a backspace icon.

Name *: Comments (Machine name: comments) [Edit]

Roles:

- anonymous user
- authenticated user
- administrator
- moderator
- editor

Enabled filters:

- Limit allowed HTML tags
- Display any HTML as plain text
- Convert URLs into links
- Convert line breaks into HTML (i.e.
 and <p>)
- PHP evaluator

Executes a piece of PHP code. The usage of this filter should be restricted to administrators only!
- Correct faulty and chopped off HTML

Filter processing order (Show row weights):

- Limit allowed HTML tags
- Convert URLs into links
- Convert line breaks into HTML (i.e.
 and <p>)

Filter settings:

Limit allowed HTML tags Enabled	Allowed HTML tags <a>
Convert URLs into links Enabled	A list of HTML tags that can be used. JavaScript event attributes, JavaScript URLs, and CSS are always stripped.
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display basic HTML help in long filter tips <input type="checkbox"/> Add rel="nofollow" to all links

Save configuration

Once the name of the new text format has been indicated, along with the roles that will use it and the filters to be applied, starting the order and the specific configuration settings, we will then save the configuration.

You should take account of the fact that the new text format will only be able to apply the filters available on the site. To create or add new filters it will be necessary to make use of addition modules or programming (as we will see in the Advanced Level).

WYSIWYG Editors

12.4

We are going to install two rich text editors (RTFs) step by step, also known as **WYSIWYG** editors (*What You See Is What You Get*) step in the following practical cases. The editors that we will study in this section are NicEdit and TinyMCE, both integrated through the Drupal Wysiwyg module.

As we have not yet studied how to translate the modules installed, consult **Unit 18** if you want to know how to do this. It is very simple and it will be very easy for you to follow these practical cases, because the figures shown are translated.

A **WYSIWYG editor** offers additional text input table functionalities that enable us to generate **pages with style-rich contents** with no need to understand HTML language. It is important to know that, even though we do not see it, the text, images and other elements that we include using the editor are stored in HTML.

This type of editor allows for a lot of flexibility in your configuration and makes it possible to choose, among other things, the buttons that will be displayed to the user. In addition, we will be able to have different profiles configured so as to display different sets of buttons depending on the text format that is chosen.

Practical case 12.1

Installation of Wysiwyg with NicEdit

We will start by installing a small, light editor, **NicEdit**. Although we will see much more complex editors with many more options, NicEdit may be useful when we need an editor with the more basic buttons (bold, italic, underlined, etc.) for example, so that the users can include rich text in the comments or forums, but allowed HTML tags and styles are always limited.

Since this is a light editor, the pages will be loaded more quickly and they will function more smoothly than with other editors.

NicEdit is an independent Drupal software, and it depends on the **Wysiwyg** module to integrate it. There is therefore no NicEdit module, but rather we will install the Wysiwyg module and we will add the NicEdit software to it. We will see this in further detail in the following steps.

Step 1. Downloading and installing the WYSIWYG module

The **Wysiwyg module** will be responsible for communicating with the rich text editors, which we will also have to install on the server. The **Wysiwyg module** is available at the URL:

<http://drupal.org/project/wysiwyg>

URL Wysiwyg Module
<http://drupal.org/project/wysiwyg>

Download the latest stable version available for Drupal 7. You can install the module by using the automatic modules installation tool that we have already studied.

Check the possible relationships with other modules in **Modules**. The module does not have any relationship with other modules and therefore it can be enabled directly. Enable the module and save the configuration to do the installation. **F12.6**

F12.6

Practical case 12.1

Enabling of the Wysiwyg module

The Wysiwyg module does not have relationships with other modules.

USER INTERFACE				
ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	External Links	7.x-1.12	Adds icon next to external links on the site.	 Configure
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Wysiwyg	7.x-2.1	Allows to edit content with client-side editors.	

Step 2. Configuration of the Wysiwyg module

We will then configure the module, from:

URL Wysiwyg
</admin/config/content/wysiwyg>

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Wysiwyg profiles

The system informs us that there is no editor installed, and it shows us a list of editors that we will be able to install with Wysiwyg. **F12.7** We will install the **NicEdit editor** in the next step.

F12.7

Practical case 12.1

Configuration of the WYSIWYG module

The configuration area of the **Wysiwyg** module makes it possible to select from among various different editors. We will install the **NicEdit** editor later.

NicEdit  (Download  <td>Not installed.</td>	Not installed.
Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location: <code>sites/all/libraries/nicedit</code>	
So the actual library can be found at: <code>sites/all/libraries/nicedit/nicEdit.js</code>	
WYMeditor  (Download  <td data-kind="ghost"></td>	
Not installed.	
Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location: <code>sites/all/libraries/wymeditor</code>	
So the actual library can be found at: <code>sites/all/libraries/wymeditor/jquery.wymeditor.min.js</code>	

Step 3. Installation of NicEdit

As indicated in the installation instructions for the NicEdit editor, we have to download the software and upload its content to this folder:

`/sites/all/libraries/nicedit`

URL NicEdit
<http://nicedit.com>

which means that the path to the main file, `nicEdit.js`, is:
`/sites/all/libraries/nicedit/nicEdit.js`

We can download NicEdit by clicking on the download link provided, which will take us to the downloads area of the official NicEdit page, available at <http://nicedit.com/download.php>, from where we will be able to download the latest available version. **F12.8**

In the **nicEdit Standard Edition** section, we show the basic characteristics that the editor has. They all appear as ticked, by default, and we do not make any change. In the **Optional NicEdit Plugins** section, we can select some added tools that will be included in the download, but we do not select any for now. In the **Choose Compression** section, the **Compressed NicEdit** option appears as marked, which is the one that we need. Therefore, without making any change in the download options of this page, we will click on Download to download NicEdit.

NicEdit
Edit Anywhere

Choose the NicEdit Components you Need

Use the tool below to customize your own version of NicEdit, Version 0.9 r23 released January 4th, 2009.

NicEdit Standard Edition			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicCore	19.9K	Core of nicEdit with basic features, required for all plugins
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicPane	1.3K	Popup overlay that can contain dialogs, tooltips, select boxes, etc.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicAdvancedButton	2.4K	Panel button with support for opening a nicPane with configuration form
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicButtonTips	549B	Toolips when buttons are moused over describing their function
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicSelect	4.1K	Provides base select box class and font family, font size, and heading selects
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicLink	1K	Adds buttons to create page links in nicEdit
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicColors	1.4K	Provides buttons to control the foreground and background color of text
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicImage	961B	Adds buttons to insert images in the editor area
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	nicSave	417B	A button for nicEdit ajax content saving

Optional NicEdit Plugins			
<input type="checkbox"/>	nicUpload	3.9K	A button to allow users to upload images (hosted by ImageShack)
<input type="checkbox"/>	nicXHTML	1.6K	Cleans code produced to be XHTML compliant (Experimental)
<input type="checkbox"/>	nicBBCode	1.4K	Allows nicEdit to create BBCode for use in forums and other applications
<input type="checkbox"/>	nicFloating	636B	Adds support to create a floating editor panel
<input type="checkbox"/>	nicCode	500B	Adds button to edit the HTML in a editor

Choose Compression			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Compressed NicEdit (no whitespace or comments)	Recommended for deploying NicEdit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Uncompressed NicEdit for development	Only use this to debug or develop NicEdit	

Download

F12.8

Practical case 12.1 Official downloads page of the NicEdit editor

On the official downloads page of the **NicEdit** editor we can select some of the characteristics that we want, which includes the editor.

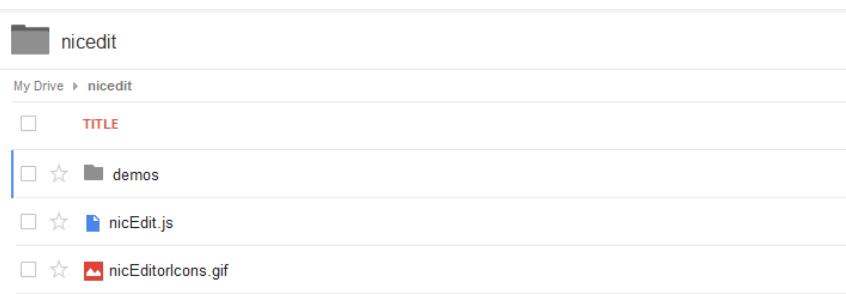
In this practical case, we will not make any changes on this page, and we will download the editor with the default settings, as this appears in this image.

The downloaded file is a compressed file. We have to create a folder with a `nicedit` name, and uncompress the file content of this. In this way, we will have a structure within the `nicedit` folder that is similar to the one shown in **Figure F12.9**

F12.9

Practical case 12.1
**NicEdit Folder with the
 uncompressed editor
 inside it**

We create the nicEdit folder. After creating it, uncompress the downloaded file that is inside it.



Before uploading these files to the server we have to create the **/sites/all/libraries** folder on our site. We will be able to do this directly from our FTP software.

We will be able to upload the **nicedit** folder that we have prepared to **/sites/all/libraries**.

Therefore, the holders structure that we will have on the server will be **/sites/all/libraries/nicedit**.

Step 4. Activation of NicEdit

URL Wysiwyg

/admin/config/content/wysiwyg

Once the NicEdit editor has been installed, we can go back to the configuration of the Wysiwyg module, at:

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Wysiwyg profiles

On this occasion, the NicEdit editor will appear installed correctly and the configurations settings of the different input or text format will be displayed. **F12.10**

We will select the **NicEdit editor** for the **Full HTML** text format.

It is important for the **PHP code** format to always continue without any assigned editor. The editors make the conversion of the text that is inputted to HTML, and therefore if we enter a PHP code using an editor, the tags will be transformed into HTML and the code, below that, will cease to be PHP. We will not assign any editor to the **Plain text** format either, which as its particular name indicates, can be used by us just for inserting unformatted text.

Once the configuration has been saved we will be able to access the editing function of each editor for every text format. We will do this by using the **Edit** link that is shown in the **Operations** column. **F12.10**

Wysiwyg profiles

A Wysiwyg profile is associated with an input format. A Wysiwyg profile defines which client-side editor is loaded with a particular input format, what buttons or themes are enabled for the editor, how the editor is displayed, and a few other editor-specific functions.

INPUT FORMAT	EDITOR	OPERATIONS
Filtered HTML	No editor	
Full HTML	NicEdit 0.9	Edit Delete
Plain text	No editor	
PHP code	No editor	

To assign a different editor to a text format, click "delete" to remove the existing first.

[Save](#)

▼ INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

[openWYSIWYG](#) (Download)

Not installed.

Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location:
`sites/all/libraries/openwysiwyg`

So the actual library can be found at:
`sites/all/libraries/openwysiwyg/scripts/wysiwyg.js`

[jWYSIWYG](#) (Download)

Not installed.

Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location:
`sites/all/libraries/jwysiwyg`

So the actual library can be found at:
`sites/all/libraries/jwysiwyg/jquery.wysiwyg.js`

[markItUp](#) (Download)

Not installed.

Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location:
`sites/all/libraries/markitup`

So the actual library can be found at:
`sites/all/libraries/markitup/markitup/jquery.markitup.js`

[NicEdit](#) (Download)

0.9

F12.10

Practical case 12.1
Assignment of the editor to the text formats

Once nicEdit has been installed, we have to assign the editor to the text formats (or input formats) where we want to use it.

Once this is assigned, the **Edit** option for configuring the editor will be displayed.

Step 5. Configuration of the editor

From the **Edit** link of each format, we are able to establish a specific configuration of the editor for each one these.

This displays the **Basic settings** section, where we will tick the following options: F12.11

- **Enabled in preset way** (enabled by default).
- **Show enable/disable rich text toggle link**. When this option is ticked, a link will be displayed so as to be able to enable and disable the RTF editor.
- In **Interface language**, we will leave this selected in English.

F12.11

Practical case 12.1
Configuration of the NicEdit editor, Basic settings section **Basic settings** section.

Home » Administration » Configuration » Content authoring » Wysiwyg profiles » List
NicEdit profile for Full HTML

BASIC SETUP

Enabled by default
The default editor state for users having access to this profile. Users are able to override this state if the next option is enabled.

Allow users to choose default
If allowed, users will be able to choose their own editor default state in their user account settings.

Show enable/disable rich text toggle link
Whether or not to show the enable/disable rich text toggle link below a textarea. If disabled, the user setting or global default is used (see above).

Interface language
English

BUTTONS AND PLUGINS

EDITOR APPEARANCE

CLEANUP AND OUTPUT

CSS

Save

This displays the **Buttons and plugins** section, where you will find all of the buttons available. Only enable the **Bold**, **Italic**, **Underline** and **Strike-through** buttons. **F12.12**

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F12.12

Practical case 12.1
Configuration of the NicEdit editor, Buttons and plugins section.
Buttons and plugins section where all of the available buttons are shown.

BUTTONS AND PLUGINS

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bold	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Italic	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Underline
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Strike-through	<input type="checkbox"/> Align left	<input type="checkbox"/> Align center
<input type="checkbox"/> Align right	<input type="checkbox"/> Bullet list	<input type="checkbox"/> Numbered list
<input type="checkbox"/> Outdent	<input type="checkbox"/> Indent	<input type="checkbox"/> Image
<input type="checkbox"/> Forecolor	<input type="checkbox"/> Backcolor	<input type="checkbox"/> Superscript
<input type="checkbox"/> Subscript	<input type="checkbox"/> Horizontal rule	<input type="checkbox"/> Link
<input type="checkbox"/> Unlink	<input type="checkbox"/> HTML block format	<input type="checkbox"/> Font
<input type="checkbox"/> Font size	<input type="checkbox"/> Source code	

This displays the **Editor appearance** section. **F12.13** From this section you will be able to configure the position of the icons bar (by default, in the top part of the text table) and the alignment of the buttons (these will be shown aligned left, by default).

Path location shows where we want the information about the HTML elements that are generated in the editor to be displayed.

By enabling the **Enable resizing button** option, we permit a user who is editing a content to be able to change the size of the text table, adapting it to our needs (recommended).

▼ EDITOR APPEARANCE

Toolbar location

This option controls whether the editor toolbar is displayed above or below the editing area.

Button alignment

This option controls the alignment of icons in the editor toolbar.

Path location

Where to display the path to HTML elements (i.e. body > table > tr > td).

Enable resizing button

This option gives you the ability to enable/disable the resizing button. If enabled, the Path location toolbar must be set to "Top" or "Bottom" in order to display the resize icon.

F12.13

Practical case 12.1

Configuration of the NicEdit editor, Editor appearance section
Editor appearance section.

This displays the **Cleanup and output of the format** section. **F12.14** Although we will not make any modifications, options for applying changes to the code generated before being saved are shown in this section. For example, we can state that all of the tags `` are modified by valid style tags (**Convert font tags to styles** option). This is especially useful for **ensuring the accessibility** of the code that is generated, as we will see in the **Intermediate Level**.

▼ CLEANUP AND OUTPUT

Verify HTML

If enabled, potentially malicious code like `<HEAD>` tags will be removed from HTML contents.

Preformatted

If enabled, the editor will insert TAB characters on tab and preserve other whitespace characters just like a PRE element in HTML does.

Convert `` tags to styles

If enabled, HTML tags declaring the font size, font family, font color and font background color will be replaced by inline CSS styles.

Remove linebreaks

If enabled, the editor will remove most linebreaks from contents. Disabling this option could avoid conflicts with other input filters.

Apply source formatting

If enabled, the editor will re-format the HTML source code. Disabling this option could avoid conflicts with other input filters.

Force cleanup on standard paste

If enabled, the default paste function (CTRL-V or SHIFT-INS) behaves like the "paste from word" plugin function.

F12.14

Practical case 12.1

Configuration of the NicEdit editor, Cleanup and output of the format section

Cleanup and output of the format section, where the conversion and filtering settings that will be applied to the contents generated with the editor will be shown.

This displays the **CSS** section. **F12.15** In this final section we are able to indicate which styles will be used in the editor. With a good configuration, what we see in the editor will appear as close as possible to the content shown on the website. We will not make any modifications for now.

F12.15

Practical case 12.1 Configuration of the NicEdit editor, CSS section

The CSS section makes it possible to configure the CSS styles that will be displayed in the editor.

Block formats
p,address,pre,h2,h3,h4,h5,h6,div
Comma separated list of HTML block formats. Possible values: p,h1,h2,h3,h4,h5,h6,div,blockquote,address,pre,code,dt,dd.

Editor CSS
Use theme CSS
Defines the CSS to be used in the editor area.
Use theme CSS – loads stylesheets from current site theme.
Define CSS – enter path for stylesheet files below.
Editor default CSS – uses default stylesheets from editor.

CSS path
If "Define CSS" was selected above, enter path to a CSS file or a list of CSS files separated by a comma.
Available tokens: %b (base path, eg: /), %t (path to theme, eg: themes/garland)
Example: css/editor.css,/themes/garland/style.css,%b%t/style.css,http://example.com/external.css

CSS classes
Optionaly define CSS classes for the "Font style" dropdown list.
Enter one class on each line in the format: [title]=[class]. Example: My heading=header
If left blank, CSS classes are automatically imported from all loaded stylesheet(s).

Click on the **Save** button to apply the changes we have made.

Step 6. Creating a content using the NicEdit editor

Once the configuration of the editor has been completed we can move on to create a node and a page type, and to check the proper installation of the **NicEdit** editor.

Administration⇒**Content**⇒**Add content [Basic page]**

This creates a page with an URL alias, "**page-nicedit**". Since we have only configured the editor for the Full HTML text format, if we select another text format the editor will disappear. So, to use this we will have to select the Full HTML text format. **F12.16**

Add text with varied styles, using the bold, italic, underline and strike-through buttons. Check the HTML code generated internally by disabling the editor (Disable rich text link).

F12.16

Practical case 12.1 NicEdit Editor running

With the **NicEdit** editor properly installed, we can provide a format to the site contents with no need to understand HTML language.

Title *

Page with NicEdit

Body (Edit summary)

B I U S

Adding rich content with NicEdit.

Disable rich-text

Text format Full HTML

More information about text formats [?](#)

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

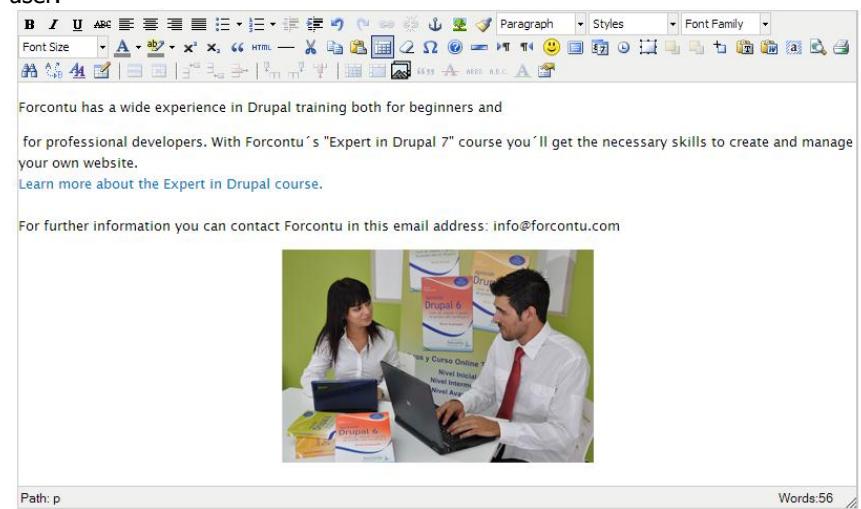
Practical case 12.2

Installation of Wysiwyg with TinyMCE

One of the most commonly-used editors and one that is completely integrated with Drupal is **TinyMCE**. **TinyMCE** is a **WYSIWYG editor** that is independent of Drupal, which is distributed under a LGPL licence. You can consult further information on the official page of the software: <http://tinymce.moxiecode.com>

In **Figure F12.17** we see the **TinyMCE** editor in action. This is a text editor with a lot of additional icons that makes it possible to add styles and multimedia items to the text: bold, italic, underline, text alignment, images, tables, etc. As we will see, depending on the module configuration, we will be able to make just a particular set of icons be shown, thus limiting the functionalities available for text tables.

It is an editor that is much more complete than NicEdit. The choice between one editor and another will depend on the buttons that we want to display to the user.

**F12.17**

The TinyMCE editor in action

TinyMCE is one of the most commonly-used and complete WYSIWYG editors, which full integrates with Drupal.

Step 1. Installation of TinyMCE

As indicated in the installation instructions for the TinyMCE editor, which we can see on the Wysiwyg configuration page: **F12.18**

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Wysiwyg profiles**

we have to download the software and upload its content to this folder:

`sites/all/libraries/tinymce`

which means that the path to the main file, `tiny_mce.js`, is:

`sites/all/libraries/tinymce/jscripts/tiny_mce/tiny_mce.js`

URL Wysiwyg

`/admin/config/content/wysiwyg`

[TinyMCE](#) (Download)

Extract the archive and copy its contents into a new folder in the following location:
`sites/all/libraries/tinymce`

So the actual library can be found at:
`sites/all/libraries/tinymce/jscripts/tiny_mce/tiny_mce.js`

Not installed.

F12.18

Practical case 12.2

How to install TinyMCE

Installation instructions for **TinyMCE**.

We download the **TinyMCE** software by clicking on the **Download** link. The official page of the TinyMCE **F12.19** downloads will be displayed, where we will be able to download the latest version. We can also download the package of languages that we need, from the **Languages** section.

F12.19

Practical case 12.2

TinyMCE downloads page

We download the main package from the **TinyMCE** downloads page.

Main packages (3.4.x)		
Package	Description	Download
TinyMCE 3.4.2	Contains all you need for production usage.	DOWNLOAD
TinyMCE 3.4.2 jQuery package	Contains special jQuery build of TinyMCE and a jQuery integration plugin.	DOWNLOAD
TinyMCE 3.4.2 development package	This package contains development tools and full source code.	DOWNLOAD

Main packages (3.3.x)		
Package	Description	Download
TinyMCE 3.3.9.4	Contains all you need for production usage.	DOWNLOAD
TinyMCE 3.3.9.4 jQuery package	Contains special jQuery build of TinyMCE and a jQuery integration plugin.	DOWNLOAD
TinyMCE 3.3.9.4 development package	This package contains development tools and full source code.	DOWNLOAD

You can also make your own [custom package](#) with the components you need.

Before uploading these files to the server we have to create the **/sites/all/libraries** folder. We will be able to do this directly from our FTP software.

We will then upload the **tinymce** folder, extracted from the main software package, to **/sites/all/libraries**.

Once this folder has been uploaded, we decompress the downloaded file, **tinymce_lang_pack.zip**. This file comprises 3 folders (langs, plugins and themes) that we have to upload to:

sites/all/libraries/tinymce/jscripts/tiny_mce/

Among others, this folder already contains the langs, plugins and themes folders. When your FTP software informs you this, confirm that you want to replace the existing folders and files (in reality, no file will be replaced, just new files will be added in the indicated folders).

Step 2. Activation of TinyMCE

Once the TinyMCE software has been installed, we go back to the WYSIWYG configuration. If the installation has been done correctly, this will be indicated in the list of installed editors, and the TinyMCE editor will be available in the selector of editors for text formats.

We first delete the profile that was previously associated with **Full HTML** text format, that we had assigned it to in the NicEdit editor in the Practical case 12.1 (**Delete** button in Operations).

We will then select the **TinyMCE editor** for the **Full HTML** format. Once we have saved the changes, we will be able to access the editor configuration for this text format, using the **Edit** link that is shown in the **F12.20 Operations** column.

[Home](#) > [Administration](#) > [Configuration](#) > [Content authoring](#)

Wysiwyg profiles

A Wysiwyg profile is associated with an input format. A Wysiwyg profile defines which client-side editor is loaded with a particular input format, what buttons or themes are enabled for the editor, how the editor is displayed, and a few other editor-specific functions.

INPUT FORMAT	EDITOR	OPERATIONS
Filtered HTML	No editor	
Full HTML	TinyMCE 3.4.8	Edit Delete
Plain text	No editor	
PHP code	No editor	

To assign a different editor to a text format, click "delete" to remove the existing first.

[Save](#)

F12.20
Practical case 12.2
Assignment of the editor to the input formats

We have to assign the editor to the input formats where we want to use it. Once this has been assigned, the **Edit** setting will be displayed and we configure it.

Step 3. Configuration of the editor

This displays the **Basic settings** section, where we will tick the following options: **F12.21**

- **Enabled in preset way** (enabled by default).
- **Show enable/disable rich text toggle link**. When this option is ticked, a link will be displayed so as to be able to enable and disable the RTF editor.
- In **Interface language**, we will leave this selected in English. This editor has translations into other languages, which we will be able to download and install.

[Home](#) > [Administration](#) > [Configuration](#) > [Content authoring](#) > [Wysiwyg profiles](#) > [List](#)

TinyMCE profile for Full HTML

[EDIT](#) [REMOVE](#)

BASIC SETUP

Enabled by default
The default editor state for users having access to this profile. Users are able to override this state if the next option is enabled.

Allow users to choose default
If allowed, users will be able to choose their own editor default state in their user account settings.

Show enable/disable rich text toggle link
Whether or not to show the *enable/disable rich text toggle link* below a textarea. If disabled, the user setting or global default is used (see above).

Interface language

BUTTONS AND PLUGINS

EDITOR APPEARANCE

CLEANUP AND OUTPUT

CSS

[Save](#)

F12.21
Practical case 12.2
Configuration of the TinyMCE editor, Basic settings section

Basic settings tag.

This displays the **Buttons and plugins** sections and enables the **F12.22** following buttons:

- Bold
- Italic
- Underlined
- Align left
- Align centre
- Align right
- Bullet list
- Undo
- Redo
- Link
- Image
- Copy
- Paste
- Character map
- Font
- Font size

F12.22

Configuration of the TinyMCE editor, Buttons and extensions section

Buttons and extensions tag, where all of the available buttons are shown. We will select the ones indicated.

▼ BUTTONS AND PLUGINS

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bold	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Italic	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Underline
<input type="checkbox"/> Strike-through	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Align left	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Align center
<input type="checkbox"/> Align right	<input type="checkbox"/> Justify	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bullet list
<input type="checkbox"/> Numbered list	<input type="checkbox"/> Outdent	<input type="checkbox"/> Indent
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Undo	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Redo	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Link
<input type="checkbox"/> Unlink	<input type="checkbox"/> Anchor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Image
<input type="checkbox"/> Clean-up	<input type="checkbox"/> Forecolor	<input type="checkbox"/> Backcolor
<input type="checkbox"/> Superscript	<input type="checkbox"/> Subscript	<input type="checkbox"/> Blockquote
<input type="checkbox"/> Source code	<input type="checkbox"/> Horizontal rule	<input type="checkbox"/> Cut
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copy	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Paste	<input type="checkbox"/> Visual aid
<input type="checkbox"/> Remove format	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Character map	<input type="checkbox"/> Help
<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced horizontal rule	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced image	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced link
<input type="checkbox"/> Auto save	<input type="checkbox"/> Context menu	<input type="checkbox"/> Left-to-right
<input type="checkbox"/> Right-to-left	<input type="checkbox"/> Emotions	<input type="checkbox"/> HTML block format
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Font	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Font size	<input type="checkbox"/> Font style
<input type="checkbox"/> Fullscreen	<input type="checkbox"/> Inline popups	<input type="checkbox"/> Insert date
<input type="checkbox"/> Insert time	<input type="checkbox"/> Insert layer	<input type="checkbox"/> Move forward
<input type="checkbox"/> Move backward	<input type="checkbox"/> Absolute	<input type="checkbox"/> Paste text
<input type="checkbox"/> Paste from Word	<input type="checkbox"/> Select all	<input type="checkbox"/> Preview
<input type="checkbox"/> Print	<input type="checkbox"/> Search	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace
<input type="checkbox"/> Style properties	<input type="checkbox"/> Table	<input type="checkbox"/> Media
<input type="checkbox"/> Citation	<input type="checkbox"/> Deleted	<input type="checkbox"/> Abbreviation
<input type="checkbox"/> Acronym	<input type="checkbox"/> Inserted	<input type="checkbox"/> HTML attributes
<input type="checkbox"/> BBCode	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto resize	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced list
<input type="checkbox"/> Word count	<input type="checkbox"/> Teaser break	

We will not make any changes in the **Editor appearance** section. Remember that here you can configure the editor so that the icons are shown in the upper or lower parts of the text field.

We will not make changes in the **Editor appearance, Cleanup and output of the format** or **CSS** sections either.

When we click on **Save** we will be applying the changes that we have made.

Step 4. Creating a content using the TinyMCE editor

Once the configuration of the editor has been completed we can go ahead and create a **Basic page** node, and check the correct installation of the **TinyMCE** editor.

Administration ⇒ **Content** ⇒ **Add content [Basic page]**

Create a page with the "**page-tinymce**" URL alias. Since we have only configured the editor for the Full HTML text format, if we select another text format the editor will disappear. Therefore, to make use of this we have to select the Full HTML text format. **F12.23**

Add text with varied styles, using the bold and italic buttons. Insert an image, a link and a list of items in the content. Check the HTML code that is generated by internally disabling the editor (Disable rich text link).

Create Basic page

Title *
Page created using TinyMCE editor

Body (Edit summary)

We have set up the TinyMCE editor in order to use it with the Full HTML text format.



Path: p
Disable rich-text

Text format Full HTML ▾

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

More information about text formats ⓘ

F12.23

Practical case 12.2 Creation of a content page using the TinyMCE editor

The **TinyMCE** editor is more complete than **NicEdit**. Among its buttons we find some that may be very useful to us such as Copy and Paste, the characters Map and the choice of the type of font and the size of this.

However, in some cases **NicEdit** may do perfectly well when we only want to show a limited set of buttons to the users, for example, in the site comments section.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

13 Blogs

A blog enables registered users to keep an electronic diary, in which they can share experiences, opinions or knowledge with their readers. Blogs are made up of individual postings which, in principle, are shown in descending chronological order, based on the way they are created, with the possibility of making comments, and that are promoted to the front page of the blog.

Blogs, also called journals, are very common tools and they are used in many fields in order to have a better web presence. Since they are generally designed to display the date and time at which each publication that they contain is made, they make it possible to show the users of a page whether there has been recent activity among the participants that make it up.

For example, it is very common to find blogs on business pages, on which news is presented, such as the attendance of the company at events, new launches or information about the development of new products.

A blog with a pleasant design, quality control, that is well-drafted and updated frequently can improve a lot the image that the page author conveys. Furthermore, if the blog contains engaging and well-structured entries, it can increase the site's SEO ranking. On the other hand, a blog that is neglected, with out of date content and with very little activity, could convey a poor image. It is therefore advisable to initially study whether the creation of a blog is going to be useful for the site administrators.

Comparative D7/D6

The Blog module has not substantially evolved as compared to its version in Drupal 6. We will be able to find differences in the additional modules that complement it.

Many of the Drupal 7 modules presented here do not yet have a stable version available. The alpha and beta versions of the modules have to be used with caution, because incompatibilities with other additional modules installed might be found.

Unit contents

13.1 Installing and configuring a blog	224
13.2 Notification of publication of comments with Comment notify	229
13.3 SPAM control with CAPTCHA.....	234

13

13.1 Installing and configuring a blog

Blogs are tools that are very commonly used in web 2.0, at both the personal and the business levels. Drupal includes the **Blog** module in the core, which makes it possible to create multi-use blogs.

Each user with the corresponding permissions will be able to create content for his blog, and each blog will be linked to a user. Furthermore, all of the entries of all of the blogs of a site will also be added together into one central multi-user blog, in which it will be possible to see all of the promoted contents.

This module is disabled by default. To enable this we have to go to the modules administration and check the box corresponding to the **Blog** module, by clicking on **Save configuration**. By enabling the module, a new content type is added to the system, known as a Blog entry.

To create a blog entry we will do this as if we were creating any other node: **F13.1**

URL Add blog entry
`/node/add/blog`

Administration ⇒ **Content** ⇒ **Add content [Blog entry]**

F13.1

Creating a blog entry

After enabling the Blog module of the Drupal core, we will have a new type of Blog entry content available.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blog entry' page. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home » Add content. Below that, the title 'Create Blog entry' is displayed. The main form area starts with a 'Title' field containing 'My first blog entry'. Below it is a large 'Body' field with a rich text editor containing placeholder text about lorem ipsum. Underneath the body is a 'Text format' dropdown set to 'Filtered HTML'. A link 'More information about text formats' is visible next to it. The 'Text format' dropdown has a list of allowed tags: Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically, Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>, and Lines and paragraphs break automatically. At the bottom of the form, there are two sections: 'Menu settings' (checkbox 'Not in menu') and 'Revision information' (checkbox 'Provide a menu link').

Once this first entry has been created, we will be able to access like any other node, even using the URL alias that we have indicated when we created it. In the lower part of each entry we will find a link to the **User blog**, in this case the **Admin blog**, because we have already created this entry with the admin user.

F13.2

My first blog entry

[View](#) [Edit](#)

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:47

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nulla eget lorem vitae dui pellentesque ullamcorper non vel ipsum. Quisque quis arcu massa, a mattis enim. Ut fermentum condimentum lorem non venenatis. Integer sem elit, auctor ut venenatis sed, gravida ut elit. Donec faucibus libero neque. Fusce pretium eros a dui rutrum vitae tincidunt lorem hendrerit. Cras vitae laoreet nunc. Pellentesque pharetra malesuada cursus.

Curabitur viverra, risus eu cursus ullamcorper, urna metus posuere odio, varius feugiat ante metus nec velit. Quisque commodo tincidunt massa non faucibus. Suspendisse nec eros vulputate nunc interdum vehicula. In a ante sed lorem mollis mollis sit amet faucibus lacus. Fusce in lacinia felis. Etiam vel nulla eget sapien tempor malesuada quis ullamcorper velit. Phasellus risus augue, placerat eget ornare sed, pretium sed nulla. Duis semper purus ac nisi fringilla facilisis. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nulla nisl turpis, aliquet id gravida vitae, commodo in tortor. Vestibulum et lorem ut magna elementum dictum vitae ac mi. Ut suscipit varius viverra. Phasellus in diam magna, non ullamcorper leo. Fusce nec mollis ipsum. Nullam sit amet velit sed lacus placerat posuere.

admin's blog

Add new comment

By clicking on **admin blog** we will be able to access the full admin user blog. After having added some further entries, the admin blog is displayed as shown in **Figure. F13.3** On the front page of the blog we will also find a link called **Post new blog entry**, which is also available for the blog author.

admin's blog

[+ Post new blog entry.](#)

My first blog entry

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:47

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nulla eget lorem vitae dui pellentesque ullamcorper non vel ipsum. Quisque quis arcu massa, a mattis enim. Ut fermentum condimentum lorem non venenatis. Integer sem elit, auctor ut venenatis sed, gravida ut elit. Donec faucibus libero neque. Fusce pretium eros a dui rutrum vitae tincidunt lorem hendrerit. Cras vitae laoreet nunc. Pellentesque pharetra malesuada cursus.

[Read more](#)

By accessing the user admin blog we can see that its URL address has the following form:

<http://www.example.com/blog/1>

All of the users' blogs will have addresses with this form, /blog/x, where x will be the unique identifier that the system assigns internally to every user. As we will see in the advanced level, this identifier is known internally as uid (user id). The first user that we create on the site **admin** has the identifier **1** assigned to him, and it follows from this that his blog has the URL /blog/1. The second user created will have the identifier 2, and so on.

Therefore, we will be able to access the blogs of each user, with this identifier number varying in the browser address bar (/blog/1, /blog/2, etc.).

F13.2

A blog entry that has already been created

Blog entries can be seen like any other node

By clicking on the lower admin blog link we will be able to access the blog of this user.

F13.3

Front page of the blog of a user

Every user will have his own blog, which will have a URL address with the form of **/blog/x**

where **x** is the identifier that Drupal has assigned to the user when it comes to creating his account.

All of the blog entries that the user has created will appear in this blog, sorted from the most recent ones to the oldest ones.

If we want the blogs to have friendlier URLs that are related to the user's name or the theme, such as for example:

`http://www.example.com/blog/username`

we can always make use of the URL alias which, as we will study later on, we can do this from:

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ URL Alias

As we will see in the Intermediate Level, we can automate the creation of URL aliases making use of the Path auto module.

On the other hand, the multi-user blog, in which the entries for all of the blogs of the site users are shown, has the following URL address:

`http://www.example.com/blog`

Access to My Blog

To see your own blog, every user has a link called **View recent blog entries** on his user page (**My account**). **F13.4**

F13.4

User account page

Each user has a link to his blog on his account page.

The screenshot shows the 'User account' page for the 'admin' user. At the top, there are three buttons: 'View', 'Edit', and 'Shortcuts'. Below these, under the 'History' section, there is a red box around the 'Blog' section. Inside this box, the 'Blog' link is highlighted in blue. Below the 'Blog' link is the 'View recent blog entries' link. Underneath this section, there is a 'Member for' section showing '9 hours 2 min'.

In order to facilitate access to the blogs further, we can edit the Navigation menu. In this menu, the Blog module has added two new links: Blogs and My blog, which are disabled by default. It will be sufficient to enable these so that every user has access to these links, as long as the Navigation menu is active and in use (assigned to any site region). **F13.5**

Home » Administration » Structure » Menus

Navigation ◉

[+ Add link](#)

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
+ Add content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Article	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Basic page	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Blog entry	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ News	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Poll	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Blogs (disabled)	<input type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ My blog	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Compose tips (disabled)	<input type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Polls (disabled)	<input type="checkbox"/>	edit
+ Search (disabled)	<input type="checkbox"/>	edit

F13.5**Enabling of the links for blogs in the Navigation menu.**

We can enable the links that the **Blog** module has created in the Navigation menu, so as to facilitate access to the blogs.

Once these links have been enabled, we will have these available in the Navigation menu. Remember that, to see this menu, the corresponding block has to be enabled in any part of the selected theme. **F13.6**

Home

Navigation

- + Add content
- Blogs
 - My blog

Blogs

[+ Create new blog entry](#)

My first blog entry

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:47

Read more admin's blog

My menu

- Home
- About me
- Drupal

F13.6**Links visible in the Navigation menu**

Once enabled, these links make it possible to access the blogs more easily.

Multi-user Blog: front page and block

Every user will have his own blog and the entries promoted by each one of the users will also be fed into a main multi-user blog. The URL address of the home page of this blog is:

<http://www.example.com/blog>

The multi-user blog entries will be sorted from the most recent to the oldest. A link called **user blog** will be shown beneath each entry, so as to access the blog of the user that added that entry.

The Blog module has created a new block, identified as **Recent blog posts**, which shows the latest blog entries promoted by the users of the site. Within the block configuration parameters we will be able to indicate the **Number of recent blogs to display**. We will be able to choose a value between 2 and 30 in

this field, and indicate the number of blog posts that will appear in the block as being recently added to the blogs of the site. **F13.7**

F13.7

Configuration of the block of the blog

We can vary the number of entries that will be displayed.

Home » Administration » Structure » Blocks
'Recent blog posts' block +

Block title

 Override the default title for the block. Use `<none>` to display no title, or leave blank to use the default block title.

Number of recent blog posts to display
 10

Once the block has been configured and enabled in a region, we will be able to see his behavior. The block will show the titles of the latest entries sent by the users to their respective blogs, and a **More** link that leads directly to the multi-user blog (/blog). **F13.8**

F13.8

Block of recent blog entries visible in the selected region

The block shows us the latest entries sent. It moreover includes a link to the multi-user blog.

Home

Navigation

- ▶ Add content
- ▶ Blogs

Recent blog posts

- Another blog entry
- My first blog entry

More

Another blog entry
 Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54
 Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacina aliquam. Curabitur ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue nec tortor. Nullam nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu. Donec luctus, purus sit amet ornare sollicitudin, ipsum lorem faucibus urna, at congue odio nisl sit amet augue.
[Read more](#) [admin's blog](#)

My first blog entry
 Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:47
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nulla eget lorem vitae dui pellentesque ullamcorper non vel ipsum. Quisque quis arcu massa, a mattis enim. Ut fermentum condimentum lorem non venenatis. Integer sem elit, auctor ut venenatis sed, gravida ut elit. Donec faucibus libero neque. Fusce pretium eros a dui rutrum vitae tincidunt lorem hendrerit. Cras vitae laoreet nunc. Pellentesque pharetra malesuada cursus.
[Read more](#) [admin's blog](#)

My menu

- Home
- About me
- Drupal

Notification of publication of comments with Comment notify

13.2

In the official repository of Drupal modules we will find many more modules related to Blogs. Some add functionality, improving or modifying the core Blog module, and others integrate external blog systems.

In this section we will study a module which, while it is fully integrated into the blogs of the site, its use can be generally extended to all of the comments that are promoted, regardless of the content type.

Installation and configuration of Comment Notify

When a user adds a comment to the site, whether in a blog entry or in any other content that permits this, then thanks to the **Comment Notify** module, he will be able to receive notifications by e-mail every time that new comments are promoted to the same content.

The **Comment Notify** module will display a box so that when a comment is sent to the blog entry or page, he can choose if he wants to choose an e-mail when someone makes a new comment. We will see that the module has a flexible form of configuration so as to adjust some parameters of its behavior to new needs.

The **Comment Notify** module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/comment_notify

We will see that the module has relationships with some other modules. Some of these are included in the Drupal core, but we will have to install the Token module, which is also necessary.

The **Token** module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/token>

Once the required modules have been installed and enabled, we will access the Comment Notify configuration from: **F13.9**

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **People** ⇒ **Comment notify**

URL Comment notify
/admin/config/people/comment_notify

The configuration settings available are:

- **Content types to enable for comment notification.** We have to select the content types in whose comments the receive notifications setting will be shown when new comments are promoted. We will only check the **Blog entry** content type here, which is the one in which we are interested in enabling the notifications for the time being.

F13.9

Comment Notify module settings

In the **Comment notify** module settings we will be able to change some parameters so as to adjust the behavior to our blog.

We can indicate the content types in whose comments this module will start working.

We can also choose how the settings will be displayed to the blog commenters by default.

One significant detail is that we will be able to configure the notification e-mails templates that will be sent to the commenters and to the author of the entry.

The screenshot shows the 'Comment notify' configuration page. At the top, there are 'SETTINGS' and 'UNSUBSCRIBE' buttons. Below them, under 'Content types to enable for comment notification', 'Blog entry' is checked. A note says: 'Comments on content types enabled here will have the option of comment notification.' Under 'Available subscription modes', 'All comments' and 'Replies to my comment' are checked. A note says: 'Choose which notification subscription styles are available for users'. Under 'Default state for the notification selection box for anonymous users', 'All comments' is selected. Under 'Default state for the notification selection box for registered users', 'All comments' is selected. A note says: 'This flag presets the flag for the follow-up notification on the form that anon users will see when posting a comment'. Under 'Default mail text for sending out notifications to commenters', there is a rich text editor with the following content: 'Hi [comment-subscribed:author]. [comment:author] has commented on: "[comment:node:title]"'. Under 'Default mail text for sending out the notifications to node authors', there is a rich text editor with the following content: 'Hi [comment:node:author]. You have received a comment on: "[comment:node:title]"'.

- **Available subscription modes.** The user will be able to receive notifications of all of the comments that are promoted to the page or only the replies to the comment. The two settings can be selected here, which means that both methods will be available, which means that both methods will be available, although the user will only be able to select one of these.
- **Default state for the notification selection box for anonymous users.** In this selector we can indicate which settings appear as checked by default for anonymous users. Every user will be able to check or uncheck the boxes when it comes to promoting the comment, varying this configuration. The possible settings are: No notifications, All comments and Replies to my comment. We will select **All comments**.
- **Default state for the notification selection box for registered users.** This works in the same way as the previous setting, but for registered users. We will also select the **All comments** setting.
- **Subscribe users to their node follow-up notification emails by default.** If this setting is checked, the users will receive notifications by electronic mail all the time, until this box is manually disabled. We will leave this setting unchecked.

- **Default mail text for sending out notifications to commenter's.** Here we can define the template of the electronic mail that will reach the users who have promoted a comment, when a new one is promoted. For the time being, we can leave the messages that are included by default, although it is recommended that these be customised.
- **Default mail text for sending out the notifications to node authors.** We can also configure the template of the electronic mail that is sent to the node authors when comments are promoted, if the author has indicated this.

In these last two fields, which are used to configure the templates of electronic mails, we will be able to use **tokens**. Tokens are strings which, when they are processed, will be dynamically changed by their associated values. For example, we see that some tokens appear in the electronic mail templates:

- comment-subscribed:author: the user name of the author of the comment.
- comment:title: the title of the comment.
- comment:body: the body of the comment.

Thus, when a mail is sent, these strings will be changed for their corresponding values.

To confirm the changes that we have made, we will click on **Save configuration**.

Notify me when new comments are posted

To test the module, we are going to make a comment in one of the blog entries that were created beforehand. At this time we will now be able to see the setting that we can check to enable sending notifications, with the **Notify me when new comments are posted** box. **F13.10** The user will be able to choose between receiving notifications of all of the comments or just replies to his comment.

Add new comment

Your name admin

Subject

Comment

Comment *

Curabitur ultrices facilisis vulputate. Maecenas dictum ipsum id odio varius aliquam. Mauris rutrum, mauris vitae sollicitudin malesuada, tellus odio vehicula tortor, nec pretium sem ipsum sed arcu. Integer ut sem est, nec pellentesque neque.

Text format

Filtered HTML

More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

Notify me when new comments are posted

All comments Replies to my comment

Save

Preview

F13.10

Creation of a comment with notifications enabled

When we are going to send a comment we will be able to enable the **Notify me when comments are posted** box.

If this box is enabled, notifications will be sent by e-mail when another user makes comments in this bog entry. We can restrict the notifications so that they are only sent when they are responses to our comment.

Once this comment has been created with notifications enabled, we will move on to test it. It is important to indicate that we cannot test with the same user as the

one that we have promoted the first comment for, because notifications will only be sent when a different user posts comments in the same entry.

So, in order to test the notifications, we will exit our user session and we will go onto the site with a different user.

We will add a new comment in the same entry where we had created the first one. The author of the previous comment will receive a notification in via email, telling him that new comments have been posted. **F13.11**

F13.11

Notification e-mail

If we have checked the setting to enable the sending of notifications, when another user makes a comment in the blog entry we will receive an electronic mail informing us of this.

Hi admin,

You have received a comment on: "Blog entry"

test comment

 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Phasellus et lacus dui. Etiam ut venenatis lectus, eu aliquam ligula. Integer enim ex, aliquam ut mollis eget, pulvinar at velit. Quisque ultrices, massa gravida venenatis pulvinar, nisl purus iaculis elit, a cursus nunc mauris vitae tortor. Mauris id erat diam. Duis euismod risus ex, eget vehicula urna hendrerit at. Donec eget justo risus. Mauris a nibh rhoncus risus consequat laoreet in vitae justo. Duis aliquet ipsum vel lacus consequat, eget ornare dolor maximus. In pharetra vitae diam semper tempus. Donec mollis elit eu tempus aliquam.

You can view the comment at the following url

example.com/comment/22#comment-22

You will receive emails like this for all replies to your posts. You can disable this by logging in and changing the settings on your user account at example.com/user/1/edit.

-- Forcontu team

www.forcontu.com

The text of the message is the one provided by the template that we define in the configuration of the module. Now that we know what appearance these notifications will take, we can edit this template and adapt it to our site.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

User settings

As we see, the original template includes links to the new comment, to the front page of the site, and also to the user's account profile. This last link is very important, because it will permit the user to disable the subscriptions that he gets by email at any time.

By visiting the **My account [Edit tab]** page, and following this link, or directly on our site, we will find the opportunity to disable notifications within the **Comment follow-up notification settings** section. **F13.12**

F13.12

User profile, section related to Comment notify

We will be able to disable notifications from the user profile.

▼ COMMENT FOLLOW-UP NOTIFICATION SETTINGS	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive content follow-up notification e-mails Check this box to receive an e-mail notification for follow-ups on your content. You can not disable notifications for individual threads.	
Receive comment follow-up notification e-mails <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <input type="button" value="All comments"/> </div> Check this box to receive e-mail notification for follow-up comments to comments you posted. You can later disable this on a post-by-post basis... so if you leave this to YES, you can still disable follow-up notifications for comments you don't want follow-up mails anymore - i.e. for very popular posts.	

We have the following settings in this section:

- **Receive content follow-up notification e-mails.** If the user has checked this option, he will receive follow-up e-mails when any other user makes comments on any of his nodes. This setting makes reference to the nodes promoted by the user (not the comments).
- **Receive comment follow-up notification e-mails.** Here we can choose the setting that will appear by default as checked when we are going to create a comment. This setting will override the global setting established in the configuration of the module. Although we chose one of the settings here, we can change this parameter later on, at the same time as writing the comment.

It is also important to indicate at what time a user will be able to edit the comment and change his choice (as long as he has the right permissions associated with it) so as to stop receiving the notifications.

If a user asks the site administrator to **unsubscribe him from the notifications system**, **F13.13** the administrator will be able to unsubscribe his e-mail address from:

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ People ⇒ Comment notify

Home » Administration » Configuration » People » Comment notify

Comment notify ◊

SETTINGS **UNSUBSCRIBE**

Email to unsubscribe
example@example.com

Unsubscribe this e-mail

F13.13

Unsubscribe an e-mail address

We can unsubscribe the notifications for a particular e-mail address.

Permissions

Finally, as is the case after every installation of a new module, we must review the list of permits related to the module. The Comment notify module has two new permissions added **F13.14** to it:

- **Administer Comment notify.** The users with this permission enabled will be able to access the module settings page.
- **Subscribe to comment notifications.** The users with this permission will be able to subscribe to notifications when they send comments.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Comment notify			
Administer Comment Notify Change global comment notification settings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Subscribe to comment notifications Subscribe to receive notifications when new comments are posted.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

F13.14

Comment notify permissions

Permissions added by the module.

13.3 SPAM control with CAPTCHA

What a Captcha is

On many sites we will find that when we fill in a form, we have to enter the characters that can be seen in an image, which are generally distorted. The aim of this type of check is to guarantee that the form is being sent by a person and in that way to stop the automated sending of SPAM.

This system is known as Captcha (which stands for *Completely Automated Public Turing Test to tell Computers and Humans Apart*).

The Captcha checks function in a similar way. A random image is shown **F13.15** in which various alphanumerical characters or word appear, and the user is asked to enter these characters in a text field. If the user "gets it right", the form is sent correctly. If the user makes a mistake, the form is not sent and, usually, a new image is shown so that he can try again.

F13.15

Captcha example

The Figure shows a CAPTCHA example with the solution to it.

EXAMPLE

Presolved image CAPTCHA example, generated with the current settings.



What code is in the image? *

Enter the characters shown in the image.

Installing and configuring the Captcha module

There are many Drupal modules that offer the Captcha functionality for controlling spam in forms. We will analyse the CAPTCHA module in this section.

The CAPTCHA module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/captcha>

Although we will study the use of the Captcha module applied to the blog entries, the use of this can be extended to any form on the site.

Once installed, we will enable the **CAPTCHA** and **Image CAPTCHA** modules. The latter is necessary to generate the Captcha images. The setting of the module will be done from:

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **People** ⇒ **CAPTCHA**

The general module settings will display all of the forms available on the site. For example, the **comment_node_blog_form** form makes reference to the comments posting from the blog nodes. **F13.16**

For each form of the site we will be able to select a different type of Captcha challenge (or none). With the modules installed, we only have the **Math** types available, which is a mathematical question generated by the CAPTCHA module, and **Image**, which is a distorted image generated by the Image CAPTCHA module.

Home » Administration » Configuration » People

CAPTCHA

CAPTCHA **IMAGE CAPTCHA**

General settings Examples

A CAPTCHA can be added to virtually each Drupal form. Some default forms are already provided in the form list, but arbitrary forms can be easily added and managed when the option "Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms" is enabled.

Users with the "skip CAPTCHA" permission won't be offered a challenge. Be sure to grant this permission to the trusted users (e.g. site administrators). If you want to test a protected form, be sure to do it as a user without the "skip CAPTCHA" permission (e.g. as anonymous user).

FORM PROTECTION

Select the challenge type you want for each of the listed forms (identified by their so called *form_id's*). You can easily add arbitrary forms with textfield at the bottom of the table or with the help of the 'Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms' option below.

Default challenge type

Image (from module image_captcha)

Select the default challenge type for CAPTCHAs. This can be overridden for each form if desired.

FORM_ID	CHALLENGE TYPE	OPERATIONS
comment_node_article_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
comment_node_blog_form	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Image (from module image_captcha)	delete
comment_node_news_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
comment_node_page_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
comment_node_poll_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
contact_personal_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
contact_site_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
forum_node_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
user_login	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
user_login_block	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
user_pass	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete
user_register_form	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;" type="button" value="none"/>	delete

Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms
This option makes it easy to manage CAPTCHA settings on forms. When enabled, users with the "administer CAPTCHA settings" permission will see afieldset with CAPTCHA administration links on all forms, except on administrative pages.

Allow CAPTCHAs and CAPTCHA administration links on administrative pages
This option makes it possible to add CAPTCHAs to forms on administrative pages. CAPTCHAs are disabled by default on administrative pages (which shouldn't be accessible to untrusted users normally) to avoid the related overhead. In some situations, e.g. in the case of demo sites, it can be useful to allow CAPTCHAs on administrative pages.

CAPTCHA placement caching

F13.16**CAPTCHA module settings**

In this first group of CAPTCHA module settings we are able to choose the site forms on which a CAPTCHA type field will be displayed, also indicating the type of CAPTCHA that will be displayed to the user.

With the module installed, we will only have the Math types available, which is a mathematical type question generated by the CAPTCHA and Image module, which is a distorted image generated by the CAPTCHA Image module.

Reviewing the settings available in Form Protection, we find:

- **Default challenge type.** Default challenge type, which can be modified on each form.
- **List of forms.** A list is shown with all of the forms of the site. It will be possible to assign a type of challenge. From among those available, to each one of these forms. To arrange it so that no challenge is shown, we will present [none]. Since we are adding a CAPTCHA to the blog entries comment forms, we will locate the form called **comment_node_blog_form**, and we will then make a selection in the Image challenge type.

- **Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms.** If this setting is enabled, the users who also have the "Administer the CAPTCHA settings" permission enabled will see the direct access link to the CAPTCHA administration on each form.
- **Allow CAPTCHA challenges and the links for managing these on the administrative pages.** It will generally be unnecessary to include CAPTCHAs on the site administration pages, because access to these is restricted to registered users who are trusted. The usual thing, therefore, will be for us to leave this setting disabled.
- **CAPTCHA placement caching.** To improve the system performance, the placement of the CAPTCHAs on the forms is stored in the cache. In principle, it will only be necessary to empty the cache if we make changes to the forms concerned.

We continue by analysing other module settings options: **F13.17**

F13.17

CAPTCHA module settings

More CAPTCHA module settings options.

We can add a help message for the users and configure this in the languages available on the site.

We can also choose a distinction between upper case and lower case letters in the user's response text, and arrange it so that once a user has successfully responded to a challenge he will not have to respond any further in that session.

Add a description to the CAPTCHA
Add a configurable description to explain the purpose of the CAPTCHA to the visitor.

Challenge description
 This question is for testing whether you are a human visitor and to p
Configurable description of the CAPTCHA. An empty entry will reset the description.

Default CAPTCHA validation
 Case sensitive validation: the response has to exactly match the solution.
 Case insensitive validation: lowercase/uppercase errors are ignored.
Define how the response should be processed by default. Note that the modules that provide the actual challenges can override or ignore this.

Persistence
 Always add a challenge.
 Omit challenges in a multi-step/preview workflow once the user successfully responds to a challenge.
 Omit challenges on a form type once the user successfully responds to a challenge on a form of that type.
 Omit challenges on all forms once the user successfully responds to any challenge on the site.
Define if challenges should be omitted during the rest of a session once the user successfully responds to a challenge.

Log wrong responses
Report information about wrong responses to the log.

Save configuration

- **Add a description to the CAPTCHA.** If this setting is enabled a help message will be displayed to the user, explaining to him why it is necessary to answer the challenge correctly. We have to include this message in the Description field of the captcha, available for each language that is active on the site.
- **Default CAPTCHA validation.** In this section we can choose whether the system will distinguish between upper case and lower case letters in the text entered by the user (more restrictive) or, on the other hand, it will not make this differentiation (less restrictive).
- **Persistence.** This option enables us to configure the degree of persistence of the CAPTCHA challenges. It is particularly useful when the user has to fill in a lot of forms. For example, we can skip all of the challenges once the user has successfully passed a CAPTCHA on the site.

- **Log wrong responses.** All of the wrong responses logged by the users will be logged. The report with this information can be consulted at: Administration ⇒ Reports ⇒ Recent log messages.

After editing these settings we will click on **Save configuration**.

Image Captcha settings

When we enable the Image CAPTCHA module, included in the CAPTCHA module, we will be enabling the Image type challenge, which is the most well-known and widely-used Captcha format.

The Image CAPTCHA module allows you to configure different parameters that will determine how the images will be displayed in the forms that this type of challenges uses. The configuration of this challenge type is done from the particular module settings page, by accessing the IMAGE CAPTCHA tab. **F13.18**

Home » **Administration** » **Configuration** » **People** » **CAPTCHA**

CAPTCHA CAPTCHA IMAGE CAPTCHA

The image CAPTCHA is a popular challenge where a random textual code is obfuscated in an image. The image is generated on the fly for each request, which is rather CPU intensive for the server. Be careful with the size and computation related settings.

EXAMPLE

Resolved image CAPTCHA example, generated with the current settings.

h Bm 9 a

What code is in the image? *
hBm9a

Enter the characters shown in the image.

CODE SETTINGS

Characters to use in the code
aAbBCdEeFfGhijKLmNPQRStWXYZ23456789

Code length
5

The code length influences the size of the image. Note that larger values make the image generation more CPU intensive.

F13.18

Image CAPTCHA settings

We can configure how the CAPTCHA images will be displayed in the forms that this question type uses.

Among other settings, we will be able to indicate:

- Which **characters** will be used in the code.
- **Length** of the code in characters.
- **Font type and size**, as well as the type of spacing between characters.
- Different **setting related to the image** generated: background colour, text colour, image format, etc.
- **Distortion and noise**. By adding distortion to the image we make it difficult for robots to work, although an excessive distortion can make it hard to for people to interpret the image.

Captcha module permissions

The CAPTCHA module adds two new permissions: **F13.19**

- **Administer CAPTCHA settings.** The users with this permission will be able to access the module settings page and to modify the settings that have already been seen.
- **Skip CAPTCHA.** The users who have this permission enabled will be able to send forms without completing the CAPTCHA. The CAPTCHA challenge will simply not be displayed to the user.

F13.19

CAPTCHA permissions

Permissions added by the CAPTCHA module.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
CAPTCHA			
Administer CAPTCHA settings	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Skip CAPTCHA Users with this permission will not be offered a CAPTCHA.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Testing the Captcha module

The **admin** user, which we are working with, is a user with the **administrator** role and who has the **Skip CAPTCHA** permission enabled, and so we will not be able to test the use of CAPTCHA with it, because it will not be displayed on the forms. We will therefore have to access as an anonymous user or enter the site with another user who is not an administrator (as long as you have permissions to promote comments).

If we access a blog entry published on the site and we attempt to add a comment, the Captcha Image type challenge will be displayed on the form. In the case of the correct characters not being entered, the comment will not be sent and the form will be re-loaded with a new image, giving the user another opportunity. **F13.20**

With this measure we mainly avoid the SPAM robots inserting publicity in the comments of the site blog entry.

Add new comment

Your name demouser

Subject Comment with CAPTCHA

Comment*

Comment

Text format

Filtered HTML

More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

CAPTCHA

This question is for testing whether you are a human visitor and to prevent automated spam submissions.

4NfGC

What code is in
the image?*

4NfDC

Enter the characters shown in the image.

Save

Preview

Other types of Captcha challenge

Using additional modules we can add some additional challenge types that are compatible with the CAPTCHA module studied.

For example, the **CAPTCHA Pack** module extends the catalogue of Captcha challenges; add text-based challenges (such as completing a sentence or searching for an unrelated Word), CSS-based effects or even a random selector of the Captcha type to be used on the form. **F13.21**

F13.20**Comment with
CAPTCHA**

We have configured the Blog content type so that it is necessary to identify the code displayed in the Captcha Image when a comment is sent as a response to a Blog entry.

F13.21**CAPTCHA Pack**

Some examples of Captcha included in the CAPTCHA Pack module.

CHALLENGE "LOST CHARACTERS" BY MODULE "LOST_CHARACTER_CAPTCHA"

Enter the missing character from the following word *

ke_board: y

[10 more examples of this challenge.](#)

CHALLENGE "MATH CAPTCHA" BY MODULE "MATH_CAPTCHA"

Math question *

seven + seven = 14

Solve this math question and enter the solution with digits. E.g. for "two plus four = ?" enter "6".

[10 more examples of this challenge.](#)

CHALLENGE "PHRASE CAPTCHA" BY MODULE "PHRASE_CAPTCHA"

What is the fifth last word in the CAPTCHA phrase above? *

- nevov
- qiq
- xacufez
- ive
- arej
- osusat

[10 more examples of this challenge.](#)

14 Forums

Forums are a typical web 2.0 communication tool. Drupal integrates the Forum module into the core, which makes it possible to create multiple forums on the site.

It is a simple module but one which, with the help of other complementary modules, is going to enable us to build forums with the functionalities that are common in this type of tool.

Comparative D7/D6

The Forum module has not evolved substantially as compared to its version in Drupal 6. We will be able to find differences in the additional modules that complement it.

The Forum module creates a new type of content called a Forum post, which will make it possible to add discussion topics in the forums. The replies to each forum post are made via the nodes comments system, which has already been studied in earlier units. Furthermore, containers and forums are created by making use of the taxonomy system. As Forum makes use of other core modules (node, comment, taxonomy), it will be possible to apply the generic functionalities that are applied to those modules to the forums.

Unit contents

14.1 Installation and configuration of Forum	242
14.2 Additional modules.....	251



14.1

Installation and configuration of Forum

Drupal integrates the **Forum** module into the core, which makes it possible to create forums on the site.

It comes by default in the Drupal installation, forming part of the core, although we will find it initially disabled.

Step by step we will see how to install and configure Forum so as to create a set of forums on our website.

Step 1. Enable the Forum module

To enable the **Forum** module, we have to go to the **Modules** administration area (/admin/modules) and, before enabling it, check the relationships with other modules. **F14.1**

The **Forum module** depends on the **Taxonomy, Options, Field, Field SQL storage, Comment and Text** modules, all enabled by default, and therefore we will be able to enable **Forum** by clicking on the **enabling box** and then on **Save configuration**. The system will inform us about whether there has been any error during the installation of the module.

F14.1

Forum Activation

The Forum module depends on Taxonomy, Options, Field, Field SQL storage, Comment and Text, all enabled.

ENABLED	NAME	VERSION	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Filter	7.12	Filters content in preparation for display. Required by: Drupal	Help Permissions Configure
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Forum	7.12	Provides discussion forums. Requires: Taxonomy (enabled), Options (enabled), Field (enabled), Field SQL storage (enabled), Comment (enabled), Text (enabled)	Help Permissions Configure
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Help	7.12	Manages the display of online help.	Help

Step 2. Creation of containers and forums

Once installed, we can now create the structure of **containers** and **forums** that the website will have. The **containers** are no more than a way of grouping several **forums** together. The **forum topics**, a new content type generated by the module, will be displayed on the forums, which will be used by the users to create new discussions in the forum.

To understand this better, we see the structure that we will build in this section: **F14.2 General forums** will be a container, while **Advertisements and news, Help, General forum** and **Cafe** are the forums contained in it.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F14.2

Containers and forums

Example of structure of containers and forums.

Forums

[+ Add new Forum topic](#)

Forum	Topics	Posts	Last post
General Forums			
 News	0	0	n/a
 General discussion	0	0	n/a
 Help & Support	0	0	n/a

To manage the containers and forums, access: **F14.3**

Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Forums

The screenshot shows the 'Forums' administration page. At the top, there are 'LIST' and 'SETTINGS' tabs. Below the tabs, a message says 'Forums contain forum topics. Use containers to group related forums.' There are two buttons at the bottom left: '+ Add container' and '+ Add forum', which are both highlighted with a red box. The main area shows a table with one row:

NAME	OPERATIONS
General Forums	edit container

URL Forums
/admin/structure/forum

F14.3

Forum settings

From the Forum settings area, we will create the containers and forums of the site, as well as configuring the global options for all of the forums.

The module settings page will display the containers and forums created as we are making them. The **Add container** and **Add forum** links will allow us to create a structure of forums and containers on the site.

As an example, we will create the containers and forums structure: **F14.2**

- General Forums (container)
 - o News
 - o General discussion
 - o Help & Support

By clicking on **Add container** we will create the "General Forums" container. As this is the first item of the structure, in Parent we will indicate <root>. **F14.4**

The screenshot shows the 'Create a container' form. It has the following fields:

- Container name ***: General Forums
- Description**: Description and guidelines for forums within this container.
- Parent ***: <root>
- Weight**: 0

Below the form, a note says: 'Containers are usually placed at the top (root) level, but may also be placed inside another container or forum.'

F14.4

Creating a container

Containers are used to group forums together. Containers are created by clicking on **Add container**.

We will then create the forums associated with the previous container, by clicking on **Add Forum**. All of these forums will be “children” of the **General Forums** container. **F14.5**

F14.5

Creating a forum

Every forum can be associated with a unique container (Parent). The forum is created by clicking on **Add forum**.

Note: the forums can also be children of other forums (sub-forums) and not just containers.

A forum holds related forum topics.

Forum name *
News
Short but meaningful name for this collection of threaded discussions.

Description
Description and guidelines for discussions within this forum.

Parent *
General Forums

Forums may be placed at the top (root) level, or inside another container or forum.

Weight
0

Forums are displayed in ascending order by weight (forums with equal weights are displayed alphabetically).

Save

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

From the forums settings page we will see the structure of containers and forums created, being able to sort and edit these items. **F14.6**

F14.6

Structure of containers and forums

The added list is shown in the list of forums and containers. From this page we can sort them, using the sorting icon (drag and drop).

Forums contain forum topics. Use containers to group related forums.

More help

+ Add container + Add forum

NAME	OPERATIONS
+ General Forums	edit container
+ News	edit forum
+ General discussion	edit forum
+ Help & Support	edit forum

Show row weights

Save

In reality, the forums and containers are **taxonomy terms**, created under the **Forums** vocabulary (access Taxonomy administration to check this). As these are taxonomy terms we will be able to control the presentation of the forums, modifying the fields and the presentation of the Forums vocabulary.

Step 3. Go to the Forums

We have now created the forums and containers, but where are they linked on the site?

A new link has been created in the **Navigation** menu, which is called **Forums**.

F14.7

Home

Navigation

- ▶ Add content
- ▶ Blogs
- ▶ **Forums**

Recent blog posts

Another blog entry
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54
Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacus lacinia et ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu. Sit amet ornare sollicitudin, ipsum lorem faucibus urna, at congue odio nisl sit amet augue.

[Read more](#)

F14.7**Link to Forums**

We can access the forums using the **Forums** link that appear in the **Navigation** menu.

From this link we will be able to access the main page of the forums, where the forums will be displayed, grouped together by the containers. We can also directly access the forums page by means of the URL </forum>. **F14.8**

Forums

[+ Add new Forum topic](#)

Forum	Topics	Posts	Last post
General Forums			
 News	0	0	n/a
 General discussion	0	0	n/a
 Help & Support	0	0	n/a

F14.8**Access to the forums**

General view of forums, available at </forum>.

Step 4. Forum settings

Before creating posts in the forums, we are going to go back to the forums administration area in order to configure the **Settings** that are common to all of the forums:

[Administration ⇒ Structure ⇒ Forums \[Settings tab\]](#)

URL Forums (Settings)
</admin/structure/forum/settings>

Among the settings available are: **F14.10**

- **Hot topic threshold.** A hot topic is a topic that is very much followed by the users (a lot of replies). With this value we will determine after what number of replies we will consider the topic is *hot*. We will set this at 5.
- **Topics per page.** This determines number of discussion topics that are displayed on each page. We will set this at 10.
- **Default order.** This determines the way in which the discussion topics will be displayed. We will show the discussion topics sorted by Date, and in such a way that the latest ones (the newest ones) that have been promoted are shown first.

Do not forget to **save configuration** once these settings have been modified.

F14.10**Forum Settings**

Among the general settings of the forums we can select the threshold of a hot topic, the number of topics per page and the order in which the forum topics will be displayed.

Home » Administration » Structure » Forums

Forums

LIST SETTINGS

Adjust the display of your forum topics. Organize the forums on the [forum structure page](#).

Hot topic threshold
5

The number of replies a topic must have to be considered "hot".

Topics per page
10

Default number of forum topics displayed per page.

Default order

- Date – newest first
- Date – oldest first
- Posts – most active first
- Posts – least active first

Default display order for topics.

Save configuration

Step 5. Create a forum topic

We can now create a forum topic or post. From the forums page (/forum), we will first select the forum on which we want to publish the discussion topic, and we will then click on **Add new forum Topic**. We can also use the **Forum topic** link, which is shown in **Add content**, together with the rest of the content types available. The sole difference is that if we have selected the forum beforehand, it will not be necessary to select the forum in the Forum topic creation form.

In any event we do not create the forum topics from the **Add content** setting, but rather we will do this directly from the link available on each forum (they both link to the same page of **Create Forum topic**, at the URL </node/add/forum>).

Among the fields available for the publication of **Forum topic**, in addition to the ones that are common to the other content types, we will see the **Forums** field, where we will select the Forum on which the topic will be published.

F14.11**Create forum topic**

To create a forum topic we will have to create a **Forum topic** node. As the specific field, we have to select the forum that the topic is targeted at.

Home » Add content

Create Forum topic

Subject *
Final project due date

Body (Edit summary)
The guidelines for the final project will be released during the semester.

Text format Filtered HTML

More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

Forums *
-News

If we publish a topic on any of the forums, this will be displayed on the forum page, also showing the number of replies that the topic has; who created it and when; and who and when the last reply was sent. **F14.12**

News

[+ Add new Forum topic](#)

	Topic	Replies	Last reply▼
	Final project due date By admin 7 sec ago	0	n/a



F14.12

Forum with published topics

A list is displayed on the forum page with the topics posted and the number of replies of each one of these.

Step 6. Reply to a discussion topic

The **Figure** shows a topic published in the general Forum in which a comment has been made. We can publish further comments or reply to the comment published via the **Add new comment** form.

Final project due date

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 22:32

Forums:
[News](#)

The guidelines for the final project will be released during the semester.

demouser
Mon,
02/13/2012 -
22:34
[permalink](#)

Thanks!
Thanks!
[reply](#)

F14.13

Add new comment

The **Forum module** uses the general **comments** of the site for the publication of replies to the forum topics posted.

Add new comment

Your name	<input type="text"/>
Subject	<input type="text"/>
Comment *	<input type="text"/>

Step 7. Forums comment settings

The forums use comments (of the **Forum topics** node type) to present the replies to a topic. This means that we will be able to modify the behavior of the replies in the forum by **changing the contents settings** in the **Forum topic content type**.

To configure the comments access the **Comment settings** tab at: **F14.14**

Administration ⇒ **Structure** ⇒ **Content types** ⇒ **Forum topic [edit]**

In **Unit 5** you will find further information about the comment settings available (section 5.1 Creating and configuring content types).

F14.14

Comment settings

By modifying the comment settings of the Forum topic content, we will modify the behavior of the replies on the forums.

Submission form settings	Default comment setting for new content
Subject	<input type="button" value="Open"/>
Publishing options	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Threading Show comment replies in a threaded list.
Published	
Display settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display author and date information.
Display author and date information.	
Comment settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Comments per page 50
Open, Threading , 50 comments per page	
Menu settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Anonymous commenting Anonymous posters may not enter their contact information
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow comment title
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show reply form on the same page as comments
	Preview comment
	<input type="radio"/> Disabled
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Optional
	<input type="radio"/> Required

Step 8. Permissions settings

We then have to configure the permissions associated with the forums for each one of the roles of the site.

As we have already seen, the Forum module makes use of its own content type (Forum post) and of the Drupal comments system. Knowing this function we will easily find the permissions that affect the configuration of the forums in the following modules:

- **Forum Module.** This contains the “Administer forums” permission. The users with this permission will be able to administer the forums: create, edit and eliminate forums and containers. **F14.15**

F14.15

Forum permissions

Permission for administering forums.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Forum			
Administer forums	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- **Comment Module.** In order to be able to publish replies to the Forum posts, users must have permission to publish comments on the site, whether with approval or without it. **F14.16**

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Comment			
Administer comments and comment settings	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Post comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Skip comment approval	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit own comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

F14.16**Permissions related to the Comment forums**

We will have to configure the permissions of the site comments in order to control the replies.

- **Node Module.** Finally, given that the Forum module adds the Forum topic content type, we will have to configure the corresponding permissions in the Node module. Among other settings, these permissions will make it possible to configure which users can add new topics to the forum. **F14.17**

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
<i>Forum topic: Create new content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Forum topic: Edit own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Forum topic: Edit any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Forum topic: Delete own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Forum topic: Delete any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

F14.17**Permissions related to the Mode forums**

In the Node module we will be able to configure the permissions of the Forum topic content type.

With the permissions shown in the previous figures, the site will be configured so that registered users can publish forum posts and replies to these. Anonymous users will be able to see the topic and replies published on the forum, but it will be necessary to be registered on the site to be able to reply to or publish new topic. Only the administrator user will be able to administer the forums.

Check that the functioning is correct by accessing as an anonymous user and as a registered user.

Step 9. Forum module blocks

To finish studying the Forum module, we see the blocks that are available once the module has been installed. **F14.18**

- The **Active forum topics** block shows the latest topics in which a comment has been published.
- The **New forum topics** block shows the latest topics published.

F14.18

Forum module blocks

The module includes two blocks with dynamic information: Active topics and new topics.

Active forum topics

- Final project due date

[More](#)

New forum topics

- Final project due date

[More](#)

Another blog entry

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54

Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacus lacinia : ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue : nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu. sit amet ornare sollicitudin, ipsum lorem faucibus urna, at congue odio nisl sit amet augue

[Read more](#)

Note that the topics are shown in the blocks with no distinction as regards the forum in which they have been published.

These blocks will be available from the blocks administration area. To check their functioning, enable them in any region of the topic.

Additional modules

14.2

The Forum module uses a content type and the comments of this as a base for its functioning. This means that, in general, we will be able to make use of the modules that add or modify the functionality of the content types and the site comments as a Forum complement.

As an example of this versatility we will see that some of the modules that have already been studied are also applicable to the forums, as is the case with the **Comment notify** and **Captcha** modules. We will also see the Advanced Forum module, which adds new functionalities to the forums.

Comment Notify module applied to the forums

The **Comment Notify** module was studied in **Unit 13 (section 13.2)**, applied to the publication of comments on the Blogs. Given that Comment Notify can be used with any content type, we will also be able to apply it to the Forum topic content type. In this way, when a user publishes a reply or comment to a forum topic, he will be able to receive e-mail notifications every time that new comments are published in the same post.

Accessing the Comment Notify settings from:

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **People** ⇒ **Comment notify**

we will need to enable the **Forum Post** content type in the **Content types to enable for comment notification**. **F14.19**

URL Comment notify
/admin/config/people/comment_notify

Home » Administration » Configuration » People
Comment notify

Content types to enable for comment notification

- Article
- Basic page
- Blog entry
- Forum topic**
- News
- Poll

Comments on content types enabled here will have the option of comment notification.

Available subscription modes

- All comments
- Replies to my comment

Choose which notification subscription styles are available for users

F14.19

Configuration of the Comment Notify module for forums

We will be able to change some of the parameters in the configuration of the **Comment notify** module so as to adjust their behavior.

First we will have to enable the module for it to be used with the Forum topic content type.

The rest of the module configuration settings can be consulted in **Unit 13** (section 13.2 Comments notification publication with Comment notify).

CAPTCHA module applied to the forums

The CAPTCHA module was also studied in Unit 13 (section 13.3), applied to the publication of comments in the Blogs. Given that CAPTCHA can be used in any site form, we will be able to apply it in both the publication of new forum topics and in the publication of replies or comments to the same.

From:

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ People ⇒ CAPTCHA

We can indicate the forms in which the CAPTCHA question will be applied, and we can also select the question type (mathematics question, image, etc.)

Two forms are involved in the Forum module, identified as: **F14.20**

- **comment_node_forum_form.** This is the form that is presented for publishing comments or replies in the forum topics.
- **forum_node_form.** This is the forum that is presented to create or edit forum topics.

F14.20

Configuration of the CAPTCHA module for forums

Forum module forms where we can apply a CAPTCHA question.

FORM_ID	CHALLENGE TYPE	OPERATIONS
comment_node_article_form	[none]	delete
comment_node_blog_form	Image (from module image_captcha)	delete
comment_node_news_form	[none]	delete
comment_node_page_form	[none]	delete
comment_node_poll_form	[none]	delete
contact_personal_form	[none]	delete
contact_site_form	[none]	delete
forum_node_form	Image (from module image_captcha)	delete
user_login	[none]	delete

The other module configuration settings can be consulted in **Unit 13** (section 13.3 SPAM control with CAPTCHA).

Advanced Forum Module

The **Advanced Forum** module adds new functionalities to the forums of the Drupal core. Among other things, this makes it possible to select among various styles that will improve the graphic appearance of the forums.

The Advanced Forum module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/advanced_forum

Once installed, we will be able to configure the module from: **F14.21**

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Content authoring⇒ Advanced Forum

The **Advanced forum style** setting makes it possible to select from among a set of design templates that modify the graphic appearance of the forums. Although the module is conceived of in order to modify the appearance of the forums, we can configure this to change the appearance of other content types (**Types of node that the style will be applied to**).

F14.21

Advanced Forum settings

With Advanced Forum we can configure the way in which the topics and replies are displayed. This also includes templates for modifying the design of the forums.

Other settings make it possible to add extra tabs **F14.22** so as to show the new posts, my posts and unanswered topics. We will also be able to enable the number of comments per forum in the list of forums.

As we saw in the previous section, forums and containers are **taxonomy terms** created under the **Forums** vocabulary. Through the Advanced Forum module, we can select an image field that will be displayed on the page of each forum. This field must be created in advance and associated with the **Forums vocabulary**.

F14.22**Advanced Forum settings**

Other configuration settings of the Advanced Forum module. For example, we can show the number of comments per forum in the list of forums, and enable images for each forum.

FORUM AND TOPIC LISTS

Disable breadcrumbs
Check this to disable breadcrumbs in the forum if you are using another module to customize them. Does not affect node pages and does not work when Page Manager is overriding forum pages.

Get the number of new comments per forum on the forum list
Core forum shows the number of new topics. If checked, Advanced Forum will get the number of new comments as well and show it under "posts" on the forum overview. Slow query not recommended on large forums.

Number of characters to display for the topic title

Used on main forum page. Enter 0 to use the full title.

FORUM IMAGE SETTINGS

Image field

The image field to use to display forum images.

Forum image style

The image style to apply to the images.

Save configuration

In **Figure F14.23** we see the final appearance of the forum after one of the styles included in the Advanced Forum module have been applied to it.

F14.23**Permissions related to the Node forums**

In the Node section we will be able to configure the permissions of the Forum topic content type.

Forums

General Forums

	Forum	Topics	Posts	Last post
	News	1	2	Final project due... by demouser 13 min 42 sec ago
	General discussion	0	0	n/a
	Help & Support	0	0	n/a

Forum Tools

New posts No new posts

15 Structured Documents: Books

A book in Drupal is a set of pages that are linked and organised into a hierarchical structures, such as chapters, sections and sub-sections. Books can be used to display contents on our site such as manuals, tutorials, lists of frequently-asked questions or other materials which, because of their nature, require a hierarchical organisation.

Drupal manages books by means of a core module, which is disabled by default. By enabling this module we will be able to create new nodes of a specific content type, the book Page, which we will then be able to organise into the structure that we want, where some items can be children of others, thus endowing it with the form of a book.

In this unit we will also see that there are many modules available in the official Drupal repository modules that could vary functionalities of this module or add new ones, so as to manage to adjust their functioning to our needs.

Comparative D7/D6

The Book module has not evolved substantially as compared to its version Drupal 6. We will be able to find differences in the additional modules that complement it.

Many of the modules that are available Drupal 6 do not yet have stable version of these available in Drupal 7. The alpha and beta versions of the modules have to be used carefully, because incompatibilities with other additional modules installed could be found.

Unit contents

15.1 Enabling and configuration of the Book	256
15.2 Additional modules for Books	263

15

15.1

Enabling and configuration of the Book module

Drupal incorporates the **Book** module core, which is disabled by default. A book in Drupal is a set of pages that is linked and organised into a hierarchical structure, which could be chapters, sections and sub-sections. Books can be used to display contents on our site such as manuals, tutorials, lists of frequently-asked questions or other materials which, because of their nature, require a hierarchical organisation.

By enabling the Book module, we will be able to create new nodes of the content type, a **Book page**, which we will then be able to organise into the structure that we want, where some items can be children of others, thus endowing it with the form of a book.

The pages of a book will automatically display links to the next and previous pages, at the upper levels and at the start of the book. **F15.1**

We will also see that the Book module has a bloc that facilitates browsing through the books of the site.

F15.1

Book page

Example of contents of the course structured with the Book module.

The book page includes links to its child pages and links to earlier and later contents.

[Home](#) » Expert in Drupal 7. Beginner

Unit 11. Taxonomy

Lore ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Fusce urna libero, egestas vel dapibus et, viverra nec lectus. Sed placerat dui et lacus ultrices, nec commodo metus faucibus. Fusce hendrerit vulputate arcu, aliquam accumsan erat varius ut. Vivamus nec est cursus, sodales felis eget, fermentum mi. Pellentesque dictum commodo lobortis.

Phasellus hendrerit lobortis tincidunt. In viverra purus mi, quis sagittis lectus mollis mollis. Fusce iaculis sem imperdiet tellus porttitor, quis gravida nunc tincidunt. Donec elit dui, porta at tempus vitae, faucibus in augue. Vestibulum consequat varius erat, nec auctor elit pellentesque vitae. Maecenas orci lectus, vehicula consectetur viverra nec, pretium nec nisi. Morbi pretium, orci quis lobortis feugiat, quam mi viverra ante, in tempus magna arcu eget ipsum. Cras malesuada, mi non porta aliquam, odio velit tempor enim, molestie ullamcorper lectus ante et nunc. Curabitur a ligula in enim ullamcorper euismod. Suspendisse potenti.

Pellentesque vitae varius arcu. Cras eget urna nec dolor ultrices consequat. Suspendisse hendrerit ultrices est non vestibulum. Vivamus tellus neque, aliquam ac ante sed, egestas blandit nibh. Nullam aliquam pulvinar euismod. Nullam vitae enim augue. Ut risus velit, elementum a pellentesque aliquet, iaculis sit amet sapien.

- [11.1 Vocabularies and terms](#)
- [11.2 Categorize contents](#)
- [11.3 Additional modules](#)

[< 10.4 Additional user fields](#)

[up](#)

[11.1 Vocabularies and terms >](#)

Enabling of the module and creation of book pages

The Book module is available in the Drupal core, and therefore we will only need to enable it to begin to use it. As it does not have relationships with other modules, we will enable this directly from the modules administration area.

Once enabled, we will have the book Page content type available, with which we will create the pages of the book.

To **create a new book page** we will access:

Administration ⇒ Content ⇒ Add content ⇒ Book page

URL Create Book page
/node/add/book

The form for the creation of a **Book page** is similar to that of creating a Basic page, with the Title and Body fields. The only difference is that, in addition to the groups of settings that all content types have (Menu settings, Review information, URL path settings, etc.); the book Page has a **Book outline**, with these settings: **F15.2**

Home » Add content

Create Book page

Title *
Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner

Body (Edit summary)
Main book page

Text format Filtered HTML More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Allowed HTML tags: <a> <cite> <blockquote> <code> <dl> <dt> <dd>
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

Menu settings
Not in menu

Book outline

<create a new book>

Your page will be a part of the selected book.

This will be the top-level page in this book.

Weight
0

Pages at a given level are ordered first by weight and then by title.

Save Preview

F15.2

Creating a Book page

After enabling the Book module of the Drupal core, we can now create nodes of the Book page content type.

The first page of the book will be the one responsible for creating the book, being converted into the home page or the page of the highest-level page of the book.

- **Book.** This makes it possible to specify the book page that will be created beneath which book and which book page.

Along with the first page of the book we will create the book **<create a new book>**. This will be the home page or the highest level of the book. We will be able to assign the rest of the pages to the first page or to the next pages created, depending on the structure of the pages to be created.

- **Weight.** The pages of a book are sorted by weight. All of the pages that are on the same level (and beneath this same book page), will first be sorted by the weight field and then by alphabetical order, in the case of them having the same weight.

By clicking on **Save** we will have created the front page of the book.

Structure of book pages

To continue we will create the next structure of book page son three levels (home page – unit – section):

- Book Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner level
 - o Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal
 - 1.1 What a CMS is
 - 1.2 What it is and what can be done with Drupal
 - 1.3 From Drupal 6 to Drupal 7
 - 1.4 Drupal 7 architecture
 - o Unit 2. Drupal Installation
 - 2.1. Downloading and installing Drupal
 - 2.2. Accessing the status report
 - o Unit 3. The administration area
 - 3.1. The management menu
 - 3.2. Control panel
 - 3.3. Shortcuts
 - 3.4. General site configuration

To create each one of the pages we can create a new content of the Book page type, as we have already seen, or follow the "**Add child page**" link that is displayed on the pages of the book that have already been created. The second method facilitates the creation of pages in an organised way. **F15.3**

To facilitate browsing through the book, an index will be displayed with links to these on each page with children. **F15.3**

F15.3

Book page with Add child page link.

A list with its child pages, should it have any, is displayed on each book page.

Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal

[View](#) [Edit](#) [Outline](#) [Track](#)

Submitted by admin on Fri, 01/24/2014 - 11:20

In this first unit, we will review some of the fundamental concepts to understand what Drupal is, what it is for and which elements form it.

- o 1.1. What is a CMS
- o 1.2. What is Drupal and what can you do with it
- o 1.3. From Drupal 6 to Drupal 7
- o 1.4. Drupal 7's Architecture

[« Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner](#)

[up](#)

[1.1. What is a CMS »](#)

[Add child page](#) [Printer-friendly version](#) [5 reads](#)

The **Outline** tab that is available on each page displays the current location of the page in the structure of the book. From this tab we can relocate the page, changing its parent item or even indexing in another book. **F15.4**

The outline feature allows you to include pages in the [Book hierarchy](#), as well as move them within the hierarchy or to [reorder an entire book](#).

BOOK OUTLINE

Book
Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner

Your page will be a part of the selected book.

Parent item
-- Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal

The parent page in the book. The maximum depth for a book and all child pages is 9. Some pages in the selected book may not be available as parents if selecting them would exceed this limit.

Weight
0

Pages at a given level are ordered first by weight and then by title.

Update book outline Remove from book outline

F15.4

Outline tab of a Book page

The Outline tab enables us to relocate the page at any other point of the structure of the book or even move it to another book.

We can also vary this setting by editing the node and accessing the **Book outline** section, as we did in creating the node.

Printer-friendly version

The book pages display a **Printer-friendly version** link, which generates a page with no styles that is ready to be printed off. **F15.5**

Unit 11. Taxonomy

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Nullam ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Fusce urna libero, egestas vel dapibus et, viverra nec lectus. Sed placerat dui et lacus ultrices, nec commodo metus faucibus. Fusce hendrerit vulputate arcu, aliquam accumsan erat varius ut. Vivamus nec est cursus, sodales felis eget, fermentum mi. Pellentesque dictum commodo lobortis.

11.1 Vocabularies and terms

Suspendisse hendrerit ultrices est non vestibulum. Vivamus tellus neque, aliquam ac ante sed, egestas blandit nibh. Nullam aliquam pulvinar euismod. Nullam vitae enim augue. Ut risus velit, elementum a pellentesque aliquet, iaculis sit amet sapien. Aliquam eleifend augue metus, vitae hendrerit mauris luctus at. Vivamus egestas justo odio, eget accumsan nunc sagittis vel. Morbi quis est dignissim, mattis elit quis, fringilla nibh. In congue massa a quam dignissim fringilla. Nulla non nibh viverra urna dapibus faucibus sodales nec orci. Proin nec felis cursus, porttitor nisl eu, lacinia odio. Duis vehicula tortor vitae est fermentum sollicitudin. Donec ultrices auctor dolor, et pharetra magna hendrerit id. Etiam ut mattis tellus, ac lobortis purus.

11.2 Categorize contents

Pellentesque vitae varius arcu. Cras eget urna nec dolor ultrices consequat. Suspendisse hendrerit ultrices est non vestibulum. Vivamus tellus neque, aliquam ac ante sed, egestas blandit nibh. Nullam aliquam pulvinar euismod. Nullam vitae enim augue. Ut risus velit, elementum a pellentesque aliquet, iaculis sit amet sapien. Aliquam eleifend augue metus, vitae hendrerit mauris luctus at. Vivamus egestas justo odio, eget accumsan nunc sagittis vel. Morbi quis est dignissim, mattis elit quis, fringilla nibh. In congue massa a quam dignissim fringilla. Nulla non nibh viverra urna dapibus faucibus sodales nec orci. Proin nec felis cursus, porttitor nisl eu, lacinia odio.

As we will see later on, to show or hide this link we have to configure the permissions of the Book module.

F15.5

Outline tab of a Book page

The Outline tab enables us to relocate the page at any other point of the structure of the book or even move it to another book.

Managing the books

To manage the books created and some configuration settings of the Book we will go to: **F15.6**

URL Managing books
/admin/content/book

F15.6

Managing books

Page for managing the books created on the site.

Administration ⇒ Content [Books tab]

The book module offers a means to organize a collection of related content pages, collectively known as a book. When viewed, this content automatically displays links to adjacent book pages, providing a simple navigation system for creating and reviewing structured content.

BOOK	OPERATIONS
Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner	edit order and titles

We have two tabs on this page: **Settings** and **List**.

In the **List** tab (default tab), we will see a list with the books created on the site. By means of the “edit order and titles” link we will be able to make changes in the book structure, such as rearranging the pages and changing the titles. We also have direct links to the book pages, with the opportunity to view them, edit them and eliminate them. **F15.7**

F15.7

Edit order and titles

We can easily organise the structure of a book by modifying the order of the pages and its titles.

TITLE	OPERATIONS
Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal	view edit delete
1.1 What is a CMS?	view edit delete

Books configuration settings

From the books management page we can access the **Settings** tab.

In this section we will be able to establish which content types can be book outlines. Only the Book page is established by default, but we can select other content types from among those available.

We can also establish which content types will be valid for creating children. In this case we will only be able to choose one single content type, with the type selected by default being the book page. **F15.8**

Home » Administration » Content » Books

Content CONTENT BOOKS COMMENTS

List **Settings**

Content types allowed in book outlines *

Article
 Basic page
 Blog entry
 Book page
 Forum topic
 News
 Poll

Users with the *Administer book outlines* permission can add all content types.

Content type for child pages *

Article
 Basic page
 Blog entry
 Book page
 Forum topic
 News
 Poll

Save configuration

F15.8**Module configuration settings**

The **Book** module allows us to establish which content types can be book outlines.

It also allows us to indicate which content type can act as child pages.

Book Navigation block

The Book module creates a new block on the site, called **Book navigation**, which displays a menu for navigating through the pages of the book. **F15.9**

Home

Home » Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner » Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal

Book navigation

- ▼ Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner
 - ▼ Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal
 - 1.1 What is a CMS?

1.1 What is a CMS?

View **Edit** **Outline**

Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 22:55

1.1 What is a CMS?

< Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal **up**

Add child page **Printer-friendly version**

F15.9**Book Navigation block**

The block shows a menu with the book pages structure.

In the block configuration, in addition to the settings that are common to the other blocks to configure the visibility of this, we have a **Book navigation block display** section, where will be able to choose between: **F15.10**

- **Show block on all pages.** The block will be displayed on all of the pages of the site, regardless of any book page is being loaded.
- **Show block only on book pages.** The block will only will be displayed when a book page is being loaded. In addition, only the structure of pages corresponding to the active book will be displayed.

F15.10**Book navigation block configuration**

We can configure the behavior of the block that displays links to books.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Blocks](#)

'Book navigation' block

Block title

 Override the default title for the block. Use <none> to display no title, or leave blank to use the default block title.

Book navigation block display

Show block on all pages
 Show block only on book pages

If *Show block on all pages* is selected, the block will contain the automatically generated menus for all of the site's books. If *Show block only on book pages* is selected, the block will contain only the one menu corresponding to the current page's book. In this case, if the current page is not in a book, no block will be displayed. The *Page specific visibility settings* or other visibility settings can be used in addition to selectively display this block.

Book module permissions

The Book module adds the following permissions: **F15.11**

- Administer book outlines.
- Create new books.
- Add content and child pages to books.
- View printer-friendly books.

F15.11**Book permissions**

Additional permissions for the Book module.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Book			
Administer book outlines	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Create new books	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add content and child pages to books	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View printer-friendly books			
View a book page and all of its sub-pages as a single document for ease of printing. Can be performance heavy.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Given that the Book module adds the **Book page** content type, it will also be necessary to configure the permissions in order to create, edit and delete contents of the Book page type in the **Node module**. **F15.12**

F15.12**Node Permissions**

Node permissions related to the Book page content types.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
<i>Book page: Create new content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Book page: Edit own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Book page: Edit any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Book page: Delete own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Book page: Delete any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Additional modules

15.2

In the Drupal modules repository we will find many modules that complement the functionalities of the Book module of the core. We will analyse some of those modules in this section.

Delete Book module

By deleting a book page, its child pages will be automatically relocated. Therefore, deleting a book or a page of a book does not mean deleting all of the child pages.

If we try to delete a book or a book page with subordinated pages, a message will be displayed notifying the relocation of the child pages. **F15.13**

Home > Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner

Are you sure you want to delete *Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner*? **VIEW** **EDIT** **OUTLINE**

Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner is part of a book outline, and has associated child pages. If you proceed with deletion, the child pages will be relocated automatically.

This action cannot be undone.

Delete **Cancel**

F15.13

Deleting the main node of the book

If we delete the main node of the book, its pages will be relocated.

In this way, if we want to delete an entire book, we will have to do this by deleting each one of its pages.

The **Book delete** module makes it possible to delete an entire Book, including all of its pages.

The module is available at: http://drupal.org/project/book_delete

We will install this and enable it following the usual modules installation process.

Once installed and enabled, we will have the "**delete book**" setting available within the list of books: **F15.14**

Administration ⇒ Content [Books tab]

URL Managing books
</admin/content/book>

When we delete a book the system will ask us if we want to delete the entire book.

Home > Administration > Content

Content **BOOKS** **COMMENTS**

CONTENT

The book module offers a means to organize a collection of related content pages, collectively known as a book. When viewed, this content automatically displays links to adjacent book pages, providing a simple navigation system for creating and reviewing structured content.

BOOK	EDIT	DELETE
Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner	edit order and titles	delete book

F15.14

Delete entire book

The Delete Book module adds the possibility of deleting an entire book, including all of its pages.

Book Block module

The Book Block module makes it possible to create a block independently for each book.

The module is available at: <http://drupal.org/project/bookblock>

After installing it and disabling it, we will be able to create the block corresponding to a book from: **F15.15**

URL Book Blocks
[/admin/content/book\(blocks](/admin/content/book(blocks)

F15.15

Book Blocks

We can create an individual block for each book from the administration of books, in the **Book Blocks** tab.

Administration ⇒ Content [Books tab] [Book Blocks tab]

We will select the books for which we want to generate a block and we will click on **Save configuration**.

The books you have created on your site will be listed below. Select which ones you would like to create a *book navigation block* for and they will then be available to you on the [blocks administration page](#), where you can control on which pages they appear and in which region.

N.B. Only books with child pages will actually display anything!

Generate a navigation block for each of the following books

Expert in Drupal 7 – Beginner

For each book that you select, a separate navigation block will be created. You can enable these blocks on the blocks administration page or use the context module.

Save configuration

The blocks available will be available at the blocks administration, identified with the name *Book block: book name*.

Within the block settings we will be able to select the **Allow menu to expand** setting, which would be the usual functioning of a navigation menu. If this setting is not checked, the block will only display links to the first level of book **F15.16** pages.

F15.16

Configuring a block of Book Block. In this way the child pages will be displayed in the block.

Override the default title for the block. Use <none> to display no title, or leave blank to use the default block title.

Allow menu to expand

If checked, the menu will expand to show child pages as the user navigates through the book. Otherwise it will only show the first level of links. You may not want the menu to expand in the footer, for example.

Once enabled, the block will display a navigation menu for the book, which is similar in appearance to the block created by the Book module. **F15.17**

F15.17

Navigation block with Book Block

Individual navigation block for the book, created with Book Block.

Book Access module

The **Book access** module makes it possible to establish individual permissions for each book (or book page). The following are among the permissions that we will be able to configure with this module: administer access, edit pages, delete pages, add child pages, edit outline and view the book.

The **Book access** module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/book_access

The module requires the overall installation of the **Variable API** module.

The **Variable API** module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/vars>

We will also see that the Book access module comprises two modules, Book access and Book access UI, and both of these have to be enabled.

The module will permit us to establish permissions for every book or book page, and therefore the configuration will be done from the book page from which we want to apply the permissions. We will find a new tab called **Book Access** on every book page. **F15.18**

ROLE/USER	ADMINISTER ACCESS	EDIT PAGES	DELETE PAGES	ADD CHILD PAGES	EDIT OUTLINE	VIEW THIS BOOK	OPERATIONS
admin (author)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
anonymous user	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
authenticated user	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
administrator	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
moderator	<input type="checkbox"/>						
editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
	Add user						
Save configuration							

F15.18

Book Access tab

To configure access to each book we will use the Book Access module.

After its installation, in the Book Access tab of each book, we will configure the permissions of access to this specific book.

It is important to take account of the fact that the permissions that we establish here will not have any effect for the users who already have permission for administering nodes enabled. For example, if a user has the **Administer content** permission (we can check this in **People** ⇒ **Permissions**) then this

configuration will not affect him, because it is considered that said permission overrides the permissions that are established.

In the display by Book Access table we will be able to assign permissions to the user who is the author of the book (in this case, *admin*) and to all of the roles of the site. We will be able to establish the following permissions for each role:

- **Administer access.** This makes it possible to access this permissions administration table and vary its configuration.
- **Edit pages.** This makes it possible to edit all of the pages of the book.
- **Delete pages.** This makes it possible to delete any page of the book.
- **Add child pages.** This makes it possible to create new pages within this book.
- **Edit outline.** This makes it possible to vary the book outline (view the Book outline tab and vary its structure).
- **View this book.** The users with this permission enable will be able to view the book (Includes all of the child pages).

This module allows us to restrict the access permissions to all of those functions taking account of specific roles or users. At the end of the table we will see a row in which we will be able to write the name of a site user, and by using the **Add user** button, this will appear in the table and we will be able to assign the corresponding permissions to it.

After establishing the setting that is best suited to the needs of the site, we will click on **Save configuration**. A message will be displayed that indicates that the book permissions are being rebuilt, and these will then take effect.

It is important to know that no change will take place in the access to the book until we use the **Save configuration** button. In order for the module to start functioning for a specific book, we have to click on Save configuration even though we have not made any change.

16 Media Galleries

Drupal 7 has a powerful contents manager available through the **Media** module. This module is used as the basis for publish media contents (videos, images, audio, documents, etc.), even when those contents are directly furnished by external service providers such as YouTube, Flickr, Vimeo, etc.

By using the base facilitated by the Media module, the Media Gallery module allows us to implement a media gallery including not just images, but also all of the contents types supported by Media. This therefore includes the contents of external providers.

In this unit we will see how to make use of all of those modules and the other modules related to the management and presentation of media content.

Comparative D7/D6

Media and Media Gallery Modules

The Media and Media Gallery modules have been developed for Drupal 7, and therefore we will not find their corresponding versions for Drupal 6.

The Media module provides Drupal 7 with a very powerful base for managing all types of media files, including those that are not contained on our server, but rather that are directly served from the web page of a particular provider (YouTube, Flickr, etc.).

In Drupal 6, we proposed Node Gallery as a module for the creation of galleries.

Unit contents

16.1 Installing and configuring the Media Gallery module.....	268
16.2 Improving the presentation of the images	277
16.3 Publication of videos and external resources	282
16.4 Managing media content	283



16.1

Installing and configuring the Media Gallery module

We will find many alternatives for creating galleries of images in the Drupal modules repositories. In this unit we will study the **Media Gallery** module, a module developed for Drupal 7 by Acquia, and so it is expected that the growth and maintenance of this will be permanent.

As we will see, this module also makes it possible to integrate videos into the gallery, converting it into a generator of not only galleries of images, but also of media galleries in general.

Step 1. Installation of the necessary modules

The **Media Gallery** module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/media_gallery

Locate the latest stable version of Drupal 7 and install it with the automatic modules installation tool.

The **Media Gallery** modules relate to several modules that we should already have enabled (List, Field, Field SQL storage, Options, Number, Image, Taxonomy). However, it also requires other modules such as **Multiple Forms**, **Media** and **Chaos tool suite (ctools)**.

The **Multiple Forms** module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/multiform>

The **Media** module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/media>

The **Chaos tool suite (ctools)** module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/ctools>

Locate and install the latest stable version of the modules for Drupal 7.

Now we have all of the necessary modules installed we can enable them. Given that the system checks the relationships, it will be enough to enable the Media Gallery module in order for the system to ask us whether we want to enable the rest of the modules required.

Step 2. Create a gallery

Once we have all of the modules enabled we can create our first gallery of images. In order to create galleries, the Media Gallery module has created a new content type called **Gallery**.

Therefore, in order to create a gallery we will do this from: **F16.1**

URL Create gallery
</node/add/media-gallery>

Administration ⇒ **Content** ⇒ **Add Content [Gallery]**

Home » Add content

Create Gallery

Create a gallery of thumbnails including custom display settings. Once your gallery is saved, your media can be added.

Title *
Drupalcamp Spain Sevilla 2011

Descripción
Pictures from Drupalcamp Spain 2011 (Sevilla).

Enable rich-text

Text format Full HTML More information about text formats

- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

GALLERY SETTINGS

Número de columnas * 4
Number of rows * 3
Media information * Show title on hover

Presentation settings

Allow downloading of the original image
Display a "download original image" link
Show media on a full page
Show media in a lightbox
Show title and description

Blocks Enabled
Menu settings
Meta tags Using defaults
Revision information No revision
URL path settings No alias
Comment settings Closed
Authoring information By admin
Publishing options Published

Create a block of most recently added media
Número de columnas * 2
Number of rows * 3

Save

F16.1**Creation of a media gallery**

The Media Gallery module adds a Gallery content type that allows us to create galleries.

In each gallery we will be able to add media contents in general (image, video, audio, etc.).

The new Gallery node will have the following fields:

- **Title** and **Description**. This information will be displayed before the images.
- **Galleries settings**. In this section we can choose some of the display options:
 - **Number of columns** and **Number of rows**. We can select the number of columns and rows that the grid in which the images will be displayed will have.

- **Media information.** We can choose between:
 - **Show the title when the mouse is moved over it.** The title of the image will only be displayed when the mouse is moved over it.
 - **Show the title below.** The title will always be displayed under each image.
 - **Do not show.** The titles of the images will not be displayed.

Allow downloading of the original image. A link will be shown when we click on the image that will allow a user to download the image in its original size.

- **Show media on a full page.** When he clicks on an image the user is directed to a page where the image is shown in a node.
- **Show media in a lightbox.** By clicking on the image we see a larger-sized popup window and the rest of the screen is darkened, but it does not re-direct us to any other page. In **section 16.2**, we will see how to improve the presentation of the galleries by using a lightbox module, necessary in order for this functionality to be available.
- **Show title and description.** We will be able to specify a title and a description for each image of the gallery. If this setting is enabled, when the user clicks on the image then the title and the description of this will also be shown. If this is not checked, only the image will be displayed.

In addition, the module has added the **Blocks** group of settings, along with the rest of the settings that are common to all of the content types. From **Blocks** we will be able to create a block with the latest images incorporated into the gallery:

- **Create a block of the most-recently added media.** If this box is checked then when this gallery is created, a block will also be created with the latest added images.
- **Number of columns** and **number of rows.** We will specify the number of rows and columns in which the images will be displayed, which may be different with respect to the same values for the presentation of the gallery on a full page.

We will click on **Save** to create the gallery with the parameters that are specified.

Step 3. Add images to the gallery

Once the gallery has been created and since we have not yet uploaded images, only the title and the description will be displayed. To start uploading the images we will click on **Add media**, a link that we will find on the gallery page. When we click on the link a popup window will be displayed for uploading a new media file (for the time being we will only upload images).

We see two tabs in this window: **F16.2**

- **Upload.** In the default tab we will be able to select a file from our equipment, so as to upload it to the server. The extensions of the permitted files are displayed.
- **Library.** The files uploaded to the server beforehand will be displayed in the Library, and we can select and incorporate them into the current gallery. This functionality makes it possible to share media files between different galleries.

Drupalcamp Spain Sevilla 2011

[View](#) [Edit gallery](#) [Edit media](#)

Pictures from Drupalcamp Spain 2011 (Sevilla)

[+ Add media](#)

After uploading images to the gallery we will be able to start seeing the end result. The images will be displayed in a grid according to the number of columns and rows that we have specified. If the gallery contains more images than will fit on a page, a pager element will be shown. **F16.3**

Drupalcamp Spain Sevilla 2011

[View](#) [Edit gallery](#) [Edit media](#)

Pictures from Drupalcamp Spain 2011 (Sevilla)

[+ Add media](#)



Forcontu en Drup...



Salón de actos



Estand de Forcontu



Foto de grupo



Sesión de despedida



La Asociación Esp...



Sorteo de libros



Estand de Forcontu

F16.2

Add images to the Media gallery

We can add images to the gallery and clicking on the **Add media** link.

F16.3

Presentation of the media gallery

The gallery shows the images arranged according to the number of columns and rows that we have established.

When the number of images of the gallery exceeds the maximum number of items per page, a pager will be displayed.

Step 4. Configuration of the gallery

Once the gallery has been created we can easily reorder the images by clicking on one of these and dropping it into the new position. The changes are saved automatically.

We can also directly access the links of editing and deleting each image, placing ourselves above one of them. The tools icon  will be displayed in the upper right hand corner and, by clicking on this, the settings available (edit and delete) will be displayed. **F16.4**

F16.4

Settings of Edit and Delete in the own image

By placing the cursor in the upper right-hand corner of an image we can access the **Edit** and **Delete** settings.



We will have access to two administration tabs from the gallery page:

- **Edit Gallery.** This enables us to change the configuration of the mode gallery created (settings described in step 2).
- **Edit media.** From this tab we will be able to complete the information about each one of the images. **F16.5**

F16.5

Edit images

We can edit the information about all of the gallery images from the **Edit media** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit image' page for the image 'Forcontu en Drupalcamp Spain 2011'. At the top, there are three buttons: 'VIEW', 'EDIT' (which is highlighted in blue), and 'REMOVE'. Below the buttons is a preview image of the photo showing four people standing together at a DrupalCamp event. The main form area contains the following fields:

- Título:** A text input field containing 'Forcontu at Drupalcamp Spain 2011'.
- Descripción:** A text area containing 'Forcontu team at Drupalcamp Spain 2011.'
- Enable rich-text:** A section with a 'Text format' dropdown set to 'Full HTML'. It includes a note: '• Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
• Lines and paragraphs break automatically.' There is also a link 'More information about text formats'.
- Etiquetas:** A text input field containing 'Forcontu, Drupalcamp Spain 2011'.
- License settings for this image ***: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Attribution, Non-Commercial'. Below it is a note: 'Select a Creative Commons license for others who use this image.'

At the bottom left is a 'Save' button.

For every image we can specify:

- **Title.** By default the title assigned to each image corresponds to the name of the file that has been uploaded. From here, we will give the most suitable title to each image.
- **Description.** The description field allows us to add additional information about the image. This will be displayed when the image is seen in its node or in the lightbox, if we have configured it in this way.
- **Tags.** The Tags field is a taxonomy field that Drupal creates during the installation of the site. This vocabulary is generally used for all of the site contents and, it is applied in the Gallery content type so as to organise the images by category or theme.
- **License settings for this image.** This makes it possible to choose among various types of author licence. If none of these is selected, the image has a restricted licence by default, with all rights reserved. There are more permissive Creative Commons licences which, for example, make it possible for other people to use the image as long as these make reference to the author.

Step5. Page that all of the galleries display

By default, the site galleries are displayed at the URL </galleries>. **F16.6**

Galleries



F16.6

"All galleries" page

All of the galleries published on the site are shown in /galleries.

To modify the behavior of this front page, we can click on the **Edit all galleries** link or access it from:

Administration⇒ Configuration ⇒ media ⇒
Gallery settings

URL Galleries settings
</admin/config/media/galleries>

The settings that we have in **Gallery settings** are: **F16.7**

- **Title.** By default the title is **Gallery**.
- **Description.** We can include a short description that will be displayed on the "All galleries" page.

- **URL alias.** By default the "All galleries" page has the "galleries" URL alias. We can change this alias to another friendlier one, such as "*galerias*" [*galleries in Spanish*]. Remember that it is not convenient to use characters with a tilde in the URL alias.
- **"All galleries" layout settings.** These settings affect the viewing of the thumbnails that represent each gallery. The settings are similar to those available on the page of each gallery.

F16.7

Galleries settings

In **Galleries settings** we will be able to modify the behavior of the "All galleries" page. This page is displayed as a gallery of galleries, showing the thumbnail of the image of each gallery.

The following settings affect the "All galleries" page, which shows a thumbnail of every gallery created.

Title *
Galleries

Description
Site galleries

Text format Plain text More information about text formats

- No HTML tags allowed.
- Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.
- Lines and paragraphs break automatically.

"All galleries" URL
http://cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/galleries

"All galleries" layout settings

All galleries Número de columnas *
4

Number of rows *
3

Gallery information *
Show title below

Save

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

When we save these changes we will see the new appearance of the Galleries page. In this example, we have changed the title, added a description and we show the title of each gallery next to its main image. When the title is shown the number of images of each gallery is also shown. **F16.8**

F16.8

"All galleries" page

The galleries that we have created on the site will be displayed on the "All galleries" page.

We have configured this page so that it can show a general description and the titles of the galleries. When the title is shown, the number of items contained in each one of the galleries is also shown.

All the multimedia galleries of our website.

Drupal courses 7 images, 2 videos

View Edit all galleries

Step 6. Galleries block

In **step 2** we select the **Create a most-recently added media block** setting, within the Blocks settings group of the gallery.

The block created will be available to be enabled in the blocks administration area, identified with the name:

Recent elements of the gallery: *Name of the gallery*

We will be able to change the configuration of the block by editing the gallery or accessing the configuration of the block. In both places we will be able to modify the number of rows and columns shown in the block. **F16.9**



Article

[View](#) [Edit](#)

Fusce lorem ligula, rutrum quis ultrices egestas, congue in diam. Sed orci mauris, sollicitudin vel, rhoncus congue neque. Fusce sit amet velit magna, id feugiat lorem. Pellentesque justo, ullamcorper vitae volutpat et, egestas eu ligula. Sed eget nisi risus. Curabitur tincidunt sollicitudin diam. Integer blandit posuere lorem, in porttitor elit feugiat sit amet euismod dui mi, in iaculis augue. Curabitur pretium porta auctor.

Fusce eget erat ut velit iaculis tristique. Phasellus ut turpis ac libero elementum posuere neque augue. Mauris tellus mi, tincidunt vel dapibus eu, condimentum non odio. Aenean Nullam id orci dolor, eget mattis metus. Sed aliquam, urna sit amet rhoncus ultrices, lacinia tincidunt est, consequat semper ligula justo quis nisi. Cras sed risus a eros lobortis scelerisque.

Proin diam quam, aliquet nec ullamcorper eu, scelerisque eu nisl. Phasellus ac mi urna turpis. Duis congue odio et leo congue a congue lacus venenatis. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet consectetur adipiscing elit. Sed vel tortor mi, a elementum odio. Aenean bibendum facilisis.

F16.9

Gallery block

The block shows the latest images that have been added, according to the configuration that we have specified when the gallery is created.

Step 7. Permissions

Some of the modules installed have added permissions that we will have to configure for the roles defined on the site.

The **Media** module has these permissions included in it: **F16.10**

- Administer media.
- Import media files from the local filesystem.
- View media. This permission has to be enabled so that the site users can see the images published in the gallery.
- Edit media.

The **Media Gallery** module has added this permission:

- Administer media galleries.

F16.10

Permissions related to the creation of a media gallery

The modules that we have added have included some new permissions that make it possible to manage the functioning of the media contents of the site and also the new content type, Gallery.

PERMISSION	USUARIO ANÓNIMO	USUARIO REGISTRADO	ADMINISTRADOR
Media			
Administer media Add, edit or delete media files and administer settings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Import media files from the local filesystem Simple file importer	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View media View all media files.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit media Edit all media files.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Media Gallery			
Administer media galleries	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

In addition, the Media Gallery module has created the Gallery content type. Within the **Node** module we will find the permissions related to managing this content type: **F16.11**

- Gallery: Create new content.
- Gallery: Edit own content.
- Gallery: Edit any content.
- Gallery: Delete own content.
- Gallery: Delete any content.

F16.11

Node permissions related to the media gallery

The Gallery content type will have specific permissions in the Node module.

PERMISSION	USUARIO ANÓNIMO	USUARIO REGISTRADO	ADMINISTRADOR
Gallery: Create new content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gallery: Edit own content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gallery: Edit any content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gallery: Delete own content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gallery: Delete any content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Improving the presentation of the images

16.2

Image styles

Although we will study the automated processing of images in the **Intermediate Level**, we can give a preview of how to modify the style of the gallery images in this section.

Image styles are modified from: **F16.12**

Administration⇒Configuration⇒ media⇒Image styles

URL Image styles
 /admin/config/media/
 image-styles

STYLE NAME	SETTINGS	OPERATIONS
thumbnail	Default	edit
medium	Default	edit
large	Default	edit
square_thumbnail	Default	edit
media_gallery_thumbnail	Default	edit
media_gallery_large	Default	edit

Image styles are a set of conversions that are applied to the site images. For example, we can indicate a height and width for all of the images of the gallery, regardless of the original size of every image that is uploaded.

The **Media gallery** module introduces two styles:

- **media_gallery_thumbnail**. The configuration established here will affect all of the images shown in the gallery before (small images).
- **media_gallery_large**. This configuration will be applied to enlarged images (by clicking on these).

When we access the editing of either of the styles, we see that in order to be able to modify the parameters introduced by the module, we must first click on **Override defaults**. **F16.13**

F16.12

Image styles

The image styles make it possible to apply the images uploaded to the site, in this way obtaining a standardised appearance of the presentation of these.

F16.13

Editing of the image styles

The styles added by Media Gallery must be overridden in order to be modified.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Media](#) » [Image styles](#)

Edit `media_gallery_thumbnail` style [Override defaults](#)

Preview

original (view actual size)	600px	media_gallery_thumbnail (view actual size)	450px
	800px		450px

Image style name
`media_gallery_thumbnail`
This image style is being provided by `media_gallery` module and may not be renamed.

[Show row weights](#)

EFFECT	WEIGHT	OPERATIONS
⊕ Scale and crop 450x450		

[Override defaults](#)

Once we have overridden the style, we will be able to change its configuration. Styles are a set of effects that are applied on the image. The effects that are initially available are: "crop", "desaturate", "resize", "turn", "scale" and "scale and crop".

By editing the original effects added to the style by the module or adding new effects, we will modify the presentation of the images in the gallery. By applying various effects to the same style, we can change their order and vary the end result. Therefore, we should always take account of the fact that the effects are applied in order and they have to be properly arranged.

During the style editing the result of applying them is shown in diagrammatical form (size and appearance of the original image and of the image once the style has been applied). To view the image in its actual size, as it will be displayed when the style is applied, we can click on the "view actual size" link or on the image shown. **F16.14**



The `media_gallery_thumbnail` style has been overridden, allowing you to change its settings.

Preview

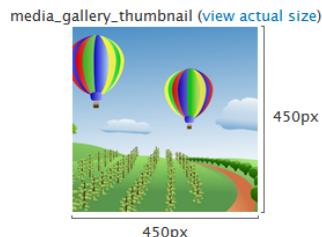
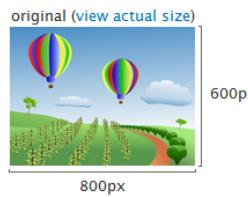


Image style name

`media_gallery_thumbnail`

This image style is being provided by `media_gallery` module and may not be renamed.

EFFECT

OPERATIONS

+ Scale and crop 450x450

[edit](#) [delete](#)

+ Select a new effect ▾

[Add](#)

[Update style](#)

Show row weights

Improving the presentation with a lightbox

Lightbox is the generic name that is given to the effect of enlarging an image in an overlay on the site, without opening a popup window. The Lightbox modules images will usually also make it possible to navigate between the images with no need to go back to the page. **F16.15**



F16.14

Apply effects to the image styles

When a style is edited we will be able to modify the configuration of the effects added or add new effects.

Always take account of the effects applied in order.

F16.15

Lightbox effect

A lightbox is the effect of enlarging an image in an overlay, without opening the popup window.

This effect can be obtained in Drupal by means of different modules, such as Colorbox or Lightbox2.

Although we have selected the **Show media in a lightbox** setting when we created the gallery, we will see that the desired effect does not appear when we click on an image. For this to happen we have to install another module that is responsible for showing the lightbox.

There are different lightbox modules, such as **Colorbox** and **Lightbox 2**. In this section we will install and configure the module for the purpose that concerns us, which is none other than applying a lightbox effect in the images of the gallery.

The Colorbox module is available at:

<http://drupal.org/project/colorbox>

Note that Colorbox depends on the **Libraries API module**, so install it before installing Colorbox:

<https://www.drupal.org/project/libraries>

Besides these modules it will be necessary to install an external plugin, as we did with the WYSIWYG editors, for the module to work.

The Colorbox plugin is available in the Download section of the project page: **F16.16**

<http://jackmoore.com/colorbox/>

F16.16

Official page of the Colorbox project

We can download the latest version of the library that is necessary for Colorbox in the Download section.

ColorBox

A lightweight customizable lightbox plugin for jQuery 1.3+

View Demos

1 2 3 4 5

Download

Current version: 1.3.18 Released under the [MIT License](#) | [Github](#) | [Changelog](#))
Tested in: Firefox, Safari, Chrome, Internet Explorer 6, 7, 8, 9, Opera 11.

Features

- Supports photos, grouping, slideshow, ajax, inline, and iframed content.
- Lightweight: 10KB of JavaScript (less than 5KBs zipped).
- Appearance is controlled through CSS so it can be restyled.
- Can be extended with callbacks & event-hooks without altering the source files.
- Completely unobtrusive, options are set in the JS and require no changes to existing HTML.
- Preloads upcoming images in a photo group.
- Used on tens of thousands of sites, including [imgur](#).

Once the file has been downloaded, we will uncompress it and we upload the **colorbox** folder to **/sites/all/libraries**. The plugin should be at **/sites/all/libraries/colorbox** (if the main colorbox folder is called colorbox-master, just rename it to "colorbox").

Once the modules and the plugin have been installed, we have to enable the **Colorbox** module.

The configuration of the **Colorbox** module is done from: **F16.17**

URL Colorbox

/admin/config/media/
colorbox

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ media ⇒ Colorbox

COLORBOX PLUGIN SETTINGS

LOGIN LINKS SETTINGS

Enable for login links
Automatically activate Colorbox for links to user/login.

EXTRA SETTINGS

Enable Colorbox load
This enables custom links that can open forms and paths in a Colorbox. Add the class "colorbox-load" to the link and build the url like this for forms "/colorbox/form/[form_id]?destination=some_path&width=500&height=500" and like this for paths "[path]?width=500&height=500&iframe=true" or "[path]?width=500&height=500" if you don't want an iframe. Other modules may activate this for easy Colorbox integration.

Enable Colorbox inline
This enables custom links that can open inline content in a Colorbox. Add the class "colorbox-inline" to the link and build the url like this "?width=500&height=500&inline=true#id-of-content". Other modules may activate this for easy Colorbox integration.

STYLES AND OPTIONS

Style

Select the style to use for the Colorbox. The example styles are the ones that come with the Colorbox plugin. Select "None" if you have added Colorbox styles to your theme.

Options
 Default
 Custom

Use the default or custom options for Colorbox.

F16.17**Configuration settings of the Colorbox module**

We can specify a lot of parameters for adjusting the functioning of these on our site on the Colorbox module settings page.

The module will function directly in the site galleries with no need to change the configuration.

We will now have the colorbox effect working in the galleries without making changes in the configuration. From among the available settings we can highlight **Style and settings:**

- **Style.** This allows us to choose from among several visual styles for the popup window. We have imported these styles when we installed the Colorbox library.
- **Settings.** This is concerned with the controls that appear in the Colorbox window, and that allow us to navigate among the images of the same gallery without leaving the Colorbox window.
 - o **Default.** With this setting, Colorbox will display the buttons in the popup window by default.
 - o **Custom.** When we check this setting new settings will appear for configuring the Colorbox popup window in detail (effects of transition to the change between images, opacity of the window, messages of the buttons, etc).

Now, we should see the lightbox when we click on any image of the gallery that we have created. Remember **F16.15** that the media gallery has to have the **Show media in a lightbox** setting selected.

16.3

Publication of videos and external resources

Media Gallery also makes it possible to add videos to the media galleries. In reality, it is the **Media** module that is responsible for working with the multimedia contents in general (images, audio, video, etc.).

The Media module comprises two modules, **Media** and **Media Internet Sources**. The second one will furthermore enable us to integrate media contents from other external providers, such as YouTube videos.

The **Media Internet Sources** module is used as the base in order for other modules to implement the integration function with specific providers. Thus, if we want to insert YouTube videos we need the **Media: YouTube** module and if we want to show images hosted on Flickr, we need the **Media: Flickr** module. We will find "**Media:**" modules for many contents providers. In addition, each module will have its own configuration settings, depending on the information required by the contents provider.

As an example we are going to install the **Media Internet Sources** and **Media: YouTube** modules, the latter is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/media_youtube

To add a YouTube video, we will follow the same procedure as for adding an image to the gallery. From the gallery page we will use the **Add media** link.

The popup window will show a new tab, Web, where we can indicate the URL of a resource of any of the available providers. **F16.18**

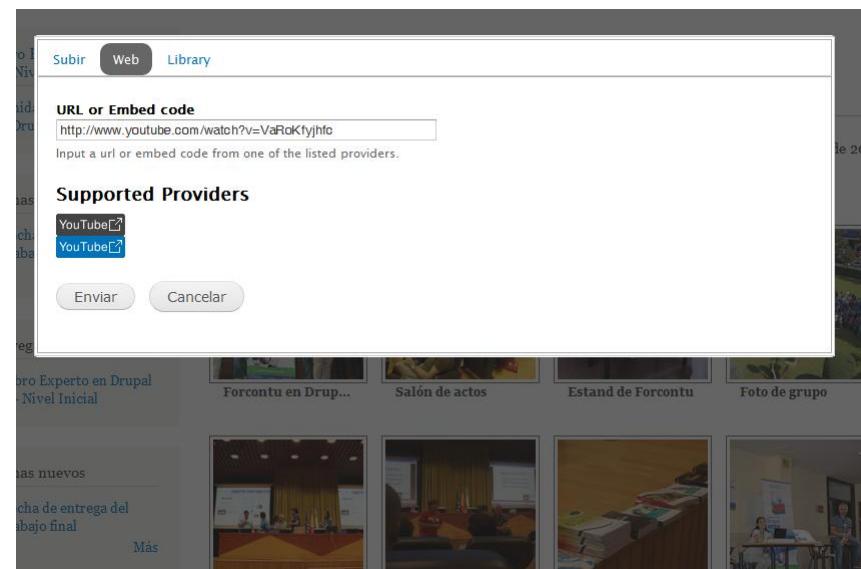
F16.18

Adding a YouTube video to our gallery

We can add external multimedia resources from other providers by clicking on the **Web** tab.

It will be enough to state the URL of a resource facilitated by any of the providers supported.

The additional providers are integrated through additional modules identified as "Media: provider".



The added video will be displayed directly in the gallery, as one further image. The difference with this is that when we click on the preview image we will be able to watch the video. If the gallery is configured to show the content in a lightbox, the video will also be shown inside the popup window. If this is not enabled, a separate page will be loaded where the video will be shown, in the same way as happens with images. **F16.19**

Drupalcamp Spain Sevilla 2011

[View](#) [Edit gallery](#) [Edit media](#)

Pictures from Drupalcamp Spain 2011 (Sevilla)

+ Add media



F16.19

Video in the gallery

The video added is already integrated into our gallery. By clicking on this we will be able to view it on a separate page or in a lightbox, depending on how we have configured the gallery.

Managing media content

164

After installing the **Media** module we will be able to manage all of the media contents added to the website from one single interface.

As we already know, we can manage all of the contents that we have created on the site from the **Content** page. Thus, the Media module adds a new **media** tab from where the media contents are managed. **F16.20**

Administration⇒ Content [media]

URL Media

/admin/content/media

copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7ZNGCPDEEN00037739007079

Content						
	Title	Type	Size	Author	Updated	Operations
	forcontuendrupalcampsain.jpg	image/jpeg	512.43 KB	admin	13/02/2012 – 23:34	Edit
	camiseta_azul.png	image/png	122.18 KB	admin	09/01/2012 – 11:32	Edit
	camiseta_blanca.jpg	image/jpeg	12.82 KB	admin	09/01/2012 – 11:32	Edit
	camiseta-negra.jpg	image/jpeg	26.86 KB	admin	09/01/2012 – 11:31	Edit
	portada-d7u01b.png	image/png	102.41 KB	admin	07/01/2012 – 19:54	Edit
	camisetas-pack.jpg	image/jpeg	12.05 KB	admin	07/01/2012 – 19:22	Edit
	ebook.jpeg	image/jpeg	74.94 KB	admin	07/01/2012 – 09:57	Edit
	zombieland.jpg	image/jpeg	137 KB	admin	07/01/2012 – 09:55	Edit

F16.20

Media

From the **media** tab we can manage the multimedia files uploaded to the site, including the resources from external providers (for example, YouTube).

Every file shows the title, the file type, the size that is concerned (the YouTube videos occupy *0 bytes*, because they are not hosted on our server, but rather on the provider's site), the user who published it, the updating time and the link for editing it.

In the files list we can select a set of items for carrying out batch operations (Edit and Delete). **F16.21**

The buttons in the upper right-hand corner make it possible to change the list presentation format, and they mean that we can select the viewing of the images or a preview of the contents. **F16.21**

F16.21

Operations concerning the media contents

It is possible to carry out operations by batches, to the selected files from Media.

We can also change the presentation of the list of contents, showing the preview or thumbnail image of each item.

The screenshot shows the 'Media' tab selected in the navigation bar. Below the tabs are two buttons: '+ Add file' and '+ Import media'. A dropdown menu 'Select: all, none' is open. In the top right corner, there are two icons: a grid icon and a three-dot menu icon, both of which are highlighted with red boxes. Below these are two buttons: 'Delete' with a dropdown arrow and 'Submit'. The main area displays a grid of media items. Each item has a checkbox, a thumbnail image, and a file name. The items include: 'forcontuendru' (checkbox checked), 'camiseta_azul' (checkbox checked), 'camiseta_blan' (checkbox checked), 'camiseta_negr' (checkbox unchecked), 'portada-d7u0' (checkbox checked), 'camisetas-pac' (checkbox unchecked); 'ebook.jpeg' (checkbox unchecked), 'zombieland.jpg' (checkbox unchecked), 'camiseta_blan' (checkbox unchecked), 'black_shirt.jpg' (checkbox unchecked), 'camiseta_blan' (checkbox unchecked), 'thedaytheheart' (checkbox unchecked); 'druplicon.png' (checkbox unchecked), 'cV6RrqtnTmQ' (checkbox unchecked), 'expertoendrup' (checkbox unchecked), 'picture-64-13' (checkbox unchecked), 'rubenfleischer' (checkbox unchecked), and 'zombieland.jpg' (checkbox unchecked).

Add file

From this file we can also directly add media files (**Add file** link), which will be available to be inserted into new contents (and galleries).

The files uploaded by this means will not be included in any gallery or content. This will be done by going to the gallery and, using the **Add media content** link, searching for and selecting the file from the **Library** tab.

17 Searches

It is always convenient to have a contents search tool on the website. Many users prefer the speed and accuracy of a good search system before browsing through the website, in spite of it having a good structure and organisation of the contents.

The **Search** module distributed with the Drupal core constitutes an internal search system that enables users to carry out specific contents searches of the website.

The Drupal search system indexes both the contents and the users of a website in such a way that the enquiries subsequently made are faster and more effective.

The indexing process is done periodically, properly programming the **cron** of the system. This programming of the **cron** is done on the server where the site is hosted, and not using Drupal.

The objective of this unit is to understand the Drupal search system, learning to install it and configure it properly.

Comparative D7/D6

Search Module

The Search Module of Drupal 7 has the same functionalities and configuration settings as in Drupal 6.

The Search module integrated into Drupal is only advisable for small sites with few contents. When a site grows in contents, the search engine performance will be increasingly worse, converting both the searches and the indexing into slow processes that use up a lot of resources.

Other search modules

There are alternative modules that will generally require the installing of external applications on the server or the use of services offered directly by other providers. Some of these applications are:

- Apache Solr
- Google Custom Search Engine
- Zend Lucene

Unit contents

17.1 Installing and configuring searches	286
17.2 Doing searches	289
17.3 Configuration of permissions.....	293
17.4 Reports on searches made.....	293



17.1

Installing and configuring searches

Drupal enables the search of contents on the site, making use of the Search module, which is the core module enabled by default.

Indexing of the searches

With the module enabled, we will be able to access the configuration of the searches from: **F17.1**

URL **Search settings**
</admin/config/search/settings>

The first thing that we find is the **Indexing status**. The search engine does not do the search directly in all of the contents of the site, in the same way as Google does not directly search in all of the web pages. What search engines do is analyse the pages and save the relevant information in order to speed up the later search process.

Drupal maintains an **index** of the contents of the website and the construction of this index is what is known as **indexing**. When we create new contents on the website, these must be indexed (added to the index of searches). Should this not be the case, the new content will not be displayed in the results of the searches. Equally, the modified nodes will have to be re-indexed in order to apply the relevant changes in the index.

The percentage of contents that have been indexed will be show in the **Indexing status**, as well as the number of items or contents that are currently awaiting indexing. The translation "There are 21 items left in the index" may be confusing because in reality it makes reference to "there are 21 items left to be added to the index".

F17.1

Configuration of the searches

The indexing status tells us the indexing percentage of the site and the number of items that are left in the index (or awaiting indexing). These items awaiting indexing will be indexed on successive runs of the cron of the system.

The search engine maintains an index of words found in your site's content. To build and maintain this index, a correctly configured [cron maintenance task](#) is required. Indexing behavior can be adjusted using the settings below.

INDEXING STATUS

0% of the site has been indexed. There are 15 items left to index.

[Re-index site](#)

INDEXING THROTTLE

Number of items to index per cron run
100

The maximum number of items indexed in each pass of a [cron maintenance task](#). If necessary, reduce the number of items to prevent timeouts and memory errors while indexing.

To do the site indexing it is necessary to **run the cron of the system**. Indexing is a task which, depending on the volume of contents of the site, could consume quite a lot of time and memory resources of the server, and therefore it is necessary to limit the number of items that will be indexed every time the cron is run. This default value is set at 100 items.

Only use the **Re-index site** button when you need to re-do the index from zero.

It will be necessary to **run the cron to do the site indexing**, either automatically or manually. The cron on a site under production must be run periodically and automatically, so that the site can frequently index the newly created content. However, on a site under development it is more advisable to work with manually running the cron.

To index the site content we will run the cron manually, by accessing:

Administration⇒Reports⇒Status report [Cron maintenance tasks, run cron manually link]

URL Run cron

/admin/reports/status/run-cron

Once the cron is run, it will be necessary to have the number of items defined in the configuration indexed (initially 100 items for each cron run). In **Figure F17.2** we see the **indexing status** after the cron has been run. In this example, since the number of items in the index was 21, and the number of items to be indexed in every run of the cron was 100, it was enough to run the cron to index of the contents of the site. If this does not apply in your case, run the cron manually as many times as your site needs, until you have 100% of your site indexed.

The screenshot shows a 'INDEXING STATUS' section. It displays the message '100% of the site has been indexed. There are 0 items left to index.' Below this message is a button labeled 'Re-index site'.

F17.2

Indexing status

The items will now be indexed after the cron run.

If we create a new node on the site at this time or we modify an existing one, we will see how the number of items in the index increases (items waiting indexing) and the total percentage of indexing of the site is reduced.

Configuration of the searches

We have already seen the option to configure the **number of items to be indexed in every cron run**. Other **settings parameters** available are: **F17.3**

- **Minimum word length to index:** Minimum length of a word in order for the search system to be able to incorporate it into the index. By default, the value is 3. This means that we will not be able to search for loose words with fewer than the stated number of characters, although these can be searched for along with other words if these are contained in the index.
- **Activate search modules.** The modules in which it will be possible to do the searches are shown here. Two settings appear: Node, which enables the search in the contents; and User, which enables the search for users. Every setting will be shown as a tab when the user accesses the /search page to do a search.
- **Default search module.** The one that we choose here is the module in which the search will be run in a default manner, when a quick search is done. The usual thing will be to use the Node module as the default one, so that the searches are done in the contents of the site.

F17.3**Configuration of the searches**

This allows us to search in the contents (Node module) and/or in the users (User module).

The factors will determine the order in which the search results will be displayed.

INDEXING SETTINGS

Changing the settings below will cause the site index to be rebuilt. The search index is not cleared but systematically updated to reflect the new settings. Searching will continue to work but new content won't be indexed until all existing content has been re-indexed.

The default settings should be appropriate for the majority of sites.

Minimum word length to index

3

The number of characters a word has to be indexed. A lower setting means better search result ranking, but also a larger database. Each search query must contain at least one keyword that is this size (or longer).

 Simple CJK handling

Whether to apply a simple Chinese/Japanese/Korean tokenizer based on overlapping sequences. Turn this off if you want to use an external preprocessor for this instead. Does not affect other languages.

ACTIVE SEARCH MODULES Node User

Choose which search modules are active from the available modules.

Default search module Node User

Choose which search module is the default.

CONTENT RANKING

FACTOR	WEIGHT
Number of comments	0
Keyword relevance	0
Content is sticky at top of lists	0
Content is promoted to the front page	0
Recently posted	0

[Save configuration](#)

- **Content ranking:** We can define which factors are more or less relevant when it comes to doing the sorting of the results of a search. The order of the results shown may change depending on this configuration.

The configurable factors are **Number of comments**, **Keyword relevance**, **Content is sticky at top of lists**; **Content is promoted to the front page** and **Recently posted**. The factors with greatest weight will be most relevant when it comes to sorting the results.

For example, on a site where contents are published daily, such as a digital newspaper, the **Recently posted** factor should have greater weight than the rest of the factors. If what we want is to encourage the participation of the users we will be able to apply greater weight to the **Number of comments** factor.

It is important to take account of the fact that this Weight is not similar to the usual sorting weight. In this case, in reality, the Weight is a weighting factor and the 0 value means that the factor will not be taken into account.

If you do not know how to sort the results or you do not yet have a defined strategy, check all of the factors with the same weight (5, for example). Finally, if you want one of the factors not to be taken into account, sign it the 0 value.

Once these parameters have been adjusted, we have to save the configuration.

Enabling the cron

Lastly, in order for the contents that are being created or modified on the site to be indexed periodically, it is necessary for the cron to be correctly configured. If you do not know how to configure the cron on your server or host, consult **Annex A**.

Take account of the fact that if the cron is not run the search will be rendered out of date when contents are created or edited on the site.

As we have already commented, it is only recommended that you run cron automatically on websites under production. For projects that are being developed and the rest of the course, we will work with running cron manually, which we will only do when necessary.

Doing searches

17.2

Once the site content has been indexed, we will be able to carry out searches, either using the quick search block or from the searches page, at **/search**.

The **Search form** block is enabled by default during the installation of the site. If you do not have it enabled, you will be able to do this from the blocks administration. **F17.4**



The screenshot shows a Drupal website with a blue header bar. The title 'Learn Drupal with Forcontu' is displayed above a navigation menu with 'Home' and 'Galleries' buttons. Below the header is a search block containing a text input field and a magnifying glass icon. The main content area features a blog entry titled 'Another blog entry' submitted by 'admin' on 'Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54'. The text of the blog entry is partially visible: 'Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacus lacinia ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue: nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu.'

F17.4

Search form

Enter the word or words that you want to search for and click on Search.

Access the www.example.com/search page to **F17.5** start to search on the site. We will search in the content (**Content** tab) from, and we will search in the users registered on the site (Users tab) from **/search/user**.

F17.5**Search page**

The search page is available at the /search URL.

Buscar

Contenido Usuarios

Escriba las palabras clave.

► Búsqueda avanzada

To search for site contents write a word (or a set of words) and click on **Search** (or on the magnifying glass). The following are displayed for each result: the title of the node, which links to the node which reference is made to; a content teaser where the text that has been looked for has been found; the author and publication date; and the number of **F17.6** comments, in those nodes that have comments publication enabled.

As we will see in the **Intermediate Level**, to modify this page it will be necessary to modify the templates provided by the **Search module**.

F17.6**Search results**

By default, the search results display the title of the node, a teaser of the content, the author, the publication date and the number of comments.

Search

Content Users

Enter your keywords

drupal

► Advanced search

Search results**Expert in Drupal 7**

Expert in **Drupal 7** is the latest online **Drupal 7** course created by Forcontu. The course is divided into three levels: ... Intermediate and Advanced. Tags: **Drupal 7** eLearning ...

admin - 02/13/2012 - 20:35 - 0 comments

Unit 1. Introduction to Drupal

Unit 1. Introduction to **Drupal** ...

admin - 02/13/2012 - 22:55 - 0 comments

Expert in Drupal 7 - Beginner

Main book page

admin - 02/13/2012 - 22:52 - 0 comments

Maecenas libero odio, tincidunt sed vehicula ut, aliquet quis sapien.

... vel mi non eros mattis cursus. Tags: **Drupal 7** Level: Advanced ...

admin - 02/13/2012 - 20:49 - 0 comments

The Drupal searches system furthermore allows us to user certain operators to obtain more accurate results:

- If several **words separated by spaces** are entered, the system will search for that content that contains all of the words.

For example: **information course**

- If we want the contents that contain **one word or another** to be displayed, we will use the **OR operator** (in upper case letters).

For example: **course OR training**

- If we want the contents that contain each and **every one** of the words (or expressions) to be displayed, we will use the **AND operator** (in upper case letters).

For example: **course AND training**

- If we want to locate an **exact phrase** we have to enter it between double quotation marks.

For example: "**online training**"

- We can use the **type** operator to indicate one or several **content types** (separated by commas).

For example: **type:news,page,forum**

- We can use the **-** (subtract) operator to **exclude** a word from the search.

For example: **training -course**

- We can also **combine the previous operators** to do more specific searches.

For example: "**online training**" **AND** **course OR Drupal -presentiel**

Advanced search

The search form also has a group of **advanced search** settings, which are initially collapsed. **F17.7**

Search

The screenshot shows a search interface with the following elements:

- Content** and **Users** buttons.
- Enter your keywords** input field with a magnifying glass icon.
- Advanced search** button (highlighted in grey).
- Containing any of the words** input field.
- Containing the phrase** input field.
- Containing none of the words** input field.
- Only of the type(s)** dropdown menu with the following options:
 - Article
 - Basic page
 - Blog entry
 - Book page
 - Forum topic
 - Gallery
 - News
 - Poll
- Search** button at the bottom.

F17.7

Advanced search

The advanced search makes it possible to search for contents using different filters.

Among other utilities, this makes it possible to only make a search in the content types indicated.

The advanced search allows us to search for the contents that meet the following conditions:

- **Containing any of the words** indicated (similar to using the OR

operator).

- **Containing the phrase** indicated (similar a using quotation mark).
- **Containing none of the words** indicated.
- **Only of the content** types selected. This makes it possible to restrict the searches to particular content types.
- **Languages.** This enables us to choose the language of the contents where the search will be carried out.

These fields can be combined as we want, displaying only the results that meet all of the conditions indicated. Lastly, click on the **Advanced search** button (or the magnifying glass) to display the results.

Themes with integrated search form

Some themes incorporate a search form into their design, and so **it will not be necessary to enable the Search form block**. In those cases of the search block is enabled, the form will be displayed in duplicate.

The search form that comes with the theme can be disabled using the theme configuration settings. To do this, access:

Administration \Rightarrow **Appearance [Settings tab]**

and access the theme configuration settings enabled on the site. Within the **Toggle display** section, disable the **Search block** setting. This setting will only be available in some themes (in recent version of Drupal 7 the search block is only configurable from the administration block). F17.8

F17.8

Search block integrated into the theme

From the theme settings we can indicate whether we want to display the integrated search block in the theme or not.

TOGGLE DISPLAY

Enable or disable the display of certain page elements.

Logo

Site name

Site slogan

User pictures in posts

User pictures in comments

Search block

Shortcut icon

Main menu

Secondary menu

The selection of one form or another will largely depend on the location where we want to promote it to. If we want to make use of the design of the theme, we will keep the form of the theme. But if we want greater flexibility where it comes to deciding where and on what conditions to display the search form, we will use the **Search form block**.

Configuration of permissions

17.3

The Search module adds the following **permissions**: **F17.9**

- **Administer search.** This makes it possible to modify the search configuration settings. This permission is only for the system administrators.
- **Use search.** This makes it possible to make searches on the site, and so the users with this permission will be able to view the **Search form** block and access the /search search page (however, they will not be able to view or use the advanced search).
- **Use advanced search.** The users with this permission will be able to make use of the advanced search.

PERMISSION	ANONYMOUS USER	AUTHENTICATED USER	ADMINISTRATOR
Search			
Administer search	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use search	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use advanced search	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

F17.9

Search module permissions

Permissions for managing the searches.

Reports on searches done

17.4

By enabling the **Search module** a new report is automatically generated with the main searches done on the site: **F17.10**

Administration⇒Reports⇒Top search phrases

Home > Administration > Reports	
Top search phrases	
COUNT	MESSAGE
5	Searched Content for forcontu.
3	Searched Content for drupal.
1	Searched Content for lorem.

F17.10

Top search phrases Report

This report shows a list in the form of a ranking with the searches done directly using the site search engine.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

18 Languages and translation

The Drupal language base is English, which furthermore will be the default language. As we saw in Unit 2, it is possible to incorporate Spanish (or any other language) from the time of the installation.

In this unit we will also see how to import the translations from each one of the modules installed on the site.

Practically the entire interface of the core is translated into Spanish, but a lot of additional modules are only available in English, or they have incomplete translations, and therefore it will be necessary to translate them "manually".

The translation of the interface, of both the system and the modules, is possible thanks to the **Locale** module. This module also enables us to create a site in several languages, but the range of this only extends to the interface. To implement a site that is truly multi-lingual, in which all of the site items (blocks, menus, taxonomy, etc.) can be translated it will be necessary to make use of the **Internationalization (i18n)** module, which will be studied in the Intermediate Level.

Therefore, in this Unit we will work exclusively on the translation of the interface, but not with the translation of the contents (menus, nodes, etc.), which we will look at in the **Intermediate Level**.

Comparative D7/D6 Languages and translation

The functioning of the languages in Drupal 7 is very similar to that of Drupal 6, with small changes in the location of the administration settings.

One new feature is the inclusion of the **Localization update** module (also available for Drupal 6), which allows us to automatically install the translations of the modules installed.

Unit contents

18.1 Enabling and configuring languages	296
18.2 Importing and exporting translations.....	303
18.3 Translation of strings.....	306
18.4 Automatic updating of translations	307



18.1

Enabling and configuring languages

The **Locale** module allows us to display the interface of our website in the default language, which is English. It also makes it possible to have multiple languages for the interface, and users can select the language suited to their preferences.

The Locale module is included in the Drupal core and it is enabled by doing the installation in Spanish. To check this, access **Modules** and locate the **Locale module**.

Where the translations are stored

The translations come from translation files with the **.po (Gettext Portable Object)** extension. For example, **modules-user.es.po** file will contain the Spanish translations of the strings related to the **user** module.

A small fragment of the content of a **.po** file is shown below:

```
# : modules/user/user.admin.inc:233
msgid "User registration settings"
msgstr "Opciones de registro para usuarios"

# : modules/user/user.admin.inc:234
msgid "Public registrations"
msgstr "Registros públicos"
```

The **.po** files are used to import the translations, but once loaded on the site, the translation of terms is actually done from the database and not by directly reading the files. Therefore, we will learn to import those **.po** files of translations onto our site, so that they can be added to the database.

Installation of an additional language

In **Unit 2** we already saw how to install Spanish during the Drupal installation. We now look at how to add a new language to the site after the installation. The languages available on the site are listed: **F18.1**

URL Languages
</admin/config/regional/language>

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Languages**

We can enable or disable the languages installed from this page. For example, if the website is just going to be in Spanish, we can disable English. We will also select the default language of the site (In our case, Spanish).

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language

Languages

LIST DETECTION AND SELECTION

With multiple languages enabled, interface text can be translated, registered users may select their preferred language, and authors can assign a specific language to content. [Download contributed translations](#) from Drupal.org.

+ Add language

ENGLISH NAME	NATIVE NAME	CODE	DIRECTION	ENABLED	DEFAULT	OPERATIONS
English	English	en	Left to right	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	edit
Spanish	Español	es	Left to right	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	edit delete

Show row weights

[Save configuration](#)

F18.1**Administration of languages**

The languages available are listed in **Configuration⇒Languages**. If the site is only going to be in Spanish, we can disable English without this affecting the functioning of the system.

The **Add language** button allows us to add an existing language (from the list displayed) or a customised language. The added language will be available along with the other languages. **F18.2**

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language » Languages

Languages

LIST DETECTION AND SELECTION

Add a language to be supported by your site. If your desired language is not available in the *Language name* drop-down, click *Custom language* and provide a language code and other details manually. When providing a language code manually, be sure to enter a standardized language code, since this code may be used by browsers to determine an appropriate display language.

▼ PREDEFINED LANGUAGE

Language name
Spanish (Español)

Use the *Custom language* section below if your desired language does not appear in this list.

[Add language](#)

► CUSTOM LANGUAGE

F18.2**Add language**

From the Add language button we can access the list of languages available for Drupal.

Translation of the core

The **Add language** action does not include the translation in itself. It is just a question of “registering the language” on the site so that it is available and we can add the corresponding translations.

Therefore, after adding the language, the next step is to locate, download and import the translations from the core for the new language.

The translations are downloaded from the official Drupal translations page:

[drupal.org ⇒ Download & Extend \[Translations\]](#) **F18.3**

Here we will be able to search for the translations for the Drupal core and also the translations of additional modules. These translations are done in the community: the participants in the work group of each language propose translations, which have to be validated by the moderators so as to form part of the translation.

URL Translations

<http://localize.drupal.org>

To download the language files, of both the core and of the modules, **it is unnecessary for you to be registered on the site**, although in the next section we will see some advantages of being a registered user and joining the translation team.

F18.3

Translations section on the official Drupal page

On the official page of Drupal translations:

<http://localize.drupal.org>, we can download the **.po** files with the translation into the language that we have added to our site.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Localization homepage with the title 'Drupal' at the top. Below it is a navigation bar with links: 'Get Started', 'Community & Support', 'Documentation', 'Download & Extend', 'Marketplace', and 'About'. Underneath the title, there are two buttons: 'Drupal Homepage' and 'Login / Register'. The main content area has a heading 'Download & Extend' and a sub-navigation bar with links: 'Download & Extend Home', 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations' (which is highlighted in blue), and 'Installation Profiles'. To the right, there is a 'Quick navigation' sidebar with a dropdown menu 'Pick a language:' set to 'All'. It also includes a link to 'explore languages'. Below that is another sidebar 'Or pick a project:' with a dropdown menu and a link to 'explore projects'. At the bottom of the sidebar, there is a button 'Go there'. The central content area features a section titled 'Drupal translations' with a brief introduction about the service and how to contribute. Below this is a chart titled 'Language' showing 'Drupal core progress' and 'Contributors' for various languages. The chart includes rows for Afrikaans, Albanian, Amharic, Arabic, Armenian, Asturian, and Bahasa Malaysia. To the right of the chart is a 'Quick statistics' section providing various metrics such as 96 translation groups, 3270 contributors, and 6410 projects managed.

The translations front page shows a list of all of the languages for which there are translations available. In this list we will locate the language that we are adding to the site and, by clicking on its name, we will go through to the translations page of the language. **F18.4**

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F18.4

Download the translation file of a language

Each language has a downloads page for the different versions of Drupal available.

From here we can download the one corresponding to the latest version for Drupal 7.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Localization homepage with the title 'Drupal' at the top. Below it is a navigation bar with links: 'Get Started', 'Community & Support', 'Documentation', 'Download & Extend', 'Marketplace', and 'About'. Underneath the title, there are two buttons: 'Drupal Homepage' and 'Login / Register'. The main content area has a heading 'Download & Extend' and a sub-navigation bar with links: 'Download & Extend Home', 'Drupal Core', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Translations' (which is highlighted in blue), and 'Installation Profiles'. To the right, there is a 'Spanish overview' sidebar with tabs: 'Overview' (which is selected), 'Board', 'Translate', 'Import', 'Export', and 'Broadcast'. Below the tabs, it says 'Spanish translation team - Grupo de traducción al Español'. A bulleted list provides information about the team's work, including links to 'Diccionario - Libro de estilo', 'Traducción de Drupal core', 'Interfaz de traducción', 'Foro de traducciones', 'Glosario de términos', 'Directrices para la traducción', and 'Moderadores de la traducción'. The main content area features a 'Top contributors' table listing users with their translation counts. It also includes sections for 'Translation statistics' (270 contributors, 341232 strings to translate, 38478 translations recorded, 19022 suggestions awaiting approval) and a 'Spanish team' sidebar with links: 'Edit group', 'Create Poll', 'Create Story', 'Create Wiki page', 'Invite friend', and '1103 members'.

We will download the latest available version of the language for Drupal 7 by clicking on the corresponding **Download** button. A **.po file** will be downloaded onto our equipment, ready to be imported onto our site.

Once back on our site, we will import the translation file from: **F18.5**

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Translate interface [Import]

The screenshot shows the 'Translate interface' page with the 'IMPORT' tab selected. The 'Language file' field contains 'drupal-7.11.es.po'. The 'Import into' dropdown is set to 'Spanish'. Under 'Text group', 'Built-in interface' is selected. In 'Mode', the second option ('Existing strings and the plural format are kept, only new strings are added.') is selected. At the bottom is a large 'Import' button.

F18.5

Translate interface

From the **Translate interface** area we can import and export translations or search for text strings so as to translate them individually

Here we will have to import the **.po** file that we have just downloaded.

- In **Language file** we will select the file downloaded to our equipment.
- In the **Import into** dropdown menu we will indicate the new language that we have added, which has to coincide with the language of the file downloaded.
- In the **Mode** setting we can choose between:
 - The texts of the file that has been uploaded will replace the existing ones, and the new ones will be added. The plural forms will be updated.
 - The existing plurals and texts will be added. Only the new texts will be added.

If we have done manual translations on our site, it is always recommended that you use the second option, so that our translations are not replaced.

Once these fields have been completed, we will import the language by clicking on **Import**. The system will tell us whether the translation was imported correctly, informing us about the number of strings that have been added, updated and eliminated. The total amount of strings of the language and the percentage of texts translated will be displayed in the languages list. **F18.6**

F18.6

Translate interface.

Import

We can upload .po translation files from the import tab, of both the core and of modules contributed.

The screenshot shows the 'Translate interface' page under 'Regional and language'. It includes a success message about a recent import, a general overview of translatable strings, and a table showing the status of various languages. The Spanish row is highlighted with a red border.

LANGUAGE	BUILT-IN INTERFACE
English (built-in)	n/a
Spanish	4566/4566 (100%)

Translation of modules

Translations of the modules are also available at localize.drupal.org, with no need to register ourselves on the site. We can follow several paths to go through to these translations, one of which is:

<http://localize.drupal.org/translate/downloads>

To reach this URL browsing through the site, we have to go back to the language downloads page. In addition to the downloads from the core, we will see the translations of some significant modules (**Further top projects**), and a **More downloads** link that will take us to the downloads page. **F18.7**

F18.7

Translation of modules

From localize.drupal.org we will be able to download the translations of any module, with no need to register ourselves on the site.

Further top projects

▶ Views	5.x-1.8, 6.x-2.12, 6.x-3.0-alpha4, 7.x-3.0-rc1
▶ Token	5.x-1.15, 6.x-1.16, 7.x-1.0-beta7
▶ Pathauto	5.x-1.2, 5.x-2.4, 6.x-1.5, 6.x-2.0-rc2, 7.x-1.0-rc1
▶ Content Construction Kit (CCK)	5.x-1.12, 6.x-1.0-alpha, 6.x-2.9, 6.x-3.0-alpha3
▶ Chaos tool suite (ctools)	6.x-1.8, 7.x-1.0-rc1
▶ Administration menu	5.x-1.2, 5.x-2.8, 5.x-3.0-alpha2, 6.x-1.8, 6.x-3.0-alpha4, 7.x-3.0-rc1
▶ FileField	5.x-2.5, 6.x-1.0-beta3, 6.x-3.10
▶ ImageAPI	5.x-1.5, 6.x-1.10
▶ ImageCache	5.x-1.7, 5.x-2.6, 6.x-1.0-alpha2, 6.x-2.0-beta12
▶ ImageField	5.x-1.2, 5.x-2.6, 6.x-3.10
▶ Date	5.x-1.8, 5.x-2.8, 6.x-1.0-beta, 6.x-2.7, 7.x-1.0-alpha2, 7.x-2.0-alpha4
▶ IMCE	5.x-1.3, 6.x-1.4, 6.x-2.2, 7.x-1.5
▶ Wysiwyg	5.x-2.1, 6.x-2.4, 7.x-2.1
▶ Google Analytics	5.x-1.9, 6.x-1.4, 6.x-2.3, 6.x-3.2, 7.x-1.2
▶ Webform	5.x-1.10, 5.x-2.9, 6.x-2.10, 6.x-3.14, 7.x-3.13
▶ Advanced help	5.x-1.0-beta1, 6.x-1.2, 7.x-1.0-beta1
▶ jQuery UI	5.x-1.2, 6.x-1.5
▶ CAPTCHA	5.x-1.1, 5.x-2.2, 5.x-3.3, 6.x-1.0-rc2, 6.x-2.4, 7.x-1.0-alpha3
▶ Link	5.x-1.5, 5.x-2.7, 6.x-2.9, 7.x-1.0,
▶ Backup and Migrate	5.x-1.3, 6.x-1.3, 6.x-2.4, 7.x-2.2

More downloads are available. These are just the top projects among 6952 projects translated on this server.

On the downloads page we will select a project (module name) and the downloads available for all of the languages will be shown. We will download the latest available version for Drupal 7. **F18.8**

Book Delete translation downloads

Pick a project:

Book Delete

Languages	6.x-1.x	7.x-1.x
Afrikaans	6.x-1.0 (717 bytes) Generated: 2010-Jun-01 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30	7.x-1.0 (717 bytes) Generated: 2011-May-13 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30
Albanian	6.x-1.0 (826 bytes) Generated: 2011-Aug-22 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30	7.x-1.0 (826 bytes) Generated: 2011-Aug-22 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30
Amharic	6.x-1.0 (499 bytes) Generated: 2010-Jun-01 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30	7.x-1.0 (499 bytes) Generated: 2011-May-13 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30
Arabic	6.x-1.0 (971 bytes) Generated: 2011-Jun-29 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30	7.x-1.0 (1.01 KB) Generated: 2011-Jun-29 Up to date as of: 2011-Oct-30
Armenian	n/a	n/a

F18.8

Translation of modules

Once a project or module has been selected, the translations available for each language will be displayed.

Once the .po file has been downloaded, it will be imported onto the site in the same way as we did for importing from the core, at: **F18.5**

[Administration](#)⇒[Configuration](#)⇒[Translate interface \[Import\]](#)

Detection and selection of the language on the site

We have seen how to install various languages and import the translations from the interface, of both the core and the additional modules installed. To be able to add a language selector on the site, we must first establish the **language detection and selection policy**, from: **F18.9**

[Administration](#)⇒[Configuration](#)⇒[Languages \[Detection and selection\]](#)

The methods available are:

- **URL.** Determines the language from the URL, whether via the path prefix or via the domain name.
- **Session.** Determines the language from a request or session parameter. This will be the method used by the **language block alternator**, which we will enable later. When making a change in the selector, the block sends the language change request and the new parameter will be stored in the session.
- **User.** This will display the language selected by the user in his profile.
- **Browser.** This will display the language according to the browser settings.
- **Default.** This uses the language that we have set as the default one for the site (Spanish).

URL Language detection

/admin/config/regional/language/configure

F18.9**Language detection**

We will be able to enable different language detection methods.

If we enable various methods, the language detection will be done following the order of these, which means that if it is possible to determine the language by one method, the others will not be checked.

DETECTION METHOD	DESCRIPTION	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
URL	Determine the language from the URL (Path prefix or domain).	<input type="checkbox"/>	Configure
Session	Determine the language from a request/session parameter.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Configure
User	Follow the user's language preference.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Browser	Determine the language from the browser's language settings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Default	Use the default site language (English).	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

[Save settings](#)

We will be able to enable various language detection methods. If we enable various methods, the language detection will be done following the order of these. As soon as the system detects the language, it will stop checking the other methods.

For now we will use the **Session** method, which will enable us to use the Language alternator block and test the functioning of the translation.

Language alternator block

The **Language alternator** block will be available, although initially enabled, in the site blocks administration.

Enabling this block will display a selector from which we will be able to change the language of the site. **F18.10**

F18.10**Language alternator**

The language alternator block makes it possible to change the language of the site.

The site is shown in English in the figure.

Take account of the fact that only the interface is translated, but not the contents.

Languages

- English
- Español

Another blog entry
Submitted by admin on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54
Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacus lacinia a ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue n nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu. I sit amet ornare sollicitudin, ipsum lorem faucibus urna, at congue odio nisl sit amet augue.

[Read more](#)

Take account of the fact that only the interface is translated using this method, and not the contents of the site (nodes, menus, taxonomy, etc.). In the Intermediate Level we will study how to translate all of the items of the site in order to build a site with multiple languages.

Importing and exporting translations

18.2

Import and export translations at localize.drupal.org

Although it is not obligatory to register yourself at localize.drupal.org in order to download the translations of the core and of the modules contributed, when we register and we join a translation group, new translations importation and exportation settings will be authorised.

The first step will be to register ourselves at localize.drupal.org, from:

<http://localize.drupal.org/user/register>

Once the account has been created, we will be able to join the translation group of any language, searching for the **Join** button on the front page of the language. **F18.11**

Download & Extend

Download & Extend Home Drupal Core Modules Themes Translations Installation Profiles

Portuguese, Brazil overview

Overview Board Translate

Este é o grupo de discussões para a tradução do Drupal para o português brasileiro.
Glossário recomendado: <http://localize.drupal.org/node/3644>, <http://localize.drupal.org/node/1478>

Para conferir a lista dos revisores atualizada: <http://localize.drupal.org/node/3624>
Leia mais sobre o processo de seleção de revisores: <http://localize.drupal.org/node/3719>

Top downloads

Drupal core	Project	Version	Downloads	Date created	Up to date as of
Drupal core	Drupal core	5.23	Download (401.7 kB)	2011-Jan-20	2011-Jul-14
Drupal core	Drupal core	6.22	Download (515.71 kB)	2011-Oct-29	2011-Oct-30
Drupal core	Drupal core	7.9	Download (653.22 kB)	2011-Oct-28	2011-Oct-29

Further top projects

- Views 5.x-1.8, 6.x-2.12, 6.x-3.0-alpha4, 7.x-3.0-rc1
- Token 5.x-1.15, 6.x-1.16, 7.x-1.0-beta7
- Pathauto 5.x-1.2, 5.x-2.4, 6.x-1.5, 6.x-2.0-rc2, 7.x-1.0-rc1
- Content Construction Kit 5.x-1.12, 6.x-1.0-alpha, 6.x-2.9, 6.x-3.0-alpha3 (CCK)

Top contributors

Name	Translation count
Multiple contrib...	5549
José San Martin	2300
ndvo	1678
webseibt	1059
danielonunes	980
bmagalhaes	904
lesleyfernandes	878
pedrofaria	746
franz.glauber	685
aleagi	615

Translation statistics

152 contributors
315388 strings to translate
23926 translations recorded
8936 suggestions awaiting approval

Portuguese, Brazil team

Join

F18.11

Translate interface

From the **Translate interface** area we can import and export translations or search for text chains so as to translate them individually.

Once we have joined a translation group, we will be able to view the **Translate**, **Import** and **Export** tabs. **F18.12**

Download & Extend

Download & Extend Home Drupal Core Modules Themes Translations Installation Profiles

Spanish overview

Overview Board Translate Import Export

Spanish translation team - Grupo de traducción al Español

- Diccionario - Libro de estilo Wiki para crear un glosario de términos, manuales para traductores y libro de estilo en Español.
- Traducción de Drupal core Paquete de archivos .po que componen la traducción de Drupal, y los módulos del Core, al español neutro.
- Interfaz de traducción: Aportar sugerencias de traducción para cadenas de texto pendientes de traducir. Los moderadores validarán las sugerencias y seleccionarán la que será finalmente utilizada por la comunidad. Permite importar nuevas cadenas de texto (actualizaciones de módulos) y exportarlas para ser utilizadas en producción.
- Foro de traducciones: Iniciar y seguir debates sobre palabras o cadenas de texto concretas. Las discusiones sobre palabras establecen una base sólida sobre la que luego construir las sugerencias que serán posteadas en localize.drupal.org
- Glosario de términos: Establece una relación de traducción "automática" para los

Top contributors

Name	Translation count
gusgsm1	16698
Multiple contrib...	5358
soundboy89	1763
ari-meetal	1667
juango_dv	806
xavier.alvarez	706
elopio	647
richie06031983	552
rteijeiro	529

F18.12

Translate, Import and Export tabs at localize.drupal.org

Once we have registered and joined the translation group of a language, we will be able to access the Translate, Import and Export tabs.

From the **Translate** tab F18.13 we will be able to help with translations of the core or of the modules contributed. The translations that are added will go into a translation queue, with the translation moderators being the ones responsible for reviewing them and approving them. The added translations will only be available for downloading into the corresponding .po file when they have been approved.

We have a complete browser or strings location to be translated, for example those belonging to one specific module. By clicking on **Reveal more filters**, more search options will be displayed to us.

F18.13

Translate tab

From the Translate tab we can help by incorporating translation suggestions.

The translations incorporated must be validated by a moderator before forming part of the translation of the core or module.

The screenshot shows the 'Translate to Spanish' interface. At the top, there are tabs for Overview, Board, Translate (which is selected), Import, and Export. Below the tabs are several filter options: Project (radio button), Release (All dropdown), Context (All dropdown), Status (<Any> dropdown), Submitted by (radio button), Contains (text input), String ID (text input), and Limit (10 dropdown). A 'Clear all filters' button is also present. Below the filters is a navigation bar with page numbers (1-9, next, last) and a 'Source text' section. The main area displays three entries:

- # flickr
 - Show related projects
 - Flickr de
 - by soundboy89 on Thu, 06/09/2011 - 00:26
 - <New translation>
- # photos
 - Show related projects
 - fotos
 - by adlinguas on Mon, 08/31/2009 - 12:44
 - <New translation>
- # sets
 - Show related projects
 - conjuntos
 - by luigitec on Mon, 08/31/2009 - 22:18
 - <New translation>

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

F18.14

Import tab

From the **Import** tab we can contribute with the translation of modules by uploading translation batches in **.po** files.

From the **Import** tab F18.14 we will be able to import a **.po** file into the project. In this way we will add all of the new translations that we have incorporated into this file as suggestions. This may be useful if we have translated strings on our site, using the **Translate interface** tool, and we want to help with the project by adding them in a batch as translation suggestions.

The screenshot shows the 'Download & Extend' interface with the 'Translations' tab selected. Below it is the 'Import to Spanish' interface. At the top, there are tabs for Overview, Board, Translate, Import (which is selected), and Export. The 'Gettext .po file with translations:' field contains a file path, and there is an 'Examinar...' button. A note states: 'The maximum allowed size for uploads is 20 MB.' Below this is the 'Attribute import to:' section with two radio buttons: 'Yourself (forcontu)' (selected) and 'Multiple contributors'. A note below says: 'When importing the result of teamwork, If the imported translations were worked on by a team of people, it is common courtesy to not attribute them to your personal username to ensure you do not claim credit for work of the whole team.' There is an 'Import' button at the bottom.

By accessing the **Export** tab we F18.15 will be able to select the project and version for which we want to obtain the latest available translation, which we will obtain in a **.po** file. If we select the **Drupal core** project we will be able to download the latest version of the translation for the core of the system.

What is really interesting about this method is that we can **download the translation suggestions**, which are the translations that have not yet been approved by a moderator. This will enable us to have a more complete translation (in terms of the quantity of the translated texts). On the other hand, it could contain some translation errors.

Download & Extend

[Download & Extend Home](#) [Drupal Core](#) [Modules](#) [Themes](#) [Translations](#) [Installation Profiles](#)

Export Spanish translations

[Overview](#) [Board](#) [Translate](#) [Import](#) [Export](#)

Project: *

Drupal core

Release: *

All releases merged

Add Spanish translations

Add Spanish suggestions

For untranslated strings, the first suggestion will be exported as a fuzzy translation. All other suggestions are exported in comments.

Verbose output

Verbose files are ideal for desktop editing, compact files are better for download size.

[Export Gettext file](#)

Better download options

Our export and import features are designed for translators who'd like to contribute while on the road/plane or are just more comfortable in an editor on their desktop. If you are just interested in downloading translations, there are much better options, [detailed on the downloads page](#).

Spanish team Admins

Jose Reyero

adiaz

arhak

develCuy

F18.15**Export tab**

In the **Export** tab we can download a **.po** file with the latest translations available in any project.

As an extra option we can add the translation suggestions pending approval to the file.

Importing and exporting translations onto our website

In the previous section we studied how to import translations onto our website, using **.po** files. We did this from: **F18.5**

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Translate interface [Import]

We can also export all of the translations of our site into a **.po** file. This will be very useful if we have done translations of strings (from the **Translate** tab) and we want to share them with the community or import them to another website. It is also useful for us to preserve a **.po** file as a back-up copy. To do this we will go to the **Export** tab and select the language that we want to export. **F18.16**

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Regional and language](#) » [Translate interface](#)

Translate interface [○](#)

[OVERVIEW](#)

[TRANSLATE](#)

[IMPORT](#)

[EXPORT](#)

This page exports the translated strings used by your site. An export file may be in Gettext Portable Object (**.po**) form, which includes both the original string and the translation (used to share translations with others), or in Gettext Portable Object Template (**.pot**) form, which includes the original strings only (used to create new translations with a Gettext translation editor).

Export translation**Language name**

Spanish

Select the language to export in Gettext Portable Object (**.po**) format.

Text group

Built-in interface

[Export](#)

Export template

Generate a Gettext Portable Object Template (**.pot**) file with all strings from the Drupal locale database.

Text group

Built-in interface

[Export](#)

F18.16**Export translations from our site**

We can export the translations from our site as a back-up copy, so they can be imported into another website or to share them with the community.

18.3 Translation of strings

We can also translate strings individually, from: **F18.17**

Administration⇒Configuration⇒Translate interface [Translate]

From the **Translate** tab we will have to search for the strings to be translated, with the possibility of restricting the search using the following filters:

- **String contains.** It is necessary to enter all or part of the text that you are searching for. You have to take account of the fact that this is a search that is sensitive to upper case and lower case letters, and so when you search for "Page" or "page", the results will be completely different.
- **Language.** All of the languages or one language in particular can be searched for. This concern the language that the string searched for contains.
- **Search in.** This makes it possible to search for all of the chains (translated and not translated), only those that have been translated or only those that have not been translated.
- **Limit search to.** This allows us to search in all of the text groups, or only in the group that is selected. In principle, both the core and the translations of the modules belong to the only defined group that is called the **Incorporated interface**, and either of the two settings is valid.

F18.17

Translate interface.

Strings search

The Translate tab allows us to search for and translate individual strings in any of the languages of the site. This search is sensitive to upper case and lower-case letters.

TEXT GROUP	STRING	CONTEXT	LANGUAGES	OPERATIONS
Built-in interface	search		es	edit delete
Built-in interface	Advanced search		es	edit delete

The complete original string is displayed, in English, for each result found. The file or page of the site where it has been found will be displayed in some strings (in the case of being in a file, the line number is also displayed). If the string is translated into Spanish (or into the default language) this will be shown as **es**, and if there is no translation for it, the **es** language will appear as crossed out.

By clicking on **edit** F18.18 we can edit any of the translations found. On this page it will be possible to **add or modify** the translations of the string selected for all of the languages on the site.

F18.18

Translate a string

To translate a string it is enough to add the translation text in the languages available and **Save the translations**. Using this path we can also modify any string of the site.

Never delete the strings found. If you want to delete a translation, simply edit the string and leave the translation field blank.

Automatic updating of translations

18.4

After having used the automatic installation of modules, incorporated into Drupal 7, you will certainly wonder whether there is a similar tool for automatically installing the translations of the modules.

The **Localization update** module assists the installation of translations, automatically downloading and installing the translations of the modules installed. The module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/l10n_update

Once installed and enabled, we will be able to access the list of automatic updates from: F18.19

Administration⇒ Configuration ⇒ Regional and language ⇒ Translate interface [Update]

The system will inform us about the updates that are available, also providing us with a direct link to the .po file of each module. This will enable us to download each file and to manually install the update (Import tab), or by clicking on **Update translations** to download and install all of the translations available, for the languages selected from among the active languages on the site.

It is recommended that you always use the following updating method: "**The edited translations are kept, only the default (previously imported) ones are overwritten, and the new translations are added**", because otherwise we could lose the translations of strings that are done manually.

F18.19**Localization update**

The **Localization update** module allows us to automatically the translations of the modules installed, for all of the active languages on the site.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Regional and language](#) » [Translate interface](#)

Translate interface [OVERVIEW](#) [TRANSLATE](#) [IMPORT](#) [UPDATE](#) [EXPORT](#)

List of latest imported translations and available updates for each enabled project and language.

If there are available updates you can click on Update for them to be downloaded and imported now or you can edit the configuration for them to be updated automatically on the [Update settings page](#)

Drupal core

drupal 7.12	Uninstalled translation available
-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

Modules

Advanced Forum 7.x-2.0-rc1	Uninstalled translation available
Book Block 7.x-1.x-dev	No available translations found
Book access 7.x-2.0-alpha4	Uninstalled translation available
Book Delete 7.x-1.0	Uninstalled translation available

When the translations are updated, the actions carried out (files downloaded, texts translated, etc.) will be displayed and the modules whose translations have been installed will be checked. **F18.20**

F18.20**Localization update**

On automatically importing the translations, the system will report on the actions carried out. The modules that have already been translated will be classed as updated (in green).

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Regional and language](#) » [Translate interface](#)

Translate interface [OVERVIEW](#) [TRANSLATE](#) [IMPORT](#) [UPDATE](#) [EXPORT](#)

21 projects updated: advanced_forum, book_access, book_delete, captcha, captcha_pack, comment_notify, corolla, ctools, danland, drupal, extlink, kanji, masquerade, media, media_gallery, sky, taxonomy_block, taxonomy_menu, token, views, wysiwyg.
Spanish translation strings added: 3242, updated: 0, deleted: 0.

7 translation strings were skipped because they contain disallowed HTML. See [Recent log messages](#) for details.

List of latest imported translations and available updates for each enabled project and language.

If there are available updates you can click on Update for them to be downloaded and imported now or you can edit the configuration for them to be updated automatically on the [Update settings page](#)

Drupal core

drupal 7.12	Up to date
-----------------------------	------------

Modules

Advanced Forum 7.x-2.0-rc1	Up to date
Book Block 7.x-1.x-dev	No available translations found
Book access 7.x-2.0-alpha4	Up to date
Book Delete 7.x-1.0	Up to date

19 Access statistics

Drupal includes an internal statistics system with reports that are obtained from a hits log. A hits log is simply a table where information is stored about each visit to a website page.

The processing of statistics may be weighty for the system in terms of memory consumption and disc space. For that reason it is time-limited. In the core Statistics module, Drupal specifically only allows us to use data that have been recorded in, at a maximum, the last 15 weeks.

In order to make use of advanced statistics that do not have a negative effect on the website, there are external applications and services such as Google Analytics.

In this unit we will study how to enable Statistics on the site with Drupal and how to integrate the external service offered by Google Analytics.

Comparative D7/D6 Statistics Module

The Drupal core Statistics module has not changed as compared to its version in Drupal 6.

In general, it is recommended that you use the external statistics services.

Unit contents

19.1 Enabling and configuring the statistics.....	310
19.2 Statistics reports	312
19.3 Page counter	314
19.4 Google Analytics	315



19.1

Enabling and configuring the statistics

Drupal includes an optional statistics module, **Statistics**, in the core, which is disabled by default.

To enable the **Statistics module**, access **Modules**, locate the **Statistics module**, check it as enabled and click on the **Save configuration** button.

Once it has been enabled, we will have the following **statistics reports**, all within: **F19.1**

URL Reports
[/admin/reports](#)

F19.1

Statistics reports

List of site reports.

The reports added by the **Statistics** module are:

1. - Top referrers,
2. - Recent hits,
3. - Top pages and
4. - Top visitors.

Administration ⇒ **Reports**

[Home](#) » [Administration](#)

Reports ◊

Available updates

Get a status report about available updates for your installed modules and themes.

Status report

Get a status report about your site's operation and any detected problems.

Recent log messages

View events that have recently been logged.

Field list

Overview of fields on all entity types.

Recent hits

View pages that have recently been visited.

Top 'access denied' errors

View 'access denied' errors (403s).

Top 'page not found' errors

View 'page not found' errors (404s).

Top referrers

View top referrers.

Top search phrases

View most popular search phrases.

Top pages

View pages that have been hit frequently.

Top visitors

View visitors that hit many pages.

- **Top referrers.** This shows the external pages from which access has been given to some of the contents of the site.
- **Recent hits.** This shows the latest pages visited.
- **Top pages.** This shows a ranking of the most visited pages, stating the number of hits of each one of them.
- **Top visitors.** This shows a ranking with the users who have most visited the website, stated the number of pages visited. In the case of there being an anonymous user, it shows the IP address rather than the user name.

The information about accessing the site will not begin to be stored until we have enabled the hits register. Access:

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ System ⇒ Statistics

URL Statistics
</admin/config/system/statistics>

and enable the option for **Enable access log**. **F19.2**

The "**Discard access logs older than**" option it is necessary to state the total time period for which the access logs that are used for calculating the statistics will be available. This means that **the statistics reports will be limited to the maximum length of time established** for this option, which as a maximum will be 15 weeks (3 months and 3 weeks). The cron has to be configured correctly so as to obtain the statistics.

We can also enable the **Content viewing counter settings**, if we want to add a basic counter of the hits received by each node. Only the users with the right permissions will be able to view this counter.

The screenshot shows the 'Statistics' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Configuration > System > Statistics. Below the breadcrumb, the title 'Statistics' is followed by a gear icon. A note below the title says: 'Settings for the statistical information that Drupal will keep about the site. See [site statistics](#) for the actual information.' The page is divided into two main sections:

- ACCESS LOG SETTINGS**: Contains a checkbox labeled 'Enable access log' which is checked and highlighted with a red box. Below it is a note: 'Log each page access. Required for referrer statistics.' A dropdown menu shows '3 months 3 weeks' selected.
- CONTENT VIEWING COUNTER SETTINGS**: Contains a checkbox labeled 'Count content views' which is checked. Below it is a note: 'Increment a counter each time content is viewed.'

At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Save configuration' button.

F19.2

Configuration of statistics

We have to enable the hits register so as to start to store the statistics.

The statistics will be limited in time, depending on the setting, with the maximum possible being 15 weeks (3 months 3 weeks).

19.2 Statistics reports

In this section we will see the statistics reports that are available, one by one.

Recent hits

We can obtain a list of the latest pages visited from:

F19.3

URL Recent hits
/admin/reports/hits

F19.3

Recent hits

Recent hits show a list with the last pages visited, including the user name and the date and time of the visit.

Home » Administration » Reports

Recent hits

This page displays the site's most recent hits.

TIMESTAMP	PAGE	USER	OPERATIONS
02/14/2012 - 00:33	Reports admin/reports	admin	details
02/14/2012 - 00:33	Structure admin/structure	admin	details
02/14/2012 - 00:33	Structure admin/structure	admin	details
02/14/2012 - 00:33	Appearance admin/appearance	admin	details
02/14/2012 - 00:33	Structure admin/structure	admin	details

By clicking on **details** we will see a detailed report on the visit, with the full URL and the title of the page visited, the referrer (which is the page from which the page visited was reached), the user name and the IP address.

F19.4

Recent hits.
Registration details

The details of the hit furthermore shows the URL of the page visited, the page from where it was reached (Referrer) and the IP address from where the content was accessed.

Home » Administration » Reports

Details

URL	http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/admin/reports
TITLE	Reports
REFERRER	http://en.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/admin/reports/hits
DATE	Tuesday, February 14, 2012 – 00:33
USER	admin
HOSTNAME	85.155.181.58

Top pages

We can obtain a list of the most-visited pages from: **F19.5**

Administration ⇒ Reports ⇒ Top pages

VISITAS ▾	PÁGINA	TIEMPO DE GENERACIÓN PROMEDIO POR PÁGINA	TIEMPO TOTAL DE GENERACIÓN DE PÁGINAS
2	Estadísticas admin/config/system/statistics	191 ms	0 seg
2	Visitas recientes admin/reports/hits	215 ms	0 seg
2	Entrada creada por usuariodemo node/12	302 ms	1 seg
2	Informes admin/reports	512 ms	1 seg

URL Top pages

/admin/reports/pages

F19.5

Top pages

This report shows the ranking of the most visited pages (in the period that we have established).

The number of hits received and additional information about the loading time is displayed for every page.

Top visitors

We can obtain a ranking on the users who have visited the website from: **F19.6**

Administration ⇒ Reports ⇒ Top visitors

Home » Administration » Reports			
Top visitors in the past 3 months 3 weeks ▾			

When you ban a visitor, you prevent the visitor's IP address from accessing your site. Unlike blocking a user, banning a visitor works even for anonymous users. This is most commonly used to block resource-intensive bots or web crawlers.

HITS	VISITOR	TOTAL PAGE GENERATION TIME	OPERATIONS
25	admin	16 sec	
10	demouser	4 sec	
5	85.155.181.58	2 sec	block IP address

URL Top visitors

/admin/reports/visitors

F19.6

Top visitors

The top visitors are the ones who have viewed most pages on the site.

Top referrers

We can obtain a ranking with the external references from which the contents of our website have been accessed from: **F19.7**

Administration ⇒ Reports ⇒ Top referrers

Home » Administration » Reports			
Top referrers in the past 3 months 3 weeks ▾			

This page displays all external referrers, or external references to your website.

HITS	URL	LAST VISIT
3	http://d7inicial.aprendedrupal.e...	3 months 2 weeks ago
1	http://d7inicial.aprendedrupal.e...	3 months 2 weeks ago

URL Top referrers

/admin/reports/referrers

F19.7

Report on top referrers

Top referrers. Referrers are the external pages from which some content from our website has arrived.

19.3 Page counter

We can enable the content views counter from:

URL Statistics
[/admin/config/system/statistics](#)

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Statistics**

enabling **Count the content views** setting. Once enabled, the users with the right permission will be shown the pages red counter, just after the content, in both the page summaries and in showing the full page. **F19.8**

F19.8

Page counter

The page or reading counter displays a counter on every page of the site (only to the users with the "View hits to the content" permission).

Another blog entry

Submitted by [admin](#) on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:54

Vestibulum sodales venenatis rhoncus. Vestibulum venenatis dolor sit amet lacus lacinia aliquam. Curabitur ultrices, orci viverra laoreet accumsan, mauris neque lacinia orci, et convallis nisl augue nec tortor. Nullam nunc urna, rutrum condimentum dictum a, cursus sit amet arcu. Curabitur ac tellus arcu. Donec luctus, purus sit amet ornare sollicitudin, ipsum lorem faucibus urna, at congue odio nisl sit amet augue.

[Read more](#) [admin's blog](#) [1 comment](#) 5 reads

My first blog entry

Submitted by [admin](#) on Mon, 02/13/2012 - 21:47

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nulla eget lorem vitae dui pellentesque ullamcorper non vel ipsum. Quisque quis arcu massa, a mattis enim. Ut fermentum condimentum lorem non venenatis. Integer sem elit, auctor ut venenatis sed, gravida ut elit. Donec faucibus libero neque. Fusce pretium eros a dui rutrum vitae tincidunt lorem hendrerit. Cras vitae laoreet nunc. Pellentesque pharetra malesuada cursus.

[Read more](#) [admin's blog](#) 1 read

The permission necessary for viewing the reading counter of a page is "**View content hits**", within the **Statistics module**.

Google Analytics

19.4

The statistic compiled by the **Statistics modules** is very limited, both in time (no data for longer than 15 weeks are stored) and in terms of information facilitated. There are external services and tools that offer us many more possibilities and moreover do not affect the site performance.

One of these tools is the **Google Analytics** web application, which is a complete statistics service offered by Google. For this to function it is necessary to include a fragment of the JavaScript code in our pages, which will be responsible for sending the visitor hits data to the Google application. The **Google Analytics** Drupal module automatically adds the JavaScript code that is necessary for communication with Google to the site.

The **Google Analytics** module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/google_analytics

Once the module has been installed and enabled, we can access the configuration area from: **F19.9**

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **System** ⇒ **Google Analytics**

URL Google Analytics
</admin/config/system/googleanalytics>

In the **Tracking code** field we have to indicate the identifier of the account number that Google Analytics has provided us with. This is a Google Analytics account number with the format **UA-XXXX-X**. This number is obtained via a preliminary register at www.google.com/analytics. Consult the help available at the Google Analytics page so as to complete the registration process and obtain the corresponding code. You will need to create a free **Gmail** e-mail account to be able to use the service.

In the following sections we have:

- **Domains.** We can indicate that we want to track a website with one sole domain, or properly configure this setting so as to indicate that we want to track a site where we have several sub-domains or higher level domains, which we can detail in a list, so as to track several domains with the same Google Analytics account in this way.
- **Pages.** In this section we can configure the module so that the hits to all of the pages can be tracked or make an exception in any of them.
- **Roles.** This gives us the opportunity to track hits to the pages depending on the role of the user that visits it.
- **Users.** This allows us to establish whether the hits to the pages of the user profiles will be tracked.
- **Links and downloads.** We can indicate whether the clicks on external links, on email links and on the links to file downloads will be tracked. We can also choose for the clicks on external links to be quantified as if they were page hits.
- **Search and Adsense.** In this section we can establish whether the internal site search will be tracked, and also the possible advertisements added with the Google AdSense service.

- **Privacy.** This has settings for keeping the IP address of the visitors anonymous in the tracking.

F19.9

Configuration of the Google Analytics module

To be able to use the Google Analytics service we have to register ourselves on the page called www.google.com/analytics.

It is necessary or there to be a Google user, such as an e-mail account in Gmail, to be able to use this.

Once the service has been registered, we can obtain the account number (UA-XXXX-X) that we have to add in the configuration of the Drupal module.

GENERAL SETTINGS

Web Property ID *
UA-

This ID is unique to each site you want to track separately, and is in the form of UA-xxxxxx-yy. To get a Web Property ID, [register your site with Google Analytics](#), or if you already have registered your site, go to your Google Analytics Settings page to see the ID next to every site profile. [Find more information in the documentation.](#)

Tracking scope

Domains A single domain	What are you tracking?
Pages All pages with exceptions	<input checked="" type="radio"/> A single domain (default) Domain: cursod7.aprendedrupal.es
Roles Not restricted	<input type="radio"/> One domain with multiple subdomains Examples: www.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es, app.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es, shop.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es
Users Not customizable	<input type="radio"/> Multiple top-level domains Examples: cursod7.aprendedrupal.com, cursod7.aprendedrupal.net, cursod7.aprendedrupal.org
Links and downloads Outbound links, Maito links, Downloads tracked	
Search and AdSense Not tracked	
Privacy Universal web tracking opt-out enabled	

List of top-level domains

If you selected "Multiple top-level domains" above, enter all related top-level domains. Add one domain per line. By default, the data in your reports only includes the path and name of the page, and not the domain name. For more information see section [Show separate domain names in Tracking multiple domains](#).

CUSTOM VARIABLES

ADVANCED SETTINGS

Save configuration

In the **Custom Variables** setting we can add new variables that will be used to adjust the use of the tracking service as far as possible. This is a section for advanced users, and to use it, it is necessary to know about the use of the service offered by Google in detail.

In **Advanced settings** we will be able to specify other module functions, such as saving the tracking file locally, including portions of Javascript code before and after the code added to our pages by the Google Analytics module, or the position in which the code has to be inserted (page Header or Footer). These settings must also be changed for users with experience, and we will leave all of the values at their default setting.

Once the service has been correctly configured in Google Analytics and the Drupal module of our site, Google Analytics will start to register the site statistics. It is necessary to take account of the fact that the statistic require preliminary processing and they are not available in real time, but they are usually available when the day has ended. Therefore, we will always be able to consult the statistics until the day before the day of the enquiry.

The statistics are consulted directly on the **Google Analytics** page, accessing with the user created in the registration process.

Figure F19.10 shows the administration area of the site statistics on the Google Analytics page. There are a large number of settings for obtaining all types of reports, which can be applied between any two dates (moreover, without the time limit of the Drupal statistics module). For example, it is possible to obtain reports and graphs related to:

- Hits
- Pages viewed
- Average time on the site
- Percentage of new hits
- Graphs by location
- Traffic sources
- General content view

**F19.10**

Google Analytics

From the Google Analytics administration area we will have access to diverse site statistics reports.

All of the statistics can be consulted between any two dates and, moreover, there is no time limit as with the Drupal statistics module.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

20

Website management, maintenance and updating

We cannot finish the Beginner Level without studying some elements of the website that will be crucial for it to function correctly.

To start with, we will look at the syslog events system, where Drupal stores a lot of the actions that occur when the users utilise the site. A review and analysis of this information helps us to locate errors on our site such as broken links on pages.

The back-up copies will give us confidence to tackle new projects for updating and improving our site.

In this Unit we will also study how to update Drupal and the modules installed in depth. This is a methodical process, which, once it has been learned, is very straightforward and reliable.

As we will see, it is possible to improve the performance of our site by enabling the cache of the contents. We will only do this on the sites that are finished and ready to go live.

And to finish we will see how to configure the 403 (access denied) and 404 (page not found) error pages.

This Unit covers many items, but it has one single objective, which is to learn about the tools that Drupal provides us with in order to maintain, manage and update our website.

Comparative D7/D6 Management tools

In general, all of the matters described in this Unit for Drupal 7 are similar for Drupal 6.

Unit contents

20.1 Reports	320
20.2 Syslog	326
20.3 Logout due to site maintenance	329
20.4 Database backup	330
20.5 Updating Drupal to new versions.....	339
20.6 Updating of modules to new versions	341
20.7 Improving performance by enabling the cache.....	343
20.8 Error reporting	345

20

20.1 Reports

Drupal has a specific area for consulting the syslogs and associated reports, by means of: **F20.1**

URL Reports
[/admin/reports](#)

Administration ⇒ **Reports**

The reports contribute information that makes it possible to understand how the website is functioning better and how it is utilised by the users.

Additional reports will appear on this **Reports** page depending on the modules that we install and/or we enable on the site. This will initially display the following reports:

- **Status report.** This displays a summary table of the general status of the system.
- **Available updates.** This displays the update status of the core and of the modules installed on the site.
- **Recent log messages.** All of the logged events are displayed (up to the set time limit).
- **Field list.** This shows a list of all of the fields used on our site for easy reference.
- **Top "access defined" errors.** This displays all of the **access denied** or error 403errors logged (up to the set time limit).
- **Top "page not found" errors.** This displays all of the **page not found** or error 404errors logged (up to the set time limit).

F20.1

Reports area

The reports provide information that makes it possible to find out better how the website is functioning and how it is utilised by the users.

New reports will be added on this page, depending on the modules installed and/or enabled.

The screenshot shows the 'Reports' page under 'Administration'. The page lists several report types, each with a brief description:

- Status report**: Get a status report about your site's operation and any detected problems.
- Available updates**: Get a status report about available updates for your installed modules and themes.
- Recent log messages**: View events that have recently been logged.
- Field list**: Overview of fields on all entity types.
- Fields used in views**: Overview of fields used in all views.
- Recent hits**: View pages that have recently been visited.
- Top 'access denied' errors**: View 'access denied' errors (403s).
- Top 'page not found' errors**: View 'page not found' errors (404s).

We have already studied some additional reports that have been added by other modules.

The **Search** module authorises the following report (**Unit 17**):

- **Top phrases in the searches.** This displays a list of the text strings that are most searched for on the site.

The **Statistics** module also adds several reports (**Unit 19**):

- **Top referrers.** This shows the external pages from which some of the site contents have been accessed.
- **Recent hits.** This displays the latest pages visited.
- **Top pages.** This displays a ranking of the most visited web pages, indicating the number of hits on each one of these.
- **Top visitors.** This displays a ranking with the users who have most visited the website, stating the number of pages viewed. In the case of this being an anonymous user, it displays the IP address instead of the user name.

Status report

The **Status report** shows the administrator a summary with the status of certain parameters of the website. The **Status report** furthermore shows those problems that have been detected in the configuration of the site, and generally, instructions about how to resolve them.

The **Status report** is available at: F20.2

Administration ⇒ **Reports** ⇒ **Status report**

URL Status report
`/admin/reports/status`

This report uses a colour code for indicating whether the configuration of each parameter is correct or, on the other hand, requires some correction:

- In **green (information)** we see the parameters that are correctly configured. Moreover, the value corresponding to that parameter is reported.
- In **yellow (notifications)** we see the parameters, which, while they may continue like that, do not have the right or a recommended form of configuration.
- In **red (alerts)** we see the parameters that are giving problems and which it is necessary to correct for the proper functioning of the system or of one module in particular.

F20.2**Status report**

The **status report** makes it possible for the administrator to understand some of the characteristics of the website and to consult about any problem with the Drupal configuration.

- In green (information) we see the parameters that are correctly configured. Moreover, the value corresponding to that parameter is reported.
- In yellow (notifications) we see the parameters, which, while they may continue like that, do not have the right or a recommended form of configuration.
- In red (alerts) we see the parameters that are giving problems and which it is necessary to correct for the proper functioning of the system or of one module in particular.

Status report																																									
Here you can find a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on drupal.org's support forums and project issue queues.																																									
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Drupal</th><th>7.10</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Access to update.php</td><td>Protected</td></tr> <tr> <td>CTools CSS Cache</td><td>Exists</td></tr> <tr> <td>Colorbox plugin</td><td>1.3.18</td></tr> <tr> <td>Configuration file</td><td>Protected</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cron maintenance tasks</td><td>Last run 2 hours 22 sec ago You can run cron manually. To run cron from outside the site, go to http://cursod7.aprendedupal.es/cron.php?cron_key=HNKOgFpxnR-Cj4Ko3HX281aiChlhOdmOHQ5Mt6FinR8</td></tr> <tr> <td>Database system</td><td>MySQL, MariaDB, or equivalent</td></tr> <tr> <td>Database system version</td><td>5.1.56</td></tr> <tr> <td>Database updates</td><td>Up to date</td></tr> <tr> <td>Date API</td><td>System date settings The timezone has been set to Europe/London. The first day of the week has been set to Monday. The medium date format has been set to D, d/m/Y - H:i.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drupal core update status</td><td>No update data available No update information available. Run cron or check manually.</td></tr> <tr> <td>File system</td><td>Writable (public download method)</td></tr> <tr> <td>GD library PNG support</td><td>bundled (2.0.34 compatible)</td></tr> <tr> <td>GD library rotate and desaturate effects</td><td>bundled (2.0.34 compatible)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Google Analytics module</td><td>Not configured Google Analytics module has not been configured yet. Please configure its settings from the Google Analytics settings page.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Images</td><td>Product image support has been automatically configured by Ubercart.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Node Access Permissions</td><td>53 permissions in use If the site is experiencing problems with permissions to content, you may have to rebuild the permissions cache. Rebuilding will remove all privileges to content and replace them with permissions based on the current modules and settings. Rebuilding may take some time if there is a lot of content or complex permission settings. After rebuilding has completed, content will automatically use the new permissions. Rebuild permissions</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHP</td><td>5.2.17 (more information)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHP extensions</td><td>Enabled</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHP memory limit</td><td>128M</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Drupal	7.10	Access to update.php	Protected	CTools CSS Cache	Exists	Colorbox plugin	1.3.18	Configuration file	Protected	Cron maintenance tasks	Last run 2 hours 22 sec ago You can run cron manually . To run cron from outside the site, go to http://cursod7.aprendedupal.es/cron.php?cron_key=HNKOgFpxnR-Cj4Ko3HX281aiChlhOdmOHQ5Mt6FinR8	Database system	MySQL, MariaDB, or equivalent	Database system version	5.1.56	Database updates	Up to date	Date API	System date settings The timezone has been set to Europe/London . The first day of the week has been set to Monday . The medium date format has been set to D, d/m/Y - H:i .	Drupal core update status	No update data available No update information available. Run cron or check manually .	File system	Writable (public download method)	GD library PNG support	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)	GD library rotate and desaturate effects	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)	Google Analytics module	Not configured Google Analytics module has not been configured yet. Please configure its settings from the Google Analytics settings page .	Images	Product image support has been automatically configured by Ubercart.	Node Access Permissions	53 permissions in use If the site is experiencing problems with permissions to content, you may have to rebuild the permissions cache. Rebuilding will remove all privileges to content and replace them with permissions based on the current modules and settings. Rebuilding may take some time if there is a lot of content or complex permission settings. After rebuilding has completed, content will automatically use the new permissions. Rebuild permissions	PHP	5.2.17 (more information)	PHP extensions	Enabled	PHP memory limit	128M
Drupal	7.10																																								
Access to update.php	Protected																																								
CTools CSS Cache	Exists																																								
Colorbox plugin	1.3.18																																								
Configuration file	Protected																																								
Cron maintenance tasks	Last run 2 hours 22 sec ago You can run cron manually . To run cron from outside the site, go to http://cursod7.aprendedupal.es/cron.php?cron_key=HNKOgFpxnR-Cj4Ko3HX281aiChlhOdmOHQ5Mt6FinR8																																								
Database system	MySQL, MariaDB, or equivalent																																								
Database system version	5.1.56																																								
Database updates	Up to date																																								
Date API	System date settings The timezone has been set to Europe/London . The first day of the week has been set to Monday . The medium date format has been set to D, d/m/Y - H:i .																																								
Drupal core update status	No update data available No update information available. Run cron or check manually .																																								
File system	Writable (public download method)																																								
GD library PNG support	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)																																								
GD library rotate and desaturate effects	bundled (2.0.34 compatible)																																								
Google Analytics module	Not configured Google Analytics module has not been configured yet. Please configure its settings from the Google Analytics settings page .																																								
Images	Product image support has been automatically configured by Ubercart.																																								
Node Access Permissions	53 permissions in use If the site is experiencing problems with permissions to content, you may have to rebuild the permissions cache. Rebuilding will remove all privileges to content and replace them with permissions based on the current modules and settings. Rebuilding may take some time if there is a lot of content or complex permission settings. After rebuilding has completed, content will automatically use the new permissions. Rebuild permissions																																								
PHP	5.2.17 (more information)																																								
PHP extensions	Enabled																																								
PHP memory limit	128M																																								

Available updates

The **Available updates** report enables us to consult the updates status of the core, modules and themes installed on the site.

The **Available updates** report can be consulted at: **F20.3**

Administration ⇒ **Reports** ⇒ **Available updates**

URL Status report
</admin/reports/updates>

Home » Administration » Reports

Available updates

LIST **UPDATE** **SETTINGS**

Here you can find information about available updates for your installed modules and themes. Note that each module or theme is part of a "project", which may or may not have the same name, and might include multiple modules or themes within it.

[+ Install new module or theme](#)

Last checked: 0 sec ago [\(Check manually\)](#)

Drupal core

Drupal core 7.10	Security update required!
Recommended version: 7.12 (2012-Feb-01)	Download Release notes
Security update: 7.11 (2012-Feb-01)	Download Release notes
Includes: Bartik2, Block, Color, Comment, Contact, Content translation, Contextual links, Dashboard, Database logging, Field, Field SQL storage, Field UI, File, Filter, Forum, Help, Image, List, Locale, Menu, Node, Number, Options, Overlay, PHP filter, Path, Search, Seven, Shortcut, Statistics, System, Taxonomy, Text, Toolbar, Trigger, Update manager, User	

Modules

addressfield 7.x-1.0-beta2	No available releases found
Includes: Address Field	
Boxes 7.x-1.0-beta6	Update available
Recommended version: 7.x-1.0-beta7 (2012-Jan-27)	Download Release notes
Includes: Boxes	
CCK List 7.x-1.0-alpha4	Up to date
Includes: List	
Colorbox 7.x-1.2	Up to date
Includes: Colorbox	

F20.3**Available updates. List**

The **Available updates** report offers the administrator a list of the status of the updates of the core, modules and themes installed on the site.

In the same way as with the **Status report**, the **Available updates** report also uses a colour code to report, notify or alert, depending on the problem found:

- In **green (information)** we see the items (core, modules and themes) that are updated.
- In **yellow (notification)** we see the items for which there is a version available, but which it is not obligatory to update (although it is recommended).
- In **red (alert)** we see the items that require an update, generally for security. It also displays the modules or themes whose projects do not now have support from the author (abandoned projects) and which, therefore, should not be used. In these cases it is recommended that you look for a module that is an alternative to the module that has been abandoned.
- In **grey (notification)** we see the items that it has not been possible to check with the automatic update. The message displayed is "No available versions found".

On this particular page, by accessing the **Update** tab, we will be able to run a manual check on the updates. This displays the time that has passed since the last available updates check took place.

From this page we can automatically install some of the available updates, by clicking on **Download these updates**. The system will download and upload the latest versions of the modules selected to the site; quite similar to what it does when we use the automatic modules installation. Once installed, it will be necessary to launch the database updates script, as we will see in the coming sections.

In the **Update** tab we can also see other updates that cannot be done automatically (**Manual updates required**). This is the case with updates to the core. **F20.4**

F20.4

Available updates. Update

From the Update tab it is possible to automatically install the new versions of the modules installed.

NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Boxes	7.x-1.0-beta6	7.x-1.0-beta7 (Release notes)
Chaos tool suite (ctools)	7.x-1.x-dev	7.x-1.0-rc1 (Release notes)
Date	7.x-2.0-rc1	7.x-2.0-rc2 (Release notes)
Webform Rules	7.x-1.1	7.x-1.3 (Release notes)

[Download these updates](#)

Manual updates required

Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.

NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Drupal core (Security update)	7.10	7.12 (Release notes)

By clicking on the **Settings** tab, we can configure some parameters related to the updates enquiry: **F20.5**

F20.5

Available updates. Settings

It is possible to configure the behavior of the site when it comes to checking the available updates.

Check for updates

Daily
 Weekly

Select how frequently you want to automatically check for new releases of your currently installed modules and themes.

Check for updates of disabled modules and themes

E-mail addresses to notify when updates are available
admin@example.com

Whenever your site checks for available updates and finds new releases, it can notify a list of users via e-mail. Put each address on a separate line. If blank, no e-mails will be sent.

E-mail notification threshold

All newer versions
 Only security updates

You can choose to send e-mail only if a security update is available, or to be notified about all newer versions. If there are updates available of Drupal core or any of your installed modules and themes, your site will always print a message on the [status report](#) page, and will also display an error message on administration pages if there is a security update.

[Save configuration](#)

- **Check for updates.** We can configure the frequency with which (daily or weekly) the system will automatically check pending updates. We can also indicate whether we want the check to include to the modules and

themes that have not been enabled.

- **E-mail addresses to notify when update available.** When there are updates available, the system will send an e-mail to the addresses stated.
- **E-mail notification threshold.** It is also possible to select whether we want the e-mail notifications to be done when there are back-up updates or with any type of update.

Field list

This displays a list with all of the fields created on the site, whether manually or by using the modules installed. For each field this indicates a system name, field type and what entities they are being used in. **F20.6**

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	USED IN
body	Long text and summary (module: Text)	Article, Basic page, Blog entry, Book page, Forum topic, News
comment_body	Long text (module: Text)	Article comment, Basic page comment, Blog entry comment, Book page comment, Forum topic comment, Gallery comment, News comment, Poll comment
field_firstname	Text (module: Text)	User
field_image	Image (module: Image)	Article
field_lastname	Text (module: Text)	User
field_level	Term reference (module: Taxonomy)	Article
field_level_image	Image (module: Image)	Level
field_license (Locked)	List (text) (module: List)	Audio, Image, Video, Other, Gallery collections
field_news_picture	Image (module: Image)	News

F20.6

Field list

This displays all of the fields created on the site, stating the system name, the field type and in which entities it is being utilised.

The rest of the reports, related to the syslog, are analysed in the next section.

20.2 Syslog

The syslog maintains a database with all of the events that occur on the website. To avoid performance problems, we can limit the number of posts stored by the log in the database. In this case, once this limit has been reached, the oldest posts will be eliminated so as to provide space for the new events that have occurred.

To configure the maximum number of logs that will be stored on the database, access **F20.7**

URL Logging and errors
</admin/config/development/logging>

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Development⇒ Logging and errors

You can select values between 100 and 1,000,000. In Drupal 7 it is also possible to store and maintain **all** of the messages of the log. This setting must be used carefully, because a high number of posts in one table may also cause general performance problems on the site.

The restriction on the number of posts requires the site cron to be run periodically.

F20.7

Log in the database

We define the maximum number of logs stored. An excessively high number could affect the performance of the site. We can also store all of the posts of the log, without setting any limit.

In the sites under production, it may be advisable not to display error messages.

The screenshot shows the 'Logging and errors' configuration page. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Configuration > Development. Below that, the title 'Logging and errors' is displayed. Under the heading 'Error messages to display', there are three radio buttons: 'None' (selected), 'Errors and warnings', and 'All messages'. A note below says: 'It is recommended that sites running on production environments do not display any errors.' Under the heading 'Database log messages to keep', there is a dropdown menu set to '1000'. A note below says: 'The maximum number of messages to keep in the database log. Requires a cron maintenance task.' At the bottom, there is a 'Save configuration' button.

From **Logging and errors** we can also configure it so that error messages will be displayed to the users. On a site under development we will always display **All messages**, but on a live site it may be safer if the user cannot view the error and warning messages. In that case we will select **None**.

Take account of the fact that, although the error message are not displayed to the user, they will be stored in the errors log, and it is therefore important to periodically consult the log to check that the site is functioning correctly.

Recent log messages

The system monitors the website activity logging the different system events. The administrator can, at any time, review this report by analysing data on use, performance, errors, etc. The system categorises them by types and severity and it makes it possible to filter the results according to the needs of the administrator.

This is another one of the important tools that the site administrator has to find

out what is happening on it at any time. This is a very complete report in which we will be able to see a variety of messages with useful information such as hits on pages that are not found, failed user authentication, confirmations of cron runs or accesses to pages denied.

The **Recent log messages** report can be consulted at: **F20.8**

Administration⇒ Reports ⇒ Recent log messages

URL [Recent log messages](#)
</admin/reports/dblog>

By **clicking on the message of each post**, the system will display additional information about this.

The total number of posts displayed can be restricted, depending on the value that we have indicated in the log configuration.

The Database logging module monitors your website, capturing system events in a log (shown here) to be reviewed by an authorized individual at a later time. This log is a list of recorded events containing usage data, performance data, errors, warnings and operational information. It is vital to check the Recent log messages report on a regular basis, as it is often the only way to tell what is going on.

FILTER LOG MESSAGES

Type	Severity
actions	emergency
bookblock	alert
content	critical
cron	error
file	warning
l10n_update	notice
locale	info
masquerade	debug

CLEAR LOG MESSAGES

This will permanently remove the log messages from the database.

Clear log messages

TYPE	DATE	MESSAGE	USER	OPERATIONS
masquerade	02/14/2012 - 00:35	User admin no longer masquerading as demouser.	admin	
masquerade	02/14/2012 - 00:35	User admin now masquerading as demouser.	admin	
masquerade	02/14/2012 - 00:35	User admin no longer masquerading as Anonymous.	admin	
masquerade	02/14/2012 - 00:35	User admin now masquerading as Anonymous.	admin	
file	02/14/2012 - 00:30	The file public://ctools/css was not deleted, because...	admin	
bookblock	02/14/2012 - 00:30	\$navigationblocks = 14	admin	
bookblock	02/14/2012 - 00:30	\$navigationblocks = 14	admin	
bookblock	02/14/2012 - 00:30	\$navigationblocks = 14	admin	
bookblock	02/14/2012 - 00:30	\$navigationblocks = 14	admin	

F20.8

Recent messages log

The **Recent messages log** report enables the administrator to have an overview of the activity generated on the website.

We can filter the messages according to their type and severity.

We will be able to filter the log messages list by message type (access denied, page not found, cron, content, etc.) and by severity (warning, notification, information error, etc.).

From this page we will also be able to empty the log database, by clicking on the **Clear log messages** button.

Top "access denied" errors

The access denied (error 403) errors are stored in the log. These errors take place when a user without permissions seeks to access a private page (such as for example an administration page). The **Top "access denied" errors** report displays a ranking with the pages in which an error most commonly takes place. This can be consulted at: **F20.9**

URL Access denied</admin/reports/access-denied>**Administration** ⇒ **Reports** ⇒ **Top "access denied" errors**

To consult the errors separately we have to consult the **Recent log messages** report, where further information will be displayed about every error.

F20.9**Top "access denied" errors**

Log of the failed access attempts to restricted pages.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#)
Top 'access denied' errors ◉

COUNT	MESSAGE
2	admin/modules
1	admin/appearance

Top "page not found" errors

The log stores the page not found (error 404) errors. These errors take place when a user attempts to access a page that does not exist on the site. The **Top "page not found" errors** report displays a ranking with the URLs at which this error most commonly takes place. This can be consulted at: **F20.10**

URL Page not found</admin/reports/page-not-found>**Administration** ⇒ **Reports** ⇒ **Top "page not found" errors**

To consult the errors separately we have to consult the **Recent log messages** report, where further information will be displayed about every error.

This report is particularly useful for **detecting possible broken links** in terms of both site contents and the external pages that direct to our site. Remember that the referrer page from which an attempt has been made to access the non-existent link is stored in the log post.

F20.10**Report on top "page not found" errors**

Log of the access attempts to URLs not existing on the site.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#)
Top 'page not found' errors ◉

COUNT	MESSAGE
3	modules
2	themes
1	favicon.ico
1	galleries

Logout due to site maintenance

20.3

It is always recommended that you make the important changes to a website in a development framework and never on a site under production. On occasions, we will make the changes directly on the website under production, either because we do not have a development framework or simply because the modifications to be made are of small (and controlled) scope.

In these cases it is appropriate to **temporarily log out of the website for maintenance tasks**. To connect or disconnect from the site we will access:

F20.11

Administration⇒ Configuration⇒ Development⇒ Maintenance mode

URL Maintenance mode
</admin/config/development/maintenance>

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance mode' configuration page. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administration > Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode. Below the title 'Maintenance mode' is a note about upgrading Drupal. A checkbox labeled 'Put site into maintenance mode' is checked and highlighted with a red border. A descriptive text block explains that authorized users can log in directly via the user login page. Below this is a 'Maintenance mode message' section containing a message for visitors. At the bottom, there's a 'Save configuration' button.

F20.11

Logged out due to maintenance

Drupal allows us to display a logged out due to maintenance message while updating or development tasks are being carried out on the site.

By checking the **Put site into maintenance mode** box, and clicking on the **Save configuration** button, we log out of the site. We can modify the message that will be displayed to the visitors who try to access the site while it is closed.

When the site is closed, only the users with the "**Use site in maintenance mode**" permission will be able to browse the site as normal. If the user had not initiated a session on the site before enabling the logout, it will be able to enter via the URL **/user** (<http://www.example.com/user>).

One very common error is **forgetting the site is in disconnected mode**. As the administrator is able to browse the site in the usual way, it is easy for us to forget that the site is in disconnected mode. The result of this is that the users will not be able to access our site until we detect this error. One good practice is to **end the session** manually every time that we stop working with the administrator user. We will then be able to browse through the site as an anonymous user, so as to check that everything is working correctly.

To enable the site again we have to return to the **Maintenance mode** page and disable the "**Put site into maintenance mode**" box.

20.4 Database backup

Backup and Migrate Module

Before installing new modules or doing updates it is advisable to make a **backup copy** of the entire site, but especially of the **database**.

If we have access to the site database management (for example, by using the phpMyAdmin application), we will be able to do a direct exportation (consult **Annex A**).

Depending on the conditions of the hosting at which we have the website, or simply for comfort, we can use the **Backup and Migrate** module for importing and exporting the database. This module makes it possible, among other things, to create periodic and automatic backup copies of the database, which will be done by running the cron of the site.

The **Backup and Migrate** module is available at:

http://drupal.org/project/backup_migrate

Once installed and enabled, we will be able to access the configuration and utilisation of the module by means of: **F20.12**

URL Backup and Migrate
[/admin/config/system/
backup_migrate](/admin/config/system/backup_migrate)

Administration⇒ Configuration ⇒ System ⇒ Backup and Migrate

If we have not specified a path for the **private file system**, the module will display an error message stating that it is necessary to establish this to store the backup copies on the server.

Since the **Backup and Migrate** module is going to generate backup copies with all of the information contained in the database, the files must be stored in a place that is safe and inaccessible from the website.

F20.12

**Backup and Migrate
Module**

With **Backup and Migrate**, we can do backup copies of the database.

The copies are stored in the private file system.

Home » Administration » Configuration » System

Backup and Migrate • BACKUP RESTORE DESTINATIONS PROFILES SCHEDULES

Quick Backup Advanced Backup

You must specify a private file system path in the file system settings to backup to the server.

Use this form to run simple manual backups of your database. Visit the [help page](#) for more help using this module.

QUICK BACKUP

Backup from: Default Database to: Download using: Default Settings Backup now

For more backup options, try the [advanced backup page](#).

This path is used in order for Drupal to store the files that cannot be accessible to users by means of any URL address. The system will be responsible for protecting the stated folder.

By clicking on the **file system settings** link, we will access the settings of the Drupal **File system**, also accessible from: **F20.13**

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ media ⇒ File system**URL File system**</admin/config/media/file-system>[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Media](#)**File system** **Public file system path**

A local file system path where public files will be stored. This directory must exist and be writable by Drupal. This directory must be relative to the Drupal installation directory and be accessible over the web.

Private file system path

An existing local file system path for storing private files. It should be writable by Drupal and not accessible over the web. See the online handbook for [more information about securing private files](#).

Temporary directory

A local file system path where temporary files will be stored. This directory should not be accessible over the web.

Default download method

- Public local files served by the webserver.
- Private local files served by Drupal.

This setting is used as the preferred download method. The use of public files is more efficient, but does not provide any access control.

[Save configuration](#)

The default path is **sites/default/files/private**, a folder that will be protected by means of an **.htaccess** file. The files stored in this folder will not be available by means of direct access via URL.

We will specify a valid path and we will save the settings.

Quick Backup

From the main module setting tab (**Backup copy**), we will have access to two sub-tabs, **Advanced backup** and **Quick backup**, which is the default active tab. In both cases, we will make manual backup copies.

The **quick backup** uses the settings parameters established for making a direct backup copy, which we will be able to store in the manual backup Directory or download onto our equipment. **F20.14**

The file generated will have the **.mysql** extension, with this being a text file containing SQL queries.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [System](#)**Backup and Migrate** [BACKUP](#)[RESTORE](#)[DESTINATIONS](#)[PROFILES](#)[SCHEDULES](#)[Quick Backup](#) [Advanced Backup](#)

Use this form to run simple manual backups of your database. Visit the [help page](#) for more help using this module

QUICK BACKUP

Backup from to using [Backup now](#)

For more backup options, try the [advanced backup page](#).

F20.14**Backup and Migrate Module. Quick backup copy**

The **quick backup copy** is done by directly using the default parameters.

Advanced Backup

The **Advanced backup** tab will enable us to make a manual backup copy by configuring some additional parameters: **F20.15**

F20.15

Backup and Migrate Module. Advanced copy

The **Advanced copy** setting enables us to customize several parameters before making a copy.

Home » Administration » Configuration » System » Backup and Migrate

Backup and Migrate **BACKUP** **RESTORE** **DESTINATIONS** **PROFILES** **SCHEDULES**

Quick Backup **Advanced Backup**

Load Settings **Default Settings** **Load Profile**

Backup file name
[site:name]
You can use tokens in the file name.
 Append a timestamp.

Timestamp format
Y-m-dTH-i-s
Should be a PHP `date()` format string.

Compression
GZip

File Encryption
Install the [AES Encryption Module](#) to enable backup file encryption.

DEFAULT DATABASE BACKUP OPTIONS

ADVANCED OPTIONS

Backup destination
Choose where the backup file will be saved. Backup files contain sensitive data, so be careful where you save them. Select 'Download' to download the file to your desktop.

Destination
Manual Backups Directory
[Create new destination](#)

Save these settings.

Backup now

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

- **Load settings.** By loading a profile we will modify all of the values of the form. First load the profile and then make the necessary modifications, before making a backup copy. By default, the module comes with a database export profile, which we will be able to modify. Later on, we will learn how to create new profiles.
- **Backup file.** This makes it possible to define the file name, the format of the date (if we want to include the date) and the compression type.
- **Default database backup options.** This makes it possible to exclude certain tables (complete or just the data) of the backup copy. This setting is especially useful for excluding the logs, cache and indexing of searches tables, which are usually tables that store a lot of data but that are actually irrelevant in terms of the recovery of the site. We recommend that you only make a section of the tables to be exported

once you have studied the Advanced Level. Should this not be the case, always make a full backup copy.

The **Block tables during copying** setting will mean that data from the tables cannot be inserted or eliminated while the backup copy is being done. On a site under production, it is convenient to use this option along with log out due to site maintenance.

- **Advanced settings.** This makes it possible to indicate an e-mail address to inform whether the backup was carried out successfully, and also another address if the copy failed. It is also possible to temporarily disable the site (recommended), changing the maintenance mode. If we check this setting the site will be disabled before starting with the exportation and it will be automatically enabled once it has been completed. It is also possible to define the text that will be displayed to the visitors in this time period.
- **Backup destination.** This makes it possible to select **Download** for downloading the file to our equipment or to select a folder (or destination) on the server. These destinations must be created in advance from the **Destinations** tab or by using the **Create new destination** link, as we will see later on.
- **Save these settings.** If we select this option it enables us to override an existing profile or create a new profile, with a new name.

Lastly, once the desired configuration has been done, we can do the backup by clicking on **Backup now**.

Restore

The **Restore** tab is accessed from the front page of the module. This makes it possible to recover or restore the database from a previous backup. It is important to take account of the following: **F20.16**

- Restoring a backup will delete the current content of the database, and this is an action that **cannot be undone** (unless you previously do another backup of the current database).
- The module only makes it possible to recover databases from backup copies made with the same module. In addition, we recommend that the file is a cop made with the same version of the module. If you have an expiration done via another application, such as **phpMyAdmin**, you must also use **phpMyAdmin** to carry out the database recovery, and you will not be able to use this module to restore it.
- If the backup is partial (some tables are excluded when this is done), only the tables saved in the backup copy will be modified, with the rest of the database tables remaining intact.

F20.16

Backup and Migrate Module. Restore

The **Restore** setting enables us to recover a backup copy done beforehand from the **Backup and Migrate** module.

Restoring will delete some or all of your data and cannot be undone. **Always test your backups on a non-production server!**

Upload a backup and migrate backup file. The restore function will not work with database dumps from other sources such as phpMyAdmin.

Upload a Backup File

Seleccionar archivo No se ha...archivo

Upload a backup file created by this version of this module. For other database backups please use another tool for import. Max file size: 2 MB

ADVANCED OPTIONS

Restore now

Or you can restore one of the files in your saved backup destinations.

To recover the database from a backup, select the file that the backup copy contains. In the **Advanced settings** section you can indicate that the site is disconnected and automatically connect during the database recovery process.

We can also restore the database from the backup files that we have first saved at the backup destinations.

Finally, using the **Restore now** button, the restoring of the database will be done from the file indicated.

Destinations

We access from the front page of the module, **Destinations** tab. This makes it possible to create destinations where the backups made will be stored. **F20.17**

This list will display all of the destinations available, both the default destinations and those that we have created before.

F20.17

Backup and Migrate Module. Destinations

The **Destinations** tab displays a list with the possible destinations that we can use to store the backup copies.

Destinations are the places you can save your backup files to or them load from.

+ Add Destination

NAME	TYPE	LOCATION	OPERATIONS
Manual Backups Directory	Server Directory	private://backup_migrate/manual	list files override
Scheduled Backups Directory	Server Directory	private://backup_migrate/scheduled	list files override
Default Database	MySQL Database	mysql://cursod7_curso@localhost/cursod7_bdcursod7	override

The **Add destination** link enables us to create a new destination. We can select very different types of destination, such as: **F20.18**

- **Server directory.** A folder on the server where the site is hosted.

- **MySQL database.** This makes it possible to import the database directly into another database, on any server. It will be sufficient for the database to be created and that we have the corresponding access data.
- **FTP Directory.** A directory on any server that will be connected by FTP.
- **Amazon S3 Bucket.** Makes it possible to use this Amazon service.
- **Email.** The copy generated will be sent as an attached file to the address stated in an e-mail.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [System](#) » [Backup and Migrate](#) » [Destinations](#)

Backup and Migrate

Choose the type of destination you would like to create:

Server Directory

Save the backup files to any directory on the server which the web-server can write to.

MySQL Database

Import the backup directly into another MySQL database. Database destinations can also be used as a source to backup from.

FTP Directory

Save the backup files to any directory on an FTP server.

Amazon S3 Bucket

Save the backup files to a bucket on your [Amazon S3 account](#).

Email

Send the backup as an email attachment to the specified email address.

F20.18

Backup and Migrate Module. Creating a new destination

The destination of a backup copy can be an FTP server, a database, and electronic mail address, etc.

Profiles

This is accessed from the front page of the module, **Profiles** tab. **F20.19** The profiles are configuration templates that we can re-use both when manual backups are made and in the scheduled tasks (**Schedules** tab).

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [System](#) » [Backup and Migrate](#)

Backup and Migrate

BACKUP

RESTORE

DESTINATIONS

PROFILES

SCHEDULES

Profiles are saved backup settings. Profiles store your table exclusion settings as well as your backup file name, compression and timestamp settings. You can use profiles in [schedules](#) and for [manual backups](#).

+ Add Profile

NAME	SOURCE	FILENAME	OPERATIONS
Default Settings	Default Database	[site.name]	override

F20.19

Backup and Migrate Module. Profiles

The **Profiles** tab enables us to create configuration templates or profiles.

From the **Add Profile** tab we can create a new configuration profile. **F20.20**

As we have already said above, from **Advanced backup** it is also possible to define a new profile, selecting the **Save these settings** option.

F20.20

Backup and Migrate Module. Creating a profile

A profile is a configuration that we can use when we create a backup copy manually or automatically.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [System](#) » [Backup and Migrate](#) » [Profiles](#)

Backup and Migrate ◊

Profile Name *
Untitled Profile

▼ BACKUP FILE

Backup file name
[site:name]
You can use tokens in the file name.

Append a timestamp.

Timestamp format
Y-m-dTH-i-s
Should be a PHP [date\(\)](#) format string.

Compression
GZip

File Encryption
Install the [AES Encryption Module](#) to enable backup file encryption.

▼ DEFAULT DATABASE BACKUP OPTIONS

▼ ADVANCED OPTIONS

[Save profile](#)

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Schedules

This is accessed from the front page of the module, **Schedules** tab. This makes it possible to define scheduled backups that will be done periodically, along with the running of the cron.

For example, we can schedule a task for a daily backup to be made, with a maximum of 10 files staying on the server (last 10 days). **F20.21**

F20.21

Backup and Migrate Module. Schedules

The **Schedules** tab enables us to plan scheduled backup copies.

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [System](#) » [Backup and Migrate](#)

Backup and Migrate ◊ [BACKUP](#) [RESTORE](#) [DESTINATIONS](#) [PROFILES](#) [SCHEDULES](#)

Automatically backup up your database on a regular schedule using cron.

[+ Add Schedule](#)

NAME	DESTINATION	PROFILE	FREQUENCY	KEEP	ENABLED	LAST RUN	OPERATIONS
Daily backup	Scheduled Backups Directory	Default Settings	Once a day	10	Enabled	Never	edit delete

Using the **Add Schedule** link we can create a new scheduled task. **F20.22**

In order for the backup to be done following the scheduled timing, as a minimum the cron must be run with a similar frequency. For example, if we say that the copy has to be made every 3 hours, the cron must also be run at least every 3 hours. If we configure the cron for it to be run every hour, this will not affect the functioning of the backup, which will be done every 3 hours.

Home

Edit Schedule

Enabled

Schedule Name
Daily backup

Settings Profile
Default Settings

[Create new profile](#)

Backup every 1 Days

Number of Backup files to keep
10

The number of backup files to keep before deleting old ones. Use 0 to never delete backups. Other files in the destination directory will get deleted if you specify a limit.

Destination
Scheduled Backups Directory

Choose where the backup file will be saved. Backup files contain sensitive data, so be careful where you save them. [Create new destination](#)

[Save schedule](#)

F20.22

Backup and Migrate Module. Creating a scheduled backup copy

The created and enabled tasks that are scheduled will be run according to the established frequency configuration. We can select a profile and a destination that have been created beforehand.

The system cron has to be functioning in order for the task to be carried out.

Permissions added by the module

The **Backup and Migrate** module has added various new permissions that we have to configure correctly for the roles of the site. In principle, all of these are permissions that can only be assigned to an administrator user: **F20.23**

- **Access Backup and Migrate.** The users with this permission enabled will be able to access the module settings page.
- **Perform a backup.** The users with this permission will be able to make backup copies of the database.
- **Access backup files.** This makes it possible to access the backup files that are stored.
- **Delete backup files.** This makes it possible to delete the backup files stored.
- **Restore the site.** This makes it possible to restore the site from a backup copy.
- **Administer Backup and Migrate.** This makes it possible to administer the profiles, schedules and destinations of the modules.

Note

Administer the backup copies

It is important to take account of the fact that, on most sites, **only the administrators and supervisors should have permissions to use the Backup and Migrate tools.**

Improper use of these tools could mean that the backups that have been saved are lost or that restoring an old copy will mean losing many hours of work.

F20.23

Backup and Migrate Permissions

The permissions added by the module are all administration permissions, and so these should be assigned to users with the necessary knowledge.

PERMISSION	USUARIO ANÓNIMO	USUARIO REGISTRADO	ADMINISTRATOR
Backup and Migrate			
Access Backup and Migrate Access the Backup and Migrate admin section.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Perform a backup Back up any of the available databases.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Access backup files Access and download the previously created backup files.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete backup files Delete the previously created backup files.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Restore the site Restore the site's database from a backup file.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Administer Backup and Mirgate Edit Backup and Migrate profiles, schedules and destinations.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Updating Drupal to new versions

20.5

In this section we will focus on the updating of the Drupal core within version 7 (from **7.x** to **7.y**, where **y** will be the latest version of Drupal that is available). For example, from Drupal 7.7 to 7.9 (or to the latest 7. version available).

If our site has a version **7.x** installed, we can update the latest **7.y** with no need to install the intermediate versions. For example, if the site has the 7.7 version, we can update directly to the version 7.9 (or to the latest version available).

The updating procedure is usually always similar, but it is worth consulting the page from where we have downloaded the latest version in case it has any particular feature. In addition, on the page <http://drupal.org/upgrade> (in English) we will find further information about updating among different versions of Drupal.

The steps that you have to follow are as follows:

1. Access <http://drupal.org/project/drupal>, **download the latest version (7.y) available** and **uncompress it**. This will be a tar.gz or zip file (for example, **drupal-7.9.tar.gz**) that you can uncompress with Winzip, Winrar or any other compression/uncompression software for compatible files (consult **Annex A**). We can also download the new version from the **available updates** Report of the website.
2. Consult the **UPGRADE.txt** file that comes in the compressed file that you have just downloaded (it is located in the root folder) where you will find specific information for the updating (in English).
3. **Enter the site with the administrator user** (typically **admin**) created during the site installation.
4. **Disable the site for maintenance**. This is especially important if the site is under production, because this is a question of stopping changes taking place in the databases during the updating process.
5. Do a **database backup and a copy of the “customised” folders** of the site. In particular, we have to do a backup of these folders:
 - o **/sites**, which contains the modules and themes installed and the configuration file settings.php.
 - o **/files**, which contains all of the files that have been uploaded to the site using the different management tools. If the **files** folder is inside **sites** (typically at **/sites/default/files**) you will only need to save the **sites** folder and all of the content.

Note Summary of steps Updating of Drupal

1. Download Drupal
2. Consult UPGRADE.txt
3. Enter as admin
4. Site disconnected
5. Backup copy
6. Delete files
7. Upload new version
8. Recover files
9. Verify settings.php
10. Run update.php
11. Status report
12. Site online

If modifications have been made in other files, such as **.htaccess** or **robots.txt**, these have to be copied in the same way, so as to recover them after the updating.

To do a database backup, use **phpMyAdmin** or the **Backup and Restore module** (recommended).

6. **Delete all of the files and directories of the distribution of earlier Drupal.** We have to make sure that we have done a backup of the customised files, as was mentioned in point 5.
7. **Upload the folders and files of the new version.** These will be uploaded by FTP to the same location where the deleted files were. In the same way as when we install Drupal for the first time, we only have to upload the content of the **drupal-7.y** folder.
8. **Recover the folders saved**, such as /files and /sites (and other files such as .htaccess or robots.txt), replacing the existing files (from the new distribution). These must be uploaded to the server using FTP, replacing the existing files.
9. **Check that the settings.php file** (typically at /sites/default/settings.php) has the information for accessing the correct database.
10. **Run/update.php** and follow the steps mentioned for updating the database (write the URL <http://www.example.com/update.php> directly into the browser).

If you are registered as an admin user, as was stated in step 3, you should have no problems in running the update.php file. However, if it tells you that you do not have enough privileges, you can follow these steps:

- Download and open the **settings .php** file with a text editor. Make sure that the file has writing attributes so that it can be modified.
- Locate the line:\$update_free_access = FALSE; and change it to:\$update_free_access = TRUE;
- Upload the file again, over-writing the earlier version.
- Now run update.php from the browser. Once the update has been done, we again modify the settings.php file to recover the original line:

```
$update_free_access = FALSE;
```

You can leave this step till the end of the updating, but do not forget to make the change. In any event, you will be told about this in the site status report, because this is a significant security issue.

11. Check that the Drupal version has been updated in the site status report; that the access to update.php is protected; that there are no updates of the database that are outstanding and that the configuration file is protected.
12. Return the **site to its online mode.**

Updating of modules to new versions

20.6

To update a module we have to proceed in a way similar to that above, only altering some of the steps. It is possible to update several modules at the same time, but when the modules are related, (one related to another); it is advisable to first update the main or base module and in the second step, the modules that depend on this. These are the generic steps for updating modules:

1. **Download the latest version of the module available** for Drupal 7 from drupal.org and **decompress it**. You can decompress this with Winzip, Winrar or any other compatible file compression/uncompression software (consult **Annex A**). You can also download this file from the **Available updates** Report of your website, which is the version recommended from among all of those available.
2. **Enter the site with the administrator user** (typically **admin**) created during the site installation.
3. **Disable the site for maintenance.** This is especially important if the site is under production, because this is a question of stopping changes taking place in the databases during the updating process. To do this, see **Configuration**⇒ **Maintenance mode**.
4. Do a **database backup and a copy of the “customised” folders** of the site. In particular, we have to do a backup of these folders:
 - /sites/all/modules/module_to_update which contains the module that we want to update.
 - /files (typically at /sites/default/files), which contains all of the files that have been uploaded to the site using the different management tools.

To do a database backup, use **phpMyAdmin** or the **Backup and Restore module** (recommended).

It will not be necessary to delete or copy these folders again; this is only done for security.

5. **Delete the module folder that you want to update.** Access the site via FTP and we delete the module folder that we are going to update, which will usually be located at /sites/all/modules/name_module. We have to make sure that we have done the backup of the customised files, was mentioned in point 4.
6. **Upload the folder and files of the new version of the module.** These will be generally uploaded via FTP to the same location where the deleted files /sites/all/modules/ were.
13. **Run /update.php** and follow the steps mentioned for updating the database (write the URL <http://www.example.com/update.php> directly into the browser).

If you are registered as an admin user, as was stated in step 2, you should have no problems in running the update.php file. However, if it tells you that you do not have enough privileges, you can follow these steps:

- Download and open the **settings.php** file with a text editor.

Note Summary of steps

Modules update

1. Download module
2. Enter as admin
3. Site disconnected
4. Backup copy
5. Delete module
6. Upload new version
7. Run update.php
8. Status report
9. Site online

Make sure that the file has writing attributes so that it can be modified.

- Locate the line: \$update_free_access = FALSE; and change it to: \$update_free_access = TRUE;
- Upload the file again, over-writing the earlier version.
- Now run update.php from the browser. Once the update has been done, we again modify the settings.php file to recover the original line:

```
$update_free_access = FALSE;
```

You can leave this step till the end of the updating, but do not forget to make the change. In any event, you will be told about this in the site status report, because this is a significant security issue.

8. Check that the module version corresponds to the new version that we have just uploaded in the **available updates** report and on the **Modules** page.
9. Finally, return the **site to its online mode**.

Automatic downloading of updates

It is possible to automatically install some modules of updates from the **Available updates** report (**Update** tab). By clicking on **Download these updates**, F20.24 the system will download and upload the latest versions of the modules selected to the site, something similar to what we do when we use the automatic modules installation. This step replaces steps 5 and 6 (delete module and upload a new version), and it is necessary to observe the rest of the steps of the updating process.

F20.24

Available updates. Update

From the Update tab it is possible to automatically install the new versions of the modules installed.

Last checked: 0 sec ago (Check manually)			
	NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
<input type="checkbox"/>	Token	7.x-1.0-beta7	7.x-1.0-rc1 (Release notes)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Views	7.x-3.0-rc3	7.x-3.1 (Release notes)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Views Boxes	7.x-1.0-beta6	7.x-1.0-beta8 (Release notes)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Views Bulk Operations (VBO)	7.x-3.0-beta3	7.x-3.0-rc1 (Release notes)

[Download these updates](#)

Improving performance by enabling the cache

20.7

Every time that a request is made to load a page of your website created with Drupal in your browser, the system has to make a large number of enquiries to the database and the scripts of the site to compose the content, check the access permits, generate the interface properly translated, display the blocks, etc.

On websites with a lot of hits and/or on servers with few resources, it is possible that we will observe some slowness in loading pages, generally due to an excess of calls to the database.

The cache systems are used to reduce this loading on the databases and improve the performance of the site. A **cache** system of this type works by storing the end result of a page in a file or in the database. When a user requests a page, instead of making all of the checks by accessing the database, it recovers the **content that has already been prepared** directly from the cache, and so the number of accesses to the database and the consumption of server resources are notably reduced.

To use the cache functions included in Drupal we have to access: [F20.25](#)

Administration ⇒ **Configuration** ⇒ **Development** ⇒ **Performance**

The cache has to be disabled during the development process of a website, because it may interfere in the development of modules or themes. If we have the site cache enabled, it is possible that we will not see the changes that we make reflected in it, for example, the changes in a block, or in the styles sheet of our theme.

URL Performance

/admin/config/development/performance

In a site under production, we will be able to enable the following settings:

- **Cache of pages for anonymous users.** This stores the pages in cache as these will be displayed to anonymous users. In this way, when an anonymous user accesses he will be displayed the cached version of the content. A page will not have a version in the cache until it is visited by an anonymous user once more.
- **Cache of blocks.** When we check this box the cache of the blocks will be available. The functioning is similar to the pages cache, but for the blocks of the site.
- **Minimum cache lifetime.** This is the minimum length of time that a page has to spend in the cache in order for it to be renewed by the system. In this time, even though the content is modified, the system will continue serving the page version from the cache. Once this time has passed, the cache will only be updated if the content has changed.
- **Expiration of cached pages.** This is the maximum length of time that a page will spend in the cache so as to then be renewed by the system. Unlike with the previous parameter, the expiration obliges the system to renew the cache, regardless of whether the page has been modified or not. Once the cache of a page has expired, this will not be renewed until an anonymous user requests it again.

- **Aggregate and compress CSS files.** This compresses the CSS files downloaded by the users by loading a site page. Many modules incorporated into the site add their particular styles, by using additional CSS files. By enabling this setting, all of the CSS files are aggregated (in one or several files, depending on the total size) and are compressed (deleting spaces, comments, etc.). The page will load more quickly with this compression.
- **Aggregate JavaScript files.** In the same way as with happens with CSS files, when new modules are added, then Javascript code files are also added, which the browser has to load when the page is visited. With this setting the system will compress and aggregate the Javascript files. By doing this we also get the page to load more quickly.

F20.25**Performance settings**

The cache must be disabled during the process of developing a website, because it may interfere in the development of modules or themes.

Only when we have the **site under production** will we be able to enable some settings to improve the performance, such as the **cache of pages for anonymous users**.

The screenshot shows the 'Performance' configuration page in Drupal. It includes sections for 'CLEAR CACHE' (with a 'Clear all caches' button), 'CACHING' (with checkboxes for 'Cache pages for anonymous users' and 'Cache blocks', and a note that block caching is inactive due to content access restrictions), 'MINIMUM CACHE LIFETIME' (set to '<none>'), 'EXPIRATION OF CACHED PAGES' (set to '<none>'), and 'BANDWIDTH OPTIMIZATION' (with checkboxes for 'Aggregate and compress CSS files' and 'Aggregate JavaScript files'). A 'Save configuration' button is at the bottom.

The **Clear caches** setting makes it possible to clean and update the entire cache. It is especially useful after doing new installations or updates of modules. It is also worth clear the cache when we do not see the changes made in styles, templates, contents, etc. on the site.

As has already been remarked, while we are developing a website it is recommended that we disable all of the cache options. Even so, the system may carry out a certain degree of caching, and so we will still need the Clear all caches setting.

There are other cache systems that can be used with Drupal, such as **Memcache** and **APC** (Alternative PHP Cache). In both cases there are modules that are contributed in order to facilitate their integration into Drupal.

Error reporting

20.8

There are two very common errors when a page of the site is loaded:

- **"Access denied" error or default 403.** This error is displayed when the user who tries to access a page of the site but he does not have the right permissions to view it. **F20.26**

Access denied

You are not authorized to access this page.

F20.26

Access denied

Access denied error (403).

- **"Page not found" error or default 404.** This error is displayed when a user tries to Access a page that does not exist on the site. **F20.27**

Page not found

The requested page "/dd" could not be found.

F20.27

Page not found Page not found error (404).

Drupal allows us to modify these pages from: **F20.28**

Administration ⇒ Configuration ⇒ Site information [Error pages]

We firstly create the pages that will replace the default pages. These pages may be of any of the content types available (for example, basic page). Once these pages have been created, it will be enough to state the **URL alias** in the **Error pages** section within **Site information**.

ERROR PAGES

Default 403 (access denied) page

<http://cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/>

This page is displayed when the requested document is denied to the current user. Leave blank to display a generic "access denied" page.

Default 404 (not found) page

<http://cursod7.aprendedrupal.es/>

This page is displayed when no other content matches the requested document. Leave blank to display a generic "page not found" page.

F20.28

Reporting errors We can create customise pages for showing the users when a 403 (access denied) or 404 (page not found) error takes place.

Regardless of whether we customise the pages that the users will view or not when those errors take place, these will still be stored in the site errors log, and we will be able to view these by accessing:

Administration ⇒ Reports ⇒ Recent log messages

URL Errors log

</admin/reports/dblog>

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

A

Configuration of the hosting and necessary tools

In this annex we present a short introduction to the tools that will be necessary for managing the hosting. Reference will only be made to the functionalities that are useful for managing the website with Drupal.

Hosting dashboard

A.1

In this annex we present a short introduction to the tools that will be necessary for managing the hosting. Reference will only be made to the functionalities that are useful for managing the website with Drupal.

When we contract a Hosting service, the provider will give us access to a **Dashboard** from where we will be able to administer the different functionalities available, depending on the hosting plan contracted.

Some typical actions that we will be able to do from the dashboard are:

- Check the status of our account: disk space occupied, monthly bandwidth transfer, number of e-mail accounts, number of sub-domains, FTP accounts, Databases, etc.
- Register domains and sub-domains.
- Create FTP accounts.
- Create MySQL users and databases, and administer them using phpMyAdmin.
- Create e-mail accounts with the domains available.
- Configure Cron tasks that will be run automatically every now and then.

There are different dashboard applications for hostings, of which the most well-known are **cPanel** and **Plesk**. The application available will be the one facilitated by the service provider.

In this section we will study some functionalities of the dashboard with the **cPanel** software, although these are fully applicable to other types of dashboards.

Dashboard access

Generally access to the dashboard will be done from the browser via an URL of the www.example.com/cPanel type, with www.example.com being the main domain of our website. This piece of data, along with the user name and password, will be provided by the service provider.

In **Figure FA.1** we see the typical form for access to cPanel.

FA.1

cPanel. Access form
cPanel access form.



The dashboard is divided into two main sections. The column on the left usually shows the status of the hosting and the resources used and available. The column on the right shows all of the functionalities available, grouped together by categories. The available settings will vary depending on the services contracted.

FA.2

cPanel. Overview

Overview of the cPanel dashboard.



Add domains and sub-domains

From the **Add on domains** setting we can add new domains to the hosting server, which we will have acquired beforehand via a domains provider. When an add on domain is created, we have to state the folder that this domain will point to. A main FTP account will be created along with the domain, with the user name and password that are indicated.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

 **Addon Domains**

 [Video Tutorial](#)

An addon domain allows visitors to reach a subdomain of your site by typing the addon domain's URL into a browser. This means that you can host additional domains from your account, if allowed by your hosting provider. Addon Domains Subdomains are relative to your account's home directory. The  icon signifies your home directory which is /home/cursod7.

Create an Addon Domain

New Domain Name:	example.com	
Subdomain/FTP Username:	example	
Document Root:	 / public_html/example.com	
Password:	
Password (Again):	
Strength (why?):	Strong (70/100)	Password Generator
Add Domain		

Hint: This feature must be enabled for your account before you can use it. Addon domains will not function unless the domain name is registered with a valid registrar and configured to point to the correct DNS servers.

FA.3**cPanel. Add a domain**

When a domain is added, an FTP account will be automatically created for accessing the folder that is indicated.

In order for the domain to begin functioning, we have to indicate this to the hosting server. This is done by means of the name servers or DNS. In **Figure FA.4** we see an example of the registration of DNS servers associated with the domain. This configuration is not applied using the dashboard, but rather in the administration area of the domains provider where we have acquired ours.

The DNS names (typically 2) and their corresponding IP addresses must have provided by the hosting provider.

Servidores de nombre DNS

Nombre	ns123.exampledns.net
IP	67.212.155.221
Nombre	ns124.exampledns.net
IP	67.212.155.222

[Modificar](#)

FA.4**cPanel. Point to the domain**

We will use the name servers or DNSs to point to the domain of our hosting.

Once a domain has been added, we can also create subdomains (such as for example, web1.example.com, web2.example.com, etc.). We will add these from the Subdomains setting, indicating the name of the subdomain, the associated domain and the folder that this will point to. **FA.5**

Subdomains

Subdomains are URLs for different sections of your website. They use your main domain name and a prefix. For example, if your domain is cursod7.aprendedrupal.es a sub-domain of your domain might be support.cursod7.aprendedrupal.es.

Subdomains are relative to your account's home directory. The  icon signifies your home directory which is /home/cursod7.

Create a Subdomain

Subdomain :	web1	.	example.com		
Document Root :	 / public_html/web1				
Create					

FA.5**cPanel. Create sub-domains**

We can add sub-domains to any available domain or sub-domain that has previously been created.

Once a domain or subdomain has been created, the files uploaded in the corresponding files will be available via the URLs:

- <http://www.example.com>
- <http://web1.example.com>

Create FTP accounts

An FTP account allows us to access the files of particular folders of the server, by using a FTP software (such as **FileZilla**). To create an FTP account we have the **FTP Accounts** setting available, where we will have to state the user name, the password and the folder that he will have access to. Optionally, we can also indicate a quota or limit on the disk space that the account created will use. **FA.6**

FA.6

cPanel. FTP Accounts

The FTP accounts will enable us to manage the files of the server (upload and download files).

FTP Accounts
FTP accounts allow you to access your website's files through a protocol called FTP. You will need a third-party FTP program to access your files. You can log in via FTP by entering

Add FTP Account

Login:	course	@cursod7.aprendedrupal.es	✓
Password:	✓	
Password (Again):	✓	
Strength (?:)	OK (48/100)	Password Generator	
Directory:	/home/cursod7/public_html/course		
Quota:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 200	MB	✓
<input type="radio"/> Unlimited			
Create FTP Account			

Create MySQL databases

From the **MySQL Databases** setting **FA.7** we can create databases and the users associated with these. **FA.8**

FA.7

cPanel. Create databases

Create New Database

New Database:	cursod7_bdcourse	✓
Create Database		

FA.8

cPanel. Create database user

To access a database it is necessary to create a MySQL user, with the right permissions.

MySQL Users
[Jump to MySQL Databases](#)

Add New User

Username:	cursod7_course	✓
Password:	✓
Password (Again):	✓
Strength (why?):	Strong (74/100)	Password Generator
Create User		

Add User To Database

User:	cursod7_course
Database:	cursod7_bdcourse
Add	

The next step will be Add User to database, which means that we will give permissions to the user so that he can access that database, stating the exact privileges that he will have with respect to this. **FA.9**

MySQL Account Maintenance

Manage User Privileges

User: **cursod7_course**
Database: **cursod7_bdcourse**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ALL PRIVILEGES	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ALTER	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CREATE
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CREATE ROUTINE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CREATE TEMPORARY TABLES
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CREATE VIEW	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DELETE
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DROP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EXECUTE
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> INDEX	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> INSERT
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LOCK TABLES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> REFERENCES
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SELECT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TRIGGER
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> UPDATE	

Make Changes

FA.9**cPanel. Assign permissions to the database user**

When the database is assigned to the user we have to state which privileges he will have over it.

Once the user privileges have been granted, this will be ready to make use of the databases, whether directly or in any application that makes use of databases, such as is the case with Drupal.

Enable the Cron

We can create tasks that will periodically run commands from the **Cron jobs** setting. Of the two methods available, **Standard** and **Advanced**, we will only see the **Standard** option in this course, which is sufficient to enable and configure the Drupal cron. **FA.10**

Cron Jobs

Cron jobs allow you to automate certain commands or scripts on your site. You can set a command or script to run at a specific time every day, week, etc. For example, you could set a cron job to delete temporary files every week to free up disk space.

Warning: You need to have a good knowledge of Linux commands before you can use cron jobs effectively. Check your script with your hosting administrator before adding a cron job.

FA.10**cPanel. Cron Mode**

We will only see the Standard cron configuration mode.

Figure A.11 shows the form for configuring a cron task. We must firstly enter the command that is going to be run.

Generally speaking, the Linux curl command is used to load an URL, and hence the full command for running the cron of our site (www.example.com) will be:

curl http://www.example.com/cron.php

We will then select the time interval that we want for running the cron on our site.

In **Figure FA.11** this has been configured to run every day at 3:05 in the morning. As far as possible it is recommended that the cron is run at times at which the site activity level is low, for example in the early hours of the morning.

FA.11**cPanel**

The curl command allows us to run any URL of the system. To configure the cron, it is sufficient to state which periods we want to run it in.

The screenshot shows the 'Cron Email' section of the cPanel interface. At the top, there is a note: 'Send an email every time a cron job runs. [more >](#)'. Below this is the 'Add New Cron Job' form. It includes a dropdown for 'Common Settings' set to 'Every 5 minutes (*/5 * * * *)'. The 'Minute' field is set to '*5' with 'Every 5 minutes (*/5)' as the label. The 'Hour', 'Day', 'Month', and 'Weekday' fields are all set to '*' with their respective labels. There is a 'Command' input field which is currently empty. At the bottom of the form is a 'Add New Cron Job' button.

If the **curl** command does not function on your hosting, check which command you should use with your provider, because this may vary depending on the operating system and the configuration of the server.

Once the cron has been enabled, check in the site **status report** that the cron is being run correctly, in the set time periods.

A.2

Managing databases with phpMyAdmin

From the dashboard it is possible to access the management of the databases created using the **phpMyAdmin** software. To enlarge upon the information about this tool, please consult the official page of **phpMyAdmin** at <http://www.phpmyadmin.net>. [FA.12](#)

The main settings that we will find in **phpMyAdmin** are:

- **List of databases and tables** (in the left-hand column). This makes it possible to select a particular database and/or table.
- **Structure**. If a database is selected, this displays the set of tables that makes it up. If one particular table is selected, it displays the fields and items that make it up.
- **Query**. This allows us to navigate through the data or records contained in the selected table.
- **SQL**. This allows us to launch SQL sentences (select, insert, update, delete, etc.).
- **Search**. Help for searching for data contained in the table, using different filters related to the fields of the table.
- **Insert**. Form for inserting data or logs into the table.
- **Export**. This makes it possible to export a database or a table. In both cases it is possible to export from the structure, from the data, or both. To make a database backup we will carry out an export of both the structure and of the data. The resulting file is a file with SQL sentences, which can be used in order to Import, into the same database or into another one.
- **Import**. This allows us to import an item and data from previous exports (SQL files).
- **Operations**. This allows us to carry out additional operations on a database or on a table (change name, copy, etc.)

- **Clear.** Deletes all of the data from a table.
- **Delete.** Deletes a table (structure and data).

The screenshot shows the phpMyAdmin interface with the database 'bdcurs' selected. The left sidebar lists tables: accesslog, actions, aggregator_category, aggregator_category_feed, aggregator_category_item, aggregator_feed, aggregator_item, and authmap. The top navigation bar includes tabs for Structure, SQL, Search, Query, Export, Import, and Operations. Below the navigation is a table listing the selected tables with columns for Action, Browse, Structure, Search, Insert, Empty, and Drop.

FA.12**phpMyAdmin**

Main view once a database has been selected.

In **Figure FA.13** we see the content of the **node** table of Drupal, once the contents have been created on the site. To access the content of the table we have first selected the database, then the **node** table and lastly the **Query** tab.

The screenshot shows the phpMyAdmin Query tab for the 'node' table. The top navigation bar includes tabs for Browse, Structure, SQL, Search, Insert, Export, Import, and Operations. The SQL query is: `SELECT * FROM 'node' LIMIT 0 , 30`. The results table displays 10 rows of node data with columns: nid, vid, type, language, title, uid, status, and created. Each row includes edit, inline edit, copy, and delete links.

nid	vid	type	language	title	uid	status	created
1	3	page	und	About us	1	1	1329139532
3	4	article	und	First article	1	1	1329139909
4	5	article	und	Second article	1	1	1329139928
5	7	news	und	Headline 1	1	1	1329142800
6	8	page	und	About me	1	1	1329144785
7	9	poll	und	What do you think about this course?	1	1	1329162656
8	10	article	und	Expert in Drupal 7	1	1	1329165320

FA.13**phpMyAdmin**

Data contained in the node table (Query tab).

A.3**Upload and download files via FTP**

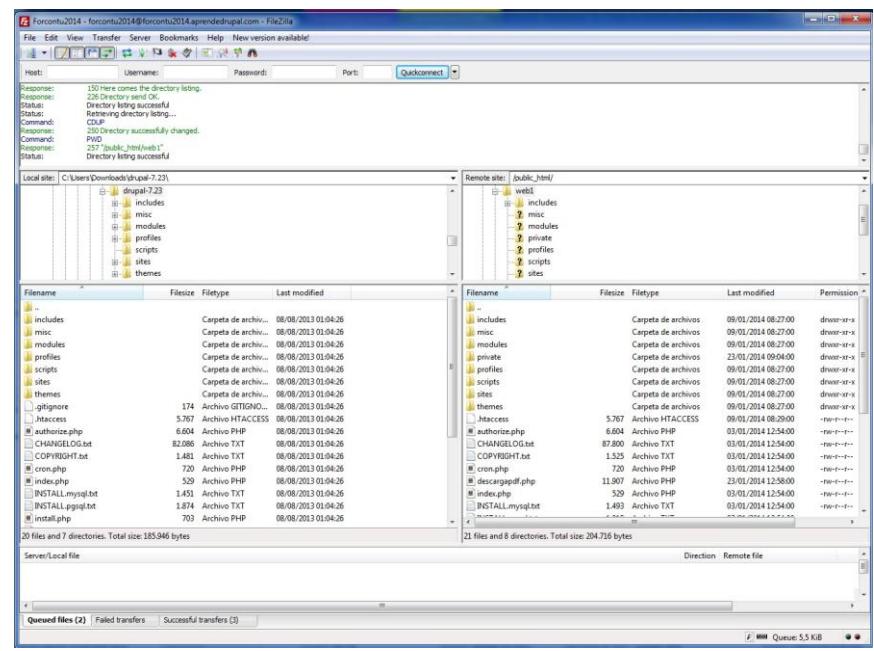
The software that enables us to upload and download files to a remote server is known as **FTP (File Transfer Protocol)**. There are many alternatives, and they all work in practically the same way. Here we will analyse how the **FileZilla** software works, as this is freeware that is widely used.

FileZilla is available for downloading at <http://filezilla-project.org/>, by using the *Download FileZilla Client* link.

In **Figure FA.14** we see an overview of the software. The central part of the window is split in two. On the left we see the files and folders of our operator (local) and on the right we see those belonging to the server. We can browse through both structures, and move the files and folders from one site to another one.

FA.14**FileZilla**

FileZilla is a piece of freeware for uploading or downloading files by FTP.

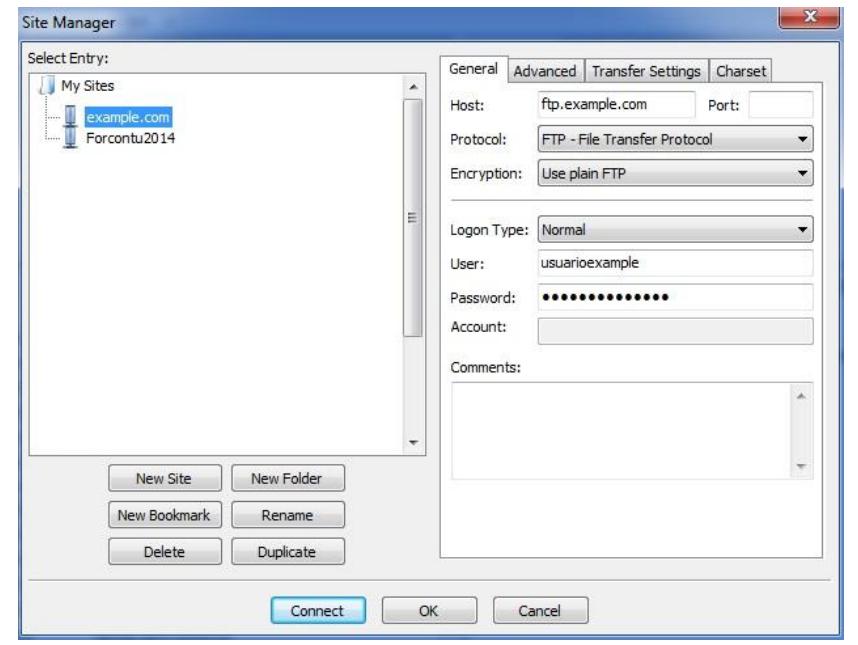


Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

Set up an FTP connection

In addition to the server's name or IP address, to set up a connection with an FTP server we need a valid user and password. In **section A.1** we saw how to create an FTP user to access the files of our hosting server.

From **File→Site manager** we can access the connections management window that enables us to create and save the usual connections. **FA.15**

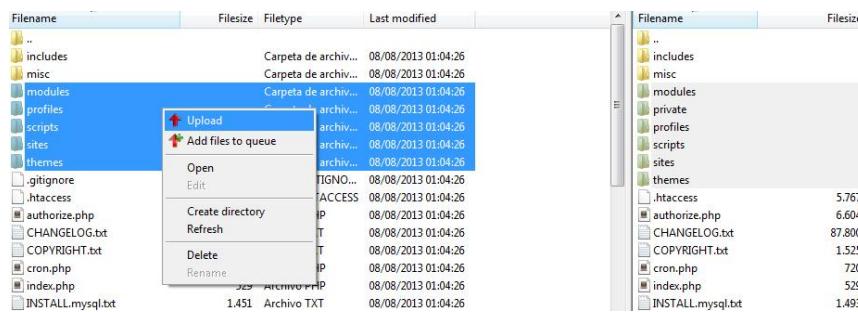
**FA.15****FileZilla**

The **Sites manager** enables us to create and save the usual connections.

Upload and download files

We will take the following steps to **upload files to the server** from our local computer: **FA.16**

- In the window on the right (server) we will move through the structure of folders till we reach the folder that we want to upload the files into.
- In the window on the left (local computer), we will move in the same way through the structure of folders till we locate the files that we want to upload to the server. We will then select the files and folders and by clicking on the right-hand button we will choose the **Upload** option.

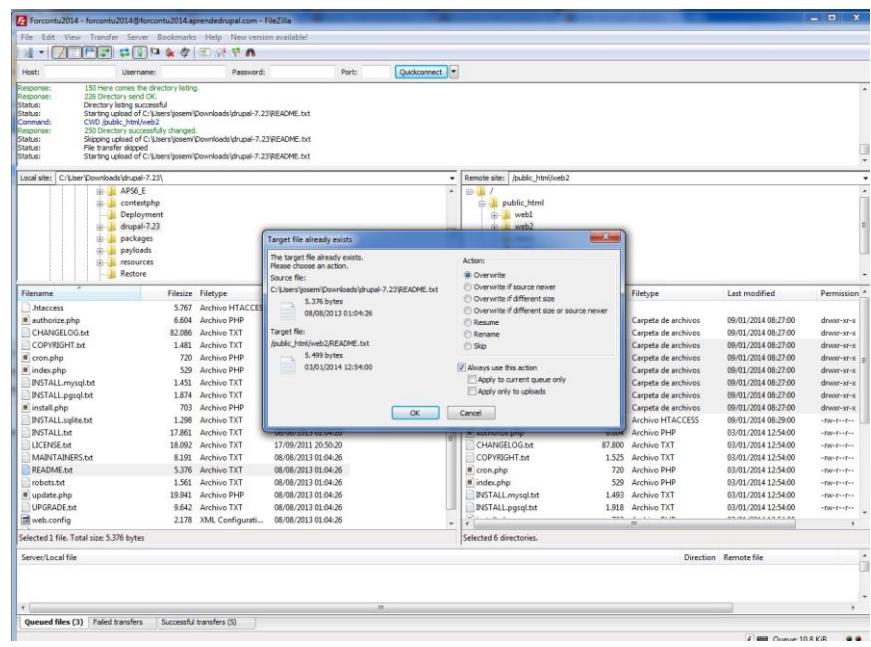
**FA.16****FileZilla**

To **Upload files** to the server, select the files to be uploaded on the left (local).

If the files or folders exist on the server, a window will be displayed that asks us whether we want to overwrite the files. The "Always use this action" option will stop us being asked this question for every individual file. **FA.17**

FA.17**FileZilla**

Use the "Always use this action" option to overwrite multiple files.



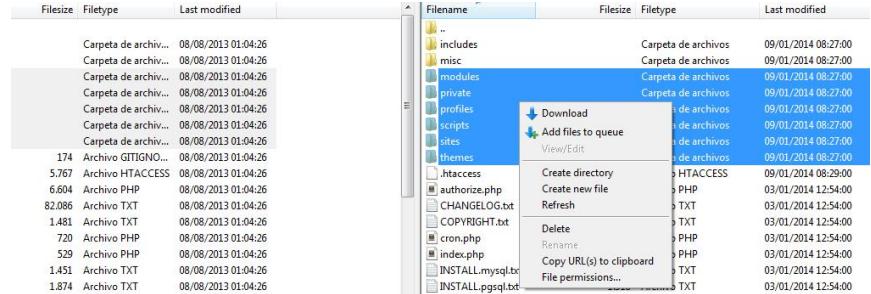
Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

To **download files from server** to our local computer, we will take the following steps: **FA.18**

- In the window on the left (local computer), we will move through a structure of folders until we reach the folder that we want to download the files to.
- In the window on the right (server), we will move in the same way through the structure of folders till we locate the files that we want to download. We will then select the files and folders and clicking with the right-hand button we will choose the Download option.

FA.18**FileZilla**

To **Download files** from the server, select the files to be downloaded on the right (server).



Modify the permissions of files and folders of the server

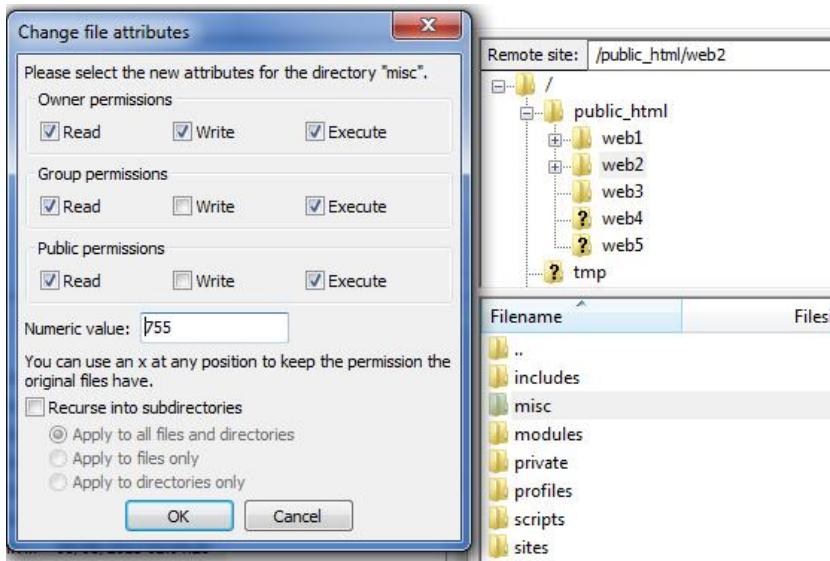
A value is shown on the server side, along with each file or folder, that relates to the permissions that are established (775, 644, etc). To modify the permissions of a file or folder, select it and click with the right-hand button, and then choose the **File permissions** option from the dropdown menu. **FA.19**

st modified		Filename	Filesize	Filetype	Last modified	Permission
/08/2013 01:04:26		--		Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		includes		Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		misc	Download	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		priv	Add files to queue	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		pro	Enter directory	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		scr	View/Edit	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		sites	Create directory	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		the	Create new file	Carpeta de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		ht	Refresh	Carpetas de archivos	09/01/2014 08:27:00	drwxr-xr-x
/08/2013 01:04:26		aut	5,767 Archivo HTACCESS	Carpetas de archivos	09/01/2014 08:29:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26		CH	6,604 Archivo PHP	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26		CC	7,800 Archivo TXT	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26		crc	1,528 Archivo TXT	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26		inc	720 Archivo PHP	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26		INSTALL.mysql.txt	529 Archivo PHP	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--
/08/2013 01:04:26			1,493 Archivo TXT	Carpetas de archivos	03/01/2014 12:54:00	-rw-r--r--

FA.19**FileZilla**

Access File permissions
to modify the file reading,
writing or run permissions

In **Figure FA.20** we see the permissions that can be assigned to a file or folder, which can be read, write or run. We have to take special care with the write permissions.

**FA.20****FileZilla**

Special care must be taken with the writing permissions that we assign to the files. Drupal protects some files and folders, and so if we want to make any modification in these we will first have to modify the permissions using FileZilla.

Drupal protects certain folders and files of the system (such as /sites/default and /sites/default/settings.php) so as to stop it being possible for those files to be modified maliciously. If we want to create a folder within /sites/default, we first have to change the permissions to the default folder, in such a way that allows for reading (owner permissions and group permissions, generally speaking). Once the folder (for example, modules or themes) has been created, we will be able to change the permissions of the default folder again.

The same will happen when we want to modify the settings.php file. It will be necessary to modify the permissions of both the folder that contains it (default) and of the settings.php file itself. Once we have made the changes we will apply the initial permissions again.

A.4

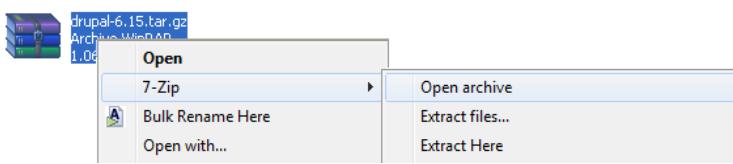
Uncompress files with 7zip

During the course you will find that the files downloaded from drupal.org are compressed in the **.tar.gz** format. We can use any file compression and uncompression software to uncompress these files, such as WinZip or WinRAR. In this section we will see how to use **7zip**, a piece of freeware available at <http://www.7-zip.org/>.

To uncompress a **.tar.gz** file, it is necessary to take account of the fact that this is a dual compression: first the files and folders are grouped together into one single file (**tar**) and then the resulting file (**gz**) is compressed. This is why we will have to do a dual uncompression.

FA.21**7zip**

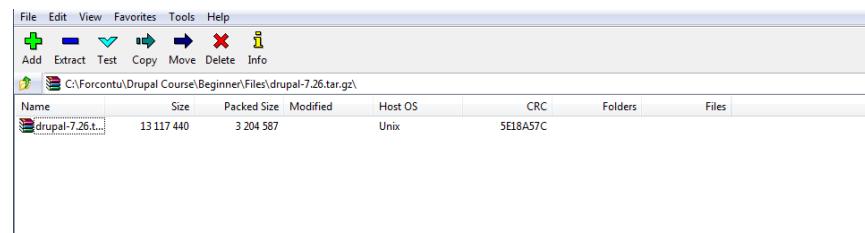
Uncompress a **.tar.gz** file with 7zip.



When the compressed file is opened, as shown in **Figure FA.21** (right click on the file and open with **7-zip** or first opening **7-zip** and selecting the file to decompress), the file will be uncompressed on one occasion, and giving the result of the **.tar** file. **FA.22**

FA.22**7zip**

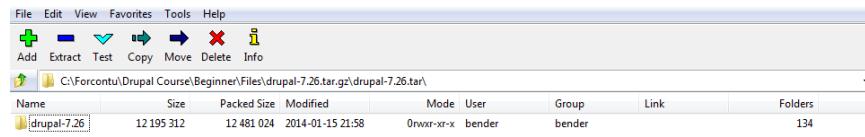
In the first unzipping we obtain the **.tar** file, which continues being a compressed file.



We will reach the end folder by double clicking on the **.tar** file. From this point we will browse through the structure of files and folders contained in the compressed file and uncompress or extract just the files that we want. To do this it is enough to select them and drag them to the folder we want (on our computer) or to click on the **Extract button**, indicating the destination folder.

FA.23**FA.23****7zip**

On the website, by double clicking on the **.tar** file we arrive at the content of this. To finish the unzipping we can use Extract or drag and drop the content into any folder of the system.

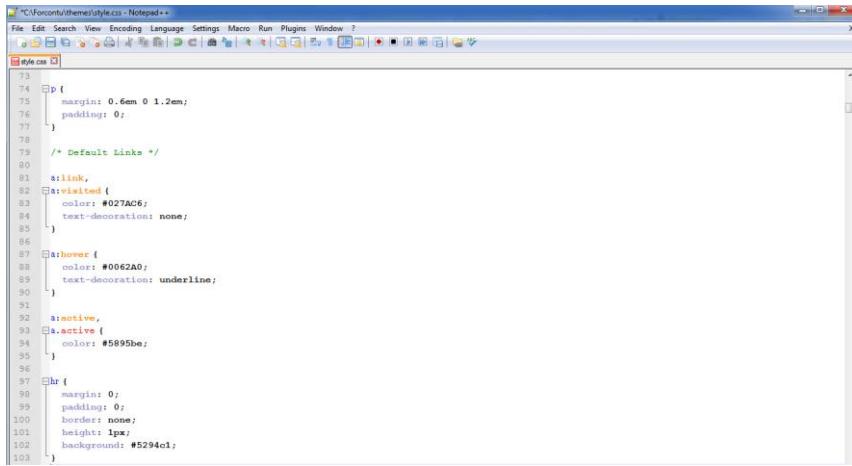


Editing text files with Notepad++

A.5

Notepad++ is a freeware text editor for Windows, available to be downloaded at the URL <http://notepad-plus.sourceforge.net>. It is a very useful editor for editing PHP, HTML and/or CSS files, because this shows in the syntax in colour, the line number and the nestings between items. It is moreover possible to choose the language in which the file is written from among a large range of options (PHP, CSS, XML, HTML, SQL, etc.).

Figure FA.24 shows us a CSS file, edited with **Notepad++**.



The screenshot shows the Notepad++ interface with a CSS file named "style.css" open. The code is color-coded to highlight different elements:

```

73  p {
74      margin: 0.6em 0 1.2em;
75      padding: 0;
76  }
77  /* Default Links */
78
79  a:link,
80  a:visited {
81      color: #027AC6;
82      text-decoration: none;
83  }
84
85  a:hover {
86      color: #0062A0;
87      text-decoration: underline;
88  }
89
90  a:active,
91  a.active {
92      color: #5895be;
93  }
94
95  hr {
96      margin: 0;
97      padding: 0;
98      border: none;
99      height: 1px;
100     background: #5294c1;
101  }
102  }
103

```

FA.24

Notepad++

Notepad++ shows the structure of the file in diagrammatical file, colouring the key words depending on the type of the language: PHP, HTML, CSS, etc.

*Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079*

B Links and resources of interest

In this annex you will find links to pages and resources of interest so as to properly follow this course and to learn Drupal in general.

forcontu.com

B.1

www.forcontu.com is the official page of the course. From this page, you will be able to download the materials, access the classrooms and obtain **additional resources**.

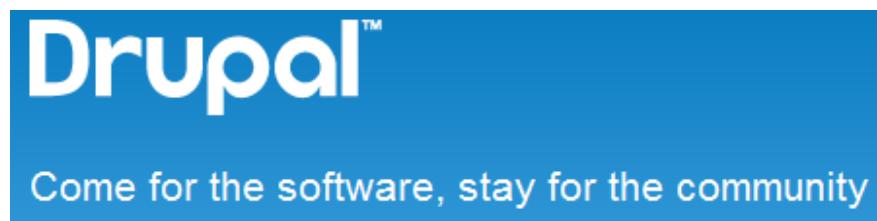


Furthermore, you will be able to **contract other services that are supplementary** to this book:

- **Supervised course.** By contracting the supervise course, you will have the continuous support of the tutors, who will guide you in carrying out the activities proposed and in your personal project. The customised course includes the student assessment and the certificate of **Expert in Drupal 7**, once you have passed this. In addition, you will be able to contract this by separate or grouped levels, depending on your needs and previous knowledge.
- **Continuous training.** You do not stop learning Drupal when the courses end. Sign up for continuous training so as to continue periodically receiving Activities, Practical cases and all of the new features on new modules, themes and about Drupal in general. You get all of this with the same training focus as that applied in the course.
- **Consultancy.** If you consider that you need help to complete your website project or start a new project once you have finished the course, you will be able to contract the Consultancy service. This service is conceived of to help you, from a training focus, to make the best choice about modules and the configuration of your site, depending on the particular project that you are going to carry out. Your advisors will also help you to resolve the errors and conflicts that you may encounter when you install and configure new modules.
- **Website development.** At Forcontu, we have made a clear investment in sustainable development, and this is what we want clients to actively participate in the process of building their projects. In this way, we aim to convey to you the need to keep your project alive, adding new functionalities and innovations that are being adapted to the inevitable progress of the business and of the market, thus achieving an alignment between the business and the ITC tools that are implemented. If your company needs to develop a website project, do not hesitate to contact us.

B.2**Official Drupal page, drupal.org**

On the official Drupal page, drupal.org, you will find very many of the resources studied (in English) on the course and that are necessary to carry out the installation and enlargement of Drupal.



- **Latest Drupal version.** You will be able to download the latest Drupal version from the site home page.
- **Additional modules.** From the **Modules** section, you can consult and download all of the free modules that are available.
<http://drupal.org/project/modules>
- **Graphical themes.** You can consult and download all of the graphical themes available from the **Themes** section.
<http://drupal.org/project/themes>
- **Translations.** You can consult and download all of the available translations of the core from the **Translations** section (section B.6).
<http://localize.drupal.org>
- **Forums.** In the Drupal forums you will find discussions (in English) about different issues related to Drupal (installation, updating, development of modules and themes, etc.).
<http://drupal.org/forum>

B.3**drupalmodules.com**

The drupalmodules.com website is the site that is recommended for searching for and downloading Drupal modules (in English). Unlike with drupal.org, this site is completely focused on modules for Drupal and it incorporates filters and search engines that make it possible to locate modules more smoothly and in a more straightforward way. In addition, it incorporates graphics that show the functionalities, security, ease of use and documentation on a scale from 1 to 5 for every module and, in some cases, comments from the users. The repositories are synchronised, and the versions of the modules available on both sites are completely identical. **FB.1**

The screenshot shows the drupalmodules.com website. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like Home, Latest Reviews, Top Rated, Most Downloaded, Most Favorited, Category List, Rating Guide, Forum, and About. Below the navigation is a search bar with fields for Category (Content), Version (7.X), Title, and Body. A sidebar on the right titled 'Search Modules' allows users to restrict their search to specific Drupal versions (6.x, 5.x, 7.x) or modules/reviews. The main content area features two modules: 'Date' and 'Wysiwyg'. The 'Date' module is described as containing a flexible date/time field type and a Date API. It includes a statistics bar with four colored bars (red, green, blue, yellow). The 'Wysiwyg' module is also shown with its own statistics bar.

FB.1**Repository of modules at drupalmodules.com**

The drupalmodules.com website is exclusively orientated towards the Drupal modules. A lot of modules can be found with very useful search and query tools.

Drupal Association

B.4

The Drupal Association is an organization dedicated to helping the open-source Drupal CMS project flourish. We help the Drupal community with funding, infrastructure, education, promotion, distribution and online collaboration at Drupal.org.

FB.2

Funds to support these programs and the Association staff come from memberships, supporting partners, sponsorships, donations, and volunteers.

If you want to work together with the Drupal Association you can become a member from <https://association.drupal.org/>.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Association website. The header includes links for Go to Drupal.org, Association Homepage, Log in / Register, Blog, About, DrupalCon, Contact, DA Info, and Staff. A search bar is also present. The main content area features a video player showing a video titled 'Why Drupal Association Membership Matters - Video'. To the right of the video, there are buttons for 'How Can You Help?' (Become a Member, Make a Donation), 'Donate Directly', and 'Upcoming DrupalCons'.

FB.2**Drupal Association**

Website of the *Drupal Association*.

B.5 Drupal Group on Google

Join the ***Google Drupal*** group, a meeting point for making technical enquiries and getting to know other members of the community. You will just need a Google account to be able to take part.

<http://groups.google.com/group/drupal>

FB.3

FB.3 Drupal Group

You will find the Drupal group in Google Groups.

Copyright 2011-2015 Forcontu S.L. All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form.
This book was prepared exclusively for Nidhi Badani. Verification code: D7INCPDFEN00037739007079

B.6 Translations of Drupal, localize.drupal.org

Localize Drupal (<http://localize.drupal.org/>) is a new website created by Drupal and that is wholly devoted to translating both the Drupal core and the additional modules shared by the community into many languages. The translations are also done in community, where the participants propose translations that are then accepted and incorporated into the site.

FB.4

FB.4 localize.drupal.org

The Localize Drupal website is a new Drupal website dedicated to the translation of Drupal and of the additional modules.

Drupal API, api.drupal.org

B.7

An API (Applications Programming Interface) is a library of functions that makes it possible to access particular data and functionalities of the system with no need to understand their internal structure. The Drupal API contributes communication functions with the system and with the core modules. The details of the Drupal API are available at api.drupal.org. Consult the **Advanced Level of the course.**

FB.5

The screenshot shows the Drupal API documentation for the function `drupal_get_path_alias`. The page has a blue header with the Drupal logo and navigation links for 'Drupal Homepage', 'Your Dashboard', 'Logged in as forcontu', and 'Log out'. Below the header, there's a 'Community Documentation' section with tabs for 'Docs Home' and 'API'. The main content area shows the function signature and its description: 'Given an internal Drupal path, return the alias set by the administrator. If no path is provided, the function will return the alias of the current page.' It also lists parameters: '\$path' (An internal Drupal path) and '\$path_language' (An optional language code to look up the path in). To the right, there's a sidebar with a search bar labeled 'Search 7' and a 'Function, file, or topic:' field with a 'Search' button. The sidebar also includes sections for 'API Navigation' with links to 'Drupal 7', 'Constants', 'Classes', 'Files', and 'Functions'.

FB.5

api.drupal.org

The Drupal API is necessary to schedule Drupal modules. This will be exclusively studied on the Advanced Level of the course.

Drupal paid-for themes

B.8

In addition to the repositories of paid-for themes, it is possible to find sites that offer paid-for themes. Some of these sites are:

- **Template Monster**, <http://www.templatemonster.com/drupal-themes.php>
- **Theme Shark**, <http://www.themeshark.com/>
- **Fusion**, <http://fusiondrupalthemes.com/>

Generic texts for tests

B.9

When we design a website it may be very useful to have generic texts of tests available that simulate actual texts with paragraphs, lists, etc.

One standard that is very widespread among website design and layout professionals on Internet is the text known as **Lorem Ipsum**. Through the www.loremipsum.com page, it is possible to generate **Lorem Ipsum** text blocks with different characteristics (number of paragraphs, number of words, number of characters or lists).